Nikolay Starikov

THE LIQUIDATION OF RUSSIA

Who Helped the Reds to Win the Civil War?

2018

BBK 63.3(2)7
UDK 94(47).08
S77

Starikov N.

S77 The Liquidation of Russia. Who Helped the Reds to Win the Civil War? — St. Pb.: Piter, 2018. — 384 p.

ISBN 978-5-4461-0486-4

The book by Nikolay Starikov, the author of bestselling "Rouble Nationalization — the Way to Russia's Freedom", "Who set Hitler against Stalin?" and many others, follows the events of the Civil War. The Russian statesmanship, its territorial integrity, and the economy of the country perished in the vortex of the Civil War. The Romanovs, the Russian Navy, the Russian Army, and millions of Russians were destroyed. The consequences of this horrible civil strife have not been overcome until today. In this book, you will find a lot of little-known facts, as well as answers to many questions:

Who staged and directed the liquidation of Russia at the beginning of the 20th century?

Who needed the Russian strife and who could gain from it?

Who forced Lenin to liquidate the Tsar's family?

Who is guilty of the murder of Nicholas II's children?

Why did the leaders of the revolution repeatedly try to drown their own navy?

Why did Vladimir Lenin order to execute the Tsar's family and at the same time ensured safety of other members of the Tsar dynasty?

Why didn't the Entente help the White movement?

Why was Admiral Kolchak murdered and why did the White Guard soldiers have to fight?

Who made the soldiers of General Yudenich die in Estonian extermination camps?

Who needed to have the troops of Denikin, Kolchak, Yudenich, and Wrangel liquidated?

The burnt Russian villages and mass graves tell us the truth about the Russian strife, the truth about the outcome of the Civil War. Who guaranteed victory for the Reds, destroying their contenders? Who made this bloody merry-go-round possible? Who placed the stake? The stake on the Bolsheviks…

16+ (for those 16 and older. In accordance with Federal Law № 436-FZ dated December 29, 2010).

All rights reserved; no part of this publication may be reproduced by any means without the written permission of the copyright owners.

ISBN 978-5-4461-0486-4

© English translation by Piter Publishing House, LLC, 2018
© Piter Publishing House Ltd., 2018

Contents

Chapter 1. Nothing Personal — Just Geopolitics 4

Chapter 2. Liquidation of the Romanovs 15

Chapter 3. Who Lenin and Trotsky Concluded the Treaty of Brest-Litovsk For 38

Chapter 4. Why the West Relied on Bolsheviks? 68

Chapter 5. Who Forced Lenin to Liquidate the Romanovs? 94

Chapter 6. Why Lenin Safeguarded the Romanovs Better Than Himself 134

Chapter 7. Why Lenin and Trotsky Sent the Russian Navy to the Bottom 178

Chapter 8. How The "Allies" Helped the "Whites" 216

Chapter 9. The Liquidation of Denikin 250

Chapter 10. The Liquidation of Kolchak 281

Chapter 11. The Liquidation of Yudenich 311

Chapter 12. The Liquidation of Wrangel 340

Addendum. Vengeance. 358

Bibliography 380

CHAPTER 1

Nothing Personal — Just Geopolitics

War will come again as long as it can be determined by people other than those who fight.

Henri Barbusse

Almost ninety years have passed since the revolutionary February and October, but until now there hasn't been found any intelligible explanation about how and why the Russian Empire fell off the edge of the earth. One starts to intently examine the events of those years and cannot stop being perpetually surprised about contingencies, astonishing coincidences, strange behaviour of the statesmen...

Who forced Nicholas II to abdicate from the throne in February 1917? How was it possible that it only took eight months for Kerensky and the Provisional Government to pull down the great empire?

How on earth could a small group of Lenin's adherers seize the power in this huge country?

Why did "the Great October" happen in the capital of Russia so easily and practically without any victims?

There are questions and no answers. Yet, there is a point of departure where one can start to reel off the skein of false facts and criminal omissions. The clue to the riddle regarding the origin of our revolutions is Lenin's arrival from Switzerland in April 1917. The German spy Ulyanov (according to some historians) returned to his homeland with German money.

The proletarian leader (according to some other historians) returned to his homeland to make the revolution.

Indeed, nobody can explain why Lenin **freely** entered Russia instead of secretly getting into Russia using another person's documents. They say that the rousing meeting for Lenin at the railway station was arranged using German money. Another version says that workers and soldiers gave an ecstatic welcome to their leader — the leader who had been away from his homeland for over 10 years and was very little known in Russia. It was in the centre of the Russian capital during the horrible years of World War 1 that the crowd of armed people was solemnly meeting its leader, who publicly encouraged them to overthrow the existing government. He was not arrested, and his party was not banned! *Is it possible that Bolsheviks managed to buy over the counterintelligence, the police, the army, and even the Provisional Government "for the German money"?*

At the same time, Trotsky, just like Lenin, was on the way to his homeland, sailing from the USA together with his companions. In Canada, he was forced to get off the ship and was arrested by the British authorities but was very soon released... at the request of the Provisional Government, which Lev Trotsky was going to overthrow!

And thus, I started to study our revolutions, having thrown away the theories imposed on us from everywhere. The tool of my knowledge is very simple — it is common sense. The fall of the Russian Empire can be investigated in the same way as any investigation would be carried out in the rest of the world in case a powerful and prosperous company has fallen and gone bankrupt overnight.

Let's not be naive. Let's not consider a surprising coincidence of the important political events timing-wise be a simple freak of chance. Let's look for those who may have gained from it. If we examine all the "mysterious" events, which took place at that time, from such a perspective, the haze will clear away, and some rational answers will be found to the questions regarding the yet unexplained historical facts.

And the answers are really needed. Otherwise, the behaviour of the Provisional Government looks odd.

Why didn't the authorities prevented the subversive people propagandizing the soldiers and corrupting the army? Why would they have destroyed the discipline and order in the army during the war? It doesn't matter that the notorious Order Number One, which quickly and efficiently destroyed our army in 1917, was signed by the Petrograd Soviet, and not by the Provisional Government. This document was followed by the Declaration of Soldiers' Rights, and according to General Alexeyev, it was the final nail in the coffin of the Russian Army. And it was Minister for War in the Provisional Government Alexander Kerensky who signed the Declaration...

Why did the very Kerensky prohibit to disarm Bolsheviks after they had failed to get power in July 1917? Why was the behaviour of the Provisional Government so odd? Why didn't it accomplish the very first function of each power — to protect itself from the encroachment on its rights?

The answer is surprising: to make it easier for Bolsheviks to get atop of Russia.

Yet, the answer is surprising just at the first sight. Kerensky and his government play into the hands of Lenin, thus following the wish of a powerful foreign empire, interested in the fall of its opponent. And this empire definitely isn't Germany.

The destruction of the Russian Empire is the most monumental operation in the history of the Secret Intelligence Service of Great Britain. This is its most monumental success. And this is its most monumental failure...

The February Revolution corrupts the country, the army, and the nation. It is followed by the October Revolution, when Bolsheviks brought about the breakup and destruction of the Russian state.

At first, everything went without any complications: Bolsheviks exploded Russia from inside, and it got splintered. The centuries-old empire crashed into unrest and total mess like an old oak tree, which had been cut down. After several years of bloodshed during the Russian Civil War, the outlines of the new state appeared. The outlines of the new Red Russia — the Soviet Union. Unexpectedly for all the parties involved — the "allies," the White movement, and even themselves — Leninists managed to bring Russia together again. These were really the frowns of fortune: those who were supposed to destruct Russia for good had it restored. The survival logic of Bolsheviks forced them to take the actions, which in the end resulted in creation of the USSR. Under a different banner, under a different name, with a new ideology, the former might of Russia will be restored late in 1930s.

Was our revolution man-made?

The answer is definitely positive.[1]

300 pages of my book "1917. Key to the 'Russian' Revolution" prove this fact. To repeat their content is practically impossible. But here you have the continuation, my dear reader...

The most complicated and the most important thing we need to understand looking into the February and the October Revolutions is that these were the "allies," and not the enemies, who had painstakingly and consciously been preparing the internal explosion in Russia.

A normal human can't believe it, as it just doesn't make sense. A normal human can't imagine that a little child can be raped and strangled. Despite this fact, the maniacs and perverts are still a horrible reality of this world...

In the fire of World War 1, Germany and Russia crashed each other. One of the opponents of Great Britain disposed of the other, and then broke down into the revolutionary chaos. These were the British authorities that persuaded the German command to let Lenin cross the German territory and allocate funds[2] for Bolsheviks. And later, the "grateful" Bolsheviks helped the "allies" to destroy the Second Reich.[3]

---

[1] Read more about the Entente countries, which organized the Russian Revolution. Starikov N. 1917. Key to the "Russian" Revolution. M. Yauza. 2008.

[2] For the details of the behind-the-scenes negotiations between Germany and Great Britain see the same book.

[3] The first Reich — the Holy Roman Empire of the German Nation — existed from 962 until 1806, when it was destroyed by Napoleon. The Second Reich was founded by Otto von Bismarck in 1871 and existed until 1918, when the Hohenzollern dynasty came to its end. The Third "millenary" Reich existed from 1933 to 1945.

Two times during the same century, in 1917 and in 1991, the Russian statehood started practically from a scratch. Twice we were on the edge of the abyss, and both times we were strong enough to resist. Yet, the efforts to push us into the abyss didn't stop.

The way has changed, as well as the slogans — the targets have remained the same. They want to weaken us and to ruin our state. The truth about THAT catastrophe of ours is simple and horrible at the same time. Russia has to realize this. Only this way our people and our state can develop immunity to the new efforts to destruct and dispose of Russia undertaken by the other states.

Revolutions don't happen for no reason — they are thoroughly prepared, and the actual problems and contradictions are used as fuel. An uncoordinated revolt arises spontaneously. States have their weak points just like people. These weak points may differ: in some of the states it's the multi-ethnic population, in others it's the horrible and bloody history or their vulnerable geographic location. But the common objective laws do exist. Those involved in the building industry are aware of the following: each construction has the points of great importance, which provide its stability and indestructibility. To put up a construction for a full due one has to follow the work routine rules and calculate all the supporting points correctly. Those who deal with demolition of buildings are aware of these supporting points, as well. As soon as some of the key parts of the building get blown up, it will collapse like a house of cards, no matter how safe and invulnerable it has seemed. The same goes for politics: if the weak points of a state are known, it can be destroyed. You just need to blow the supporting structures up…

What has been the bedrock of the Russian state for centuries? It was the autocracy. The residents of Russia were fighting and dying for the Tsar, the Faith, and the Motherland. It has been so for centuries. When there was no tsar, disturbance reigned in Russia. It was exactly the situation after Boris Godunov's death, when the Time of Troubles almost put an end to the Russian statehood. Russia's independence was at stake: the Polish and Swedish kings were eager to divide the territory of the Russian state for their own benefit. A brother killed a brother, a Russian killed a Russian. The country was saved from falling into the horrible abyss by the election of the new tsar, Michael Feodorovich Romanov.

And Russia made a comeback. It grew stronger under the sceptre of the lawful authorities, whose legitimacy was questioned neither by the noblemen, nor by the ordinary folk. It grew weaker when the rights of the next monarch ascending the throne were disputed.

All those wishing to destroy Russia were striving to interrupt the legitimacy of the Russian rulers.

What was the main tool for building the Great Russia, which at the beginning of the 20 century stretched from Helsingfors to Vladivostok and from Warsaw to Port Arthur?

The answer is definite: it was the Russian Army. The armed forces have always been the only tool for building empires.

All those wishing to destroy Russia had to ruin the Russian Army first.

Yet, any state is not only the armed forces but also the administrative management. It's the establishment and bureaucracy. It's the merchants and trade-related people. It's a whole stratum of society that facilitates development of the country and helps it move forward.

All those wishing to destroy Russia had to destroy the century-old machine of the state government.

The revolution in itself is not an evil incarnate. It's the consequences of the revolution that are terrible. The economy of Russia, its way of life, its population didn't receive the tremendous blow in 1917. A real nightmare came a bit later. It started in 1918, exactly during this first year of the Russian Civil War, when the country suffered the greatest losses and damages. Remember the Russian history. When did the military operations take place on the territory of our country last? On a large scale — in 1812, they hardly touched the Russian territories during the Crimean War in 1855–1856. In fact, in the remote provinces of the Russian Empire they hadn't seen war for about one hundred years. Whole generations grew up being sure (like the Americans of today) that the war was taking place somewhere on the outskirts of the country or abroad. The Civil War affected each and every home. It split families, it split the country.

It did irreparable damage to the country's economy. In order to repair the economy, the collectivization and the industrialization will be needed. This will cost Russia millions of lives more...

The liquidation of the Russian nation started in 1917 and continued like an avalanche in 1918. Our story will be exactly about this period.

Did any accurately made-up plan for the "liquidation" of Russia exist? Any step-by-step schedule? Definitely, not. However, the most important points of this operation were clearly determined, and all-out efforts were made to reach the following targets:

- the destruction of the legitimate regime
- the destruction of the army
- the destruction of the state in principle.

Development of such enormous processes as a revolution is impossible to predict. The plan could succeed, the plan could fail. In fact, not all the objectives have been reached. The lawful heirs of the throne were killed, but the "unlawful heirs" took a firm hold of the rule. The Russian Army was destroyed, but a new one was established. Or rather, two armies — the Red Army and the White Army. The Navy was sent to the bottom, but not completely. A new state machinery was created instead of the old one. *The main target of our geopolitical opponents was not reached — Russia didn't perish.* It grew weaker and kept its head down until it appeared again on the political map of the astonished Europe in May 1945, having extended really far from its original boundaries. Only to instantly lose again in 1991 all its strategic advantages, which our grandparents had paid with their blood during the Great Patriotic War. And to once again in the 21 century have the strength to stop the disintegration process and start building up the Great Russia again...

This book tells about the first attempt to liquidate the Russian state made in the 20 century.

It tells about the murder of the Romanovs. It tells about the horrors of the Civil War. It tells about the secret operations of the foreign intelligence services. This book is about the loss of the old

Russia and the search of the new Russia at the incredible expense of lives and at a high price in blood...

We don't know our history well enough. It can repeat itself. God forbid that!

Major Case Investigator Sokolov was standing in the middle of the office of the supreme governor of Russia. A man of average height, slightly round-shouldered, his arms constantly fidgeting; he was permanently biting his moustache and gave a strange impression at the first sight. The artificial glass eye and a certain squint of another eye just added to it. The investigator was holding a black leather folder with the report in his hand. The report on the death of the Romanovs.

The admiral was gloomily working his jaw. He was the one to assign this short man, who seemed to be extremely responsible, to find out all the horrible truth about the fate of the crown-bearing family. Now the investigation was finished.

Kolchak was twiddling a pencil in his hands. He himself asked Sokolov to begin his report with the abdication of Nicholas Romanov. Some questions had been running in his head for quite a long time, and he wanted to find the answers to these questions in the investigation results. The inklings of the truth about the last months of the Romanovs were mixed up with a lot of everyday details and the description of the humiliations they had to go through. It was difficult to listen to all of this. Very difficult. God, how is it even possible that the Russian soldiers and officers in such a short period of time turned into real bastards?!

The admiral stood up and walked across his office, his arms behind his back. He simply wanted to shoot dead almost all those who Sokolov had mentioned in his report. Especially that rascal who stood sentry in Tsarskoye Selo and shot down a little wild goat in the park. The heir to the throne Alexei loved those goats so much. He cried and was very upset. The flayer was strongly scolded, but when he was standing sentry in the park next time, he shot down another little goat. For no special reason — just to upset to the crown-bearing child.

— The Bolshevik government almost immediately sent a telegram to Tobolsk to inform that the people didn't have money to support the Tsar's family.

From now on, the Tsar's family should live at their own expense. They were given an apartment and a soldier ration per person. At the same time, they were not allowed to spend more than 600 rubles per person of their expense per month. Cream, butter, coffee, and sweets disappeared very quickly from the table of the crown-bearing family. They received half a pound of sugar per month each…

Kolchak turned to the investigator. Sokolov with his unemotional voice continued to describe the financial adversities of the Imperial family. Maybe, it's the right way — to make the report in an aloof and unemotional manner. Otherwise, the nerves would snap. But he, Kolchak, is not able to react like this. There is still a long way until the horrible end of the report, and his heart is already aching. The admiral raised the carafe to get some water.

— …After the murder of the Tsar's family in Yekaterinburg, they found the military trousers of the former Emperor. The trousers were patched in several places, and in the left pocket they found two labels, "Manufactured on August 4, 1900" and "Repaired on October 8, 1916"…

He was parsimonious, the last Russian Tsar. Maybe, even avaricious. He took after his father Alexander III — his trousers were totally worn out. But Nicholas II managed to dilapidate the heritage of his father to the last mite!

Kolchak felt somewhat better after having drunk some water. He knew that the report would be very difficult to listen to and ordered the report to be read out to him only with the doors closed. He sat down again and gazed unseeingly at the opposite wall.

The investigator was reading on. He didn't make any stops and didn't accentuate any words or sentences.

– … Around midnight, when the Imperial family was sleeping, Yurovsky himself woke them up and ordered under a certain excuse the Imperial family and all those who were with them to go down to the basement. His Majesty the Emperor was bearing Crown Prince Alexei in his arms.

The investigation authorities believe that the excuse used by Yurovsky to entice the Imperial family into the basement was the departure from Yekaterinburg. His Majesty the Emperor and Crown Prince Alexei were sitting in the middle of the room. Doctor Botkin was standing next to them. Behind them at the wall there were Her Majesty the Empress and three of the Princesses. Suddenly, ten people who had been mentioned before and who had come together with Yurovsky entered the room. Yurovsky, his assistants Nikulin and Medvedev were in the room, too. All of them were armed with revolvers…

The supreme governor of Russia started twiddling the pencil in his hands even faster. Kolchak could see this scene as if he saw it with his own eyes. He could scent the perfume of Nicholas' young daughters. He could see the heir to the throne and his face, which was adultly serious…

— …The Empress was peering at the chekists, who entered the room. Doctor Botkin gave a short cough and covered his mouth with his palm, stroking mechanically his beard and moustache. Nicholas was silent.

Kolchak could see everything himself. He wanted to shout, to warn them about the end coming. But the scream curdled in his throat. He was short of air…

Yakov Yurovsky shook his head and took a piece of paper out of his pocket. He looked at it briefly, looked up and straight into the face of the former Emperor.

— Your relatives wanted to save you but they failed, and we have to shoot you down ourselves.

Nicholas's eyes opened wide with horror.

— What? -

— I tell you what, — Yurovsky sneered, aiming his revolver at Nicholas's head. Other executioners fired theirs, too…

The broken pencil cracked plaintively.

— Everyone's death was instantaneous except that of Alexei and a Princess, apparently, Anastasia, — the voice of the investigator brought Kolchak back from the chilly basement into his warm and light office. — Yurovsky finished off Alexei, shot him from his revolver. The princess was stuck with bayonets.

The heir was 14 years old. Quite a child. Anastasia Nikolayevna was a young lady, a teenager. Shy and a bit chubby.

— With bayonets, — whispered the supreme governor of Russia. — With bayonets…

And asked in a loud voice:

— Who were the other killers?

— According to some facts, discovered during the preliminary investigation, I'm sure that the majority of those ten were German prisoners of war. Yurovsky, who could speak German, was speaking to them in German.

— Be more precise, please, Nikolay Alexeyevich.

— Most likely, they were Magyars. We haven't managed to determine the nationality of other criminals. But they spoke Russian well enough.

— Good. Go on, please.

— After the villainy had been performed, the corpses of the Imperial family and of the others were put on a truck, and Yurovsky together with some other people known to us transported them out of Yekaterinburg to a godforsaken mine…

The report of the Major Case Investigator Sokolov was approaching its end. But Admiral Kolchak wasn't listening anymore. The beautiful princesses, the stern face of the Empress, and the always calm face of the Emperor floated in his memory. Kolchak had seen Nicholas only thrice. He saw him two times, when Nicholas visited the ships of the Baltic Navy, and the third long lasting conversation took place when Kolchak was appointed the commander-in-chief of the Black Sea Navy. It was not the face of the perished Emperor that the supreme governor of Russia saw in his mind, but the face of the boy, the heir to the throne Alexei. The death of Nicholas's family is a warning, it's a horrible nightmare!

The boy's face…

…Kolchak has left his family in Paris. His son Rostislav, Slavushok, stayed there. His wife and his son are in a quiet place.

He will fight to the end the rascals killing children. He may perish, but Rostislav Kolchak must stay alive.

The admiral pulled out the upper drawer of his desk. Rostik smiled and looked at him, sitting with his mother on a chair. That was the best photo of his son…[1]

---

[1] The original text of the report of the Investigator Sokolov to Dowager Empress Maria Feodorovna was used here. Kolchak was the first one to find out the results of the investigation (http://www.romanov-center.narod.ru/Documents/Sok.htm).

CHAPTER 2

Liquidation of the Romanovs

> The first condition of immortality is death.
>
> *Stanislaw Jerzy Lec*

The victims of the Civil War amount to millions. The warring parties have committed numerous crimes against the civilians, against the soldiers of the enemy, and against those who were suspected of sympathizing the enemy. Yet, the most famous link in the long chain of crimes of the Revolution times is the execution of the family of Nicholas II. Kolchak, the supreme ruler of Russia, appointed Nikolay Sokolov, the investigator of special cases, to investigate this atrocity. And the admiral did not make a mistake about choosing him: despite his somewhat strange appearance, Sokolov gave his all in order to find the truth. After the end of the Civil War, Nikolay Sokolov moved to Europe and settled down in Paris. Even after Kolchak's death and after the Whites had been defeated he continued to collect the information and to examine witnesses. Finally, based on the evidence he had collected, he wrote a book called "The Assassination of the Tsar's Family." However, the mystery, which the 42-year old investigator was trying to unravel, was utterly dangerous. In 1924, he was found dead near his home. The diagnosis would be a standard one for mysterious deaths like this one, a heart attack.

There are a lot of interesting facts in Sokolov's book. Reading it, one strongly realizes that the assassination of Nicholas and his family was prepared long before the physical liquidation of the crown-bearing family. And it was being prepared not by Bolsheviks but by those who on the eve of their coming to power were "holding the steering wheel of the state." Who were these people? More specifically, who was this person? It was Alexander Kerensky.

In order to understand the background and reasons of the odd and mysterious death of the Tsar's family let's go back in time a little, to March 1917, to the moment when the monarchy collapsed. On March 9 (22), 1917, six days after Nicholas II had abdicated from the throne, there was issued an order to arrest the Tsar's family. And the Petrograd District Commander General Kornilov was assigned to do this. A grimace in the history — the future icon of the White movement arrests the Romanovs. Yes, it's true. The historians do not know about any monarchic complot during the infamous rule of the Provisional Government. No one was going to enthrone a new Russian tsar. Why then did the Februarists arrest the Imperial family?

Because the preparation for its future elimination had already started. Yet, it was imperceptible at the time. When abdicating from the throne, Nicholas Romanov tried to get certain conditions for himself and his nearest.[1] He could not imagine that the Provisional Government would in the most dishonourable way break all their agreements. The demands of the former monarch were quite modest:

- to allow a free way for his family to Tsarskoye Selo;
- to guarantee them a safe stay there before the children recover (who had measles);
- to let the family and its entourage travel to the northern Russian seaports in order to leave for Britain before the end of the war;
- to let them return to Russia after the war ends in order to permanently settle down in Livadia (the Crimea).[2]

---

[1] It looks like Nicholas II has never actually abdicated from the throne, and the whole story of his abdication was roughly fabricated. No "abdication" text has been found in the archives. There is just one document addressed to the "Chief of the General Staff", typewritten and signed with pencil. The signature looks very suspicious, and it does not look at all like the Monarch's signature. Also, he had never used a pencil to sign any documents. And this "abdication from the throne" is signed exactly in this way.

[2] Kerensky A. Russia at Historic Turn. M., Terra Publishing, 1996 (http://stepanov01.narod.ru/library/kerensk/chapt14.htm#razd02)

The shortest way from Murmansk to London is by sea. This is exactly the way that the British convoys used to get here during the Great Patriotic War. That's how Nicholas wants to leave for the "allied" Great Britain. The special committee created by the Provisional Government for the "investigation of the atrocities of the tsarist regime" will not find any crimes. Nicholas Romanov is waiting patiently, while the committee is finding out that he has not done anything bad to Russia. After that he hopes to go abroad with all his family. The Februarists have promised this to the former Tsar. But instead of Livadia in the Crimea Kerensky sent the Tsar's family to Siberia, where no one of the crown-bearing family of the Romanovs returned alive from.

However, publicly he said something quite different, "At the earliest possible time Nicholas II under my personal supervision will be driven to the harbour, where he will depart to Britain on a steamer."[1] He will say this, but this will not be done. Why did the government do this to the Monarch, who had humbly surrendered his power? The answer is simple.

The first paragraph in the unwritten plan of the liquidation of Russia was the destruction of the legitimate power.

Soon it would get so hot in Russia that the time of the tsar reign would look like paradise. It would be then that the tired Russian people would consider calling the very young Grand Prince Alexei to the throne. He has a right to the throne — by the laws of the Russian Empire, Nicholas II did not have the right to abdicate from the throne on behalf of his son. In other words, from a legal perspective, the country has a legal ruler — Alexei II. It was clear for the orchestrators of the Russian catastrophe that they could not allow Alexei to leave the country alive. As it was difficult to eliminate the boy alone, the only right decision was not to let any of the Romanovs out of the country. For these purposes, they had to be arrested under any pretext and later destroyed. **All of them.** Then the issue of the monarchy reinstatement will be over with the last spade of soil thrown onto their grave...

---

[1] Kerensky A. Russia at Historic Turn. M., Terra Publishing, 1996 (http://stepanov01.narod.ru/library/kerensk/chapt14.htm#razd02)

Of course, the noble men — the heads of Milyukov's KD Party and of Guchkov's Octobrist Party are not good for this. The Latvian Riflemen and drunk sailors would be more suitable for such task. But their time hasn't come yet, so let the Romanovs stay under house arrest or in prison. It's safer like this.

The Provisional Government, indeed, makes an inquiry if the family of Nicholas II could depart to Britain. And if the British government accedes to such a request, there will be no problems any more. The British king is the cousin of Nicholas II. Moreover, they resemble each other so closely. If the revolution had happened in Great Britain, the noble and naive Nicholas would not have given a second thought to whether he could or could not play host to his brother's family. He is a true companion-in-arms of Great Britain, he has been carrying on a war for three years, sometimes to the disadvantage of his own country, and the "allies" have nothing to blame him for. Nicholas does not understand that he interests his "allies" only in the form of a corpse. The same fate awaits his family.

At first, "Georgie," George, the King of Great Britain, granted the Tsar's family a permission to come to Great Britain. But the investigation led by Kerensky was underway at the same time, and the family could not leave yet. The British didn't risk anything: they were, allegedly, ready to host the Tsar but he just wouldn't come. Tough luck! However, the investigation came to its end, and the verdict of the Provisional Government's commission was that the Monarch was not guilty. There were no more obstacles for Nicholas to leave. And then, the "allies" helped Kerensky to ease his conscience. Surely, he promised to send the Romanovs abroad but didn't do this. Now he can easily say he hasn't kept his promise because it was not possible any more.

The British have declined Kerensky's request to host the Tsar's family. This negative answer is a dark secret of our "allies." Even today, they do not want to take responsibility for the blood of the innocent children of Nicholas II! But it was not difficult at all to save the Romanovs. "Twice the Russians addressed the British with the plea to help them set free the Emperor and his Imperial family, languishing in captivity. For the first time, in April 1917, they asked Buchanan for help. The only thing that was required of Buchanan was to contact his government in order for the latter to send a British ship to meet the Russian cruiser and take the Tsar and his crown-bearing family aboard. But Sir George Buchanan adamantly refused to do it having said, "There's no time to think about that now! Now everyone is occupied by much more important things. Furthermore, I don't want to burden my King and my government with extra concerns...."[1]

Kerensky did not want to assume the responsibility for the death of the Romanovs, either, that's why in his memoirs he told the truth. And this truth caused a storm of indignation. The former British Prime Minister Lloyd George and the former British Ambassador Buchanan objected to him.[2] Kerensky had eased his conscience, and the British got thrown into panic insisting that they had never revoked their consent to give asylum to the Tsar. The things have come to a serious pass. In 1927, as an answer to a parliamentary inquiry, the foreign secretary of Great Britain accused Kerensky of lying, having presented the old telegrams as "a self-explanatory accusation." But it was a lie. In July 1917, which is to say well after, the British Military Attache General Knox gave not an equally specific answer to the request to host the Romanov family, "Britain is not in the slightest interested in the fate of the Russian Imperial family..."[1]

---

[1] The evidence of Harald Graf merits a very serious attention. He served in the Baltic Navy in the described period and later, in exile, became the head of the office and the personal secretary of Grand Prince Kirill Vladimirovich, who would later become the main pretender to the Russian throne. The Baltic sailor moved in the upper sets of politics and Russian emigration, and nobody ever reproached him for forging the facts and lying. For the first time, his book was published in 1922 in Munich. When several copies of this book reached the USSR, they ended up in the Soviet special repositories. And not without a reason! The book written without any delay right after the end of the Civil War describes many remarkable and little known facts. (Graf H. On Board of Novik. The Baltic Navy During the War and the Revolution. Saint Petersburg, Gangut, 1997. P. 385–386.)

[2] Kerensky told that the British Prime Minister Lloyd George denied asylum for the Tsar, and it was Buchanan who brought this information to him (Romanov A. M. Memoirs. M., AST Publishing, 2008. P. 327).

Trying to conceal their role in the death of the Tsar's family, the "allies" hid the traces of their treason, having hidden away the telegrams with their refusal. When the former secretary of the British Embassy in Petrograd said that he remembered receiving a telegram from London with a refusal, the British diplomats answered that his memory must have failed him. But in 1932, Buchanan's daughter told about the strain which was put on her father.[2] Under the threat of losing his retirement pension, he had to forge the story in his memoirs and hide the truth from the public. And yet, the truth has got out. Some of these documents have even been published.

The telegram of Lord Stamfordham, the King's personal secretary, to Lord Balfour, the foreign secretary of Great Britain (24 March, 1917) reads, "...I beg you to tell the Prime Minister that everything the King hears and reads in the press shows that the public will not like the presence of the Emperor and the Empress in this country, and this will jeopardize the position of the King and the Queen... Buchanan must tell Milyukov that in Britain the discontent with regard to the arrival of the Emperor and the Empress is so strong that we have to withdraw our former consent to the proposal of the Russian government..."[3]

The telegram of Lord Buchanan, the British ambassador to Russia, to Lord Balfour, the foreign secretary of Great Britain (24 March, 1917) reads, "...I completely agree with you... It will be much better if the former Emperor doesn't come to Britain."[4]

The Tsar's family can't go to Britain. But this does not imply that they will die. In order for the Romanovs to perish, Kerensky still had to try really hard. Because there is one more opportunity, Nicholas Romanov asked to be sent together with his family to Livadia in the Crimea. But it's exactly there, where the Romanov family will not go to. Why? Because this peninsula will be controlled by the Whites during all the period of the Civil War. Of course, Kerensky does not know this upfront, but, strangely enough, he does not want to send the former Tsar's family there. The Investigator Sokolov in his book "The Assassination of the Tsar's Family" brings forward the explanation of Kerensky himself. The head of the Provisional Government explains his odd behaviour in the following way, "It was decided (during a secret meeting) to find some other place for relocating the Tsar's family, and it was me who was appointed to find a solution to this issue. I started to explore the possibilities to do this. I planned to take them somewhere to Central Russia and was contemplating to use the estates of Michael Alexandrovich and Nicholas Mikhailovich for this purpose. But it has turned out to be absolutely impossible. Even the fact of transferring the Tsar to these places across the Russia of workers and peasants. It was also unthinkable to transfer them to the south. Some of the grand princes were already living there, as well as Maria Feodorovna, and there were already enough of disagreement there regarding it. Finally, I chose Tobolsk."[1]

---

[1] Graf H. On Board of Novik. The Baltic Navy During the War and the Revolution". Saint Petersburg, Gangut, 1997. P. 386.

[2] http://his.1september.ru/view_article.php?ID=200801402

[3] Solzhenitsyn A. I. April 1917. (http://koleso.by.ru/4/4.htm)

[4] Ib.

Thus, the Head of the Provisional Government Kerensky decides to take the Romanov family to Tobolsk. Let us draw our attention to one very important detail: when Prince Lvov was the head of the state, no one thought of transferring Nicholas and his family anywhere. As soon as Kerensky became the head of the Provisional Government, an immediate decision about relocating the Tsar's family to some middle of nowhere was taken. But why Tobolsk? Is it really that much safer there? Sokolov has also pointed out the odd logic of the father of Russian democracy, "I do not understand why transferring the Tsar from Tsarskoye Selo anywhere except Tobolsk meant to transfer him all the way through the Russia of workers and peasants, and why transferring him to Tobolsk did not mean this."[2]

---

[1] Sokolov N. A. The Assassination of the Tsar's Family. (http://www.hrono.info/libris/lib_s/ubi04.html)

[2] Ib.

I don't know, what grade Sasha Kerensky had in his geography, it's better to ask his schoolmate Vova Ulyanov about it. Why didn't Kerensky realize that the way to Tobolsk lay across not some different, special Russia, but exactly across "the Russia of workers and peasants"?! It just turned out that way, the historians will say later, it just happened.

Let us consider the statesmen to be capable adults. If their actions seem odd to us, it must be because we fail to understand their true goal. Naivety and unawareness of Alexander Kerensky has to do with one thing, the mass grave of the crown-bearing family. Kerensky didn't shoot the children of the Romanovs himself, but he did everything in order for them not to stay alive. Thus, his actions become quite conscious and reasonable for us. The British intelligence purposefully destroys its competitor, the Russian Empire. The monarchical system is one of its characteristics, and it means that the ruling dynasty must be exterminated. The masters make their recommendations, and the marionette Kerensky should put it into effect. This being said, he wants to somehow justify his actions for the casual observers. As long as there is no rational explanation to his actions, Alexander Kerensky has to make it up. Sometimes it turns out well, sometimes the result is pure nonsense. Kerensky can't write the truth and confirm Sokolov's guess, probably, the most terrible one in his whole book, "There was only one reason for transferring the Tsar's family to Tobolsk. It was exactly the only one that remained of all the others indicated by Prince Lvov and Kerensky: a faraway cold Siberia, the land where other people were once exiled to"[1], can he?

We wish to add for ourselves: Siberia is a land of no return!

The facts push us as well as Kerensky to draw an evident conclusion: it's dangerous to keep the Tsar's family near the capital — Finland is near, and Sweden is not so far, either. In the Crimea there is sea, seaports, and the foreign lands are also close by. One never knows when the Romanovs might flee, break free. That's why it was "unthinkable" to transfer the Tsar, who had abdicated, there. "The life at the time was full of "confusions" everywhere, but all the Imperial personages, who lived in the south, managed to escape, as they all were near the borders of the country,"[1] writes investigator Sokolov.

---

[1] Sokolov N. A. The Assassination of the Tsar's Family. (http://www.hrono.info/libris/lib_s/ubi04.html)

Odd, isn't it? But everything happens the other way around.

The Tsar and his family will be murdered in the "safest," according to Kerensky, place, while the other Romanovs will manage to escape from the most "unsafe" one.

The transfer of the Tsar to his new place of residence is a closely guarded secret. It's such a big secret that even Nicholas himself doesn't know where he is going. Another scorching day in July, the insects hovering in the air… One wants to bathe and not to think about anything bad.

"July 28. Friday. The day was beautiful: we took a wonderful walk. After breakfast, Mr. Benckendorff told us that we would be sent not to the Crimea but to one of the remote principal provincial towns, a journey to which takes three or even four days! But no one knows, where exactly, even the commandant doesn't. And we were so looking forward to staying in Livadia for a longer period of time!"[2] the former Monarch would write in his diary.

"July 31. Monday. The last day of our stay in Tsarskoye Selo… Our departure has been kept such a secret that even the motorcars and the train were booked after the scheduled hour of departure. We were so exhausted! Alexei was sleepy: he went to sleep and then woke up again several times. A false alarm went off several times: we had to put our coats on, go out to the balcony, and then return inside. Then the dawn broke. We had our morning tea, and then finally at 5:00 Ker[ensky] came and said that everyone was ready to go."[3]

Why can't the itinerary be disclosed to Nicholas Romanov himself? Because he is being deceived, and the deception should be exposed already upon their arrival or on the way, when nothing can be done anymore. There was deception everywhere: Siberia instead of the Crimea, a 12 (!) days' journey to Tobolsk instead of a "three to four" days' one to the east. Tobolsk is a backcountry. Taiga. There's nowhere to run, nowhere to escape. In his diary, Nicholas Romanov described the day of the departure in great detail. And this despite the fact that the former Tsar had never been a person of many words.

---

[1] Sokolov N. A. The Assassination of the Tsar's Family. (http://www.hrono.info/libris/lib_s/ubi04.html)

[2] http://militera.lib.ru/db/nikolay-2/1917.html

[3] Ib.

Now, let us recall why it has become absolutely necessary to transfer the Tsar's family from Tsarskoye Selo. The excuse found by Kerensky was quite reasonable: the protection of the crown-bearing family. At the beginning of July, there was a failed Bolshevik riot in Petrograd, that's why the Tsar's family had to be protected and transferred to a safe place far from this "boiling pot." Allegedly, the Petrograd Soviet was continuously attempting to put Nicholas Romanov into prison and to execute him…

For the orchestrators of Russia's downfall a legitimate pretender to the throne remaining alive is a catastrophe. This is a real threat for the whole carefully planned operation. The strong forces of the country can line up behind him, and the country will be saved. That's why none of the real indisputable pretenders to the Russian throne should survive during the revolution.

This is why the liquidation of the Romanovs did not start with the family of the former Emperor. Those who were planning the murder of the members of the Russian ruling dynasty knew the rules of succession to the throne well. Besides the fact that all the main pretenders to the throne were eliminated at the same time, we have to point out another peculiarity of this grim operation.

The Romanovs were being killed in the order in which they could be enthroned.

The chronology was followed rigidly. We must admit that to kill the third or the fourth pretender to the throne does not make any sense if the first and the second ones are still alive. Only from this perspective we can truly understand the massive slaughter of the Romanovs that started in the second half of 1918. Thus, let's remember two main rules of this liquidation: SIMULTANEOUSLY AND IN THE ORDER OF SUCCESSION TO THE THRONE.

Let's ask ourselves, who was №1 pretender to the Russian throne? In order to disorientate and confuse us and not let us see the cast-iron logic that was at the base of the liquidation of the crown-bearing family members, one simple but effective method was used. First, everything was being hushed up and kept secret. When the facts and documents had been published, the tactics were slightly changed in order to cover the truth. Everyone everywhere was being persuaded that there was only one version of what had actually happened. This one version obscured the real depth of the tragedy. A wonderful veil was woven in order to stop people from seeing and understanding what was going on. What do I mean?

Everywhere you can read that in the night of July 17 the whole family *of the last Russian Emperor Nicholas II* was shot dead in Yekaterinburg. You can also read that the bloodthirsty Bolsheviks have shot dead all the other Romanovs in order to wipe off the Romanov dynasty and the very memory of it. But this is not the case. After Nicholas II had abdicated from the throne on March 2, 1917, himself and on behalf of his son, his brother Michael Alexandrovich Romanov became the emperor. It was him who on March 3, 1917, under the dictation of the Duma delegation transferred the succession of the Russian throne to the discretion of the All-Russian Constituent Assembly. Exactly after he had done this and before the convocation of the latter, the Provisional Government was established in Russia. The Provisional Government has spent a lot of energy and efforts to prepare the elections but it has spent even more to disrupt the country and eliminate the Romanovs.

It was exactly Michael II who was the last Russian emperor.

Only one day has passed between Nicholas II abdicating from the throne and Michael agreeing to postpone his ascending to the throne till the decision of the All-Russian Constituent Assembly will be taken. All this time it was Michael II, who was the Russian tsar.[1] Then, why is all this confusion necessary? Why call Nicholas II the last Russian Emperor and deprive his brother of this title of honour? There are several reasons for entangling the truth. One evident fact comes to the front: Michael Romanov was the main pretender to the throne and he was the **first** of the Romanovs to be murdered. It was the matter of how the one who was killed should be called: was it just the younger brother of the last Russian Tsar or the main pretender to the throne? The following events only confirm our guess. Who was the second in this tragic list? The one who was the next candidate to becoming a Russian tsar. So, who is this person? It is Crown Prince Alexei, the 14-year old son of Nicholas II, suffering from hemophilia. But hasn't his father abdicated from the throne himself and on behalf of his son? Yes, he has. Yet, this fact could be disputed. Whether Nicholas II could or could not abdicate from the throne on behalf of his son is a subject of a separate legal research. Does the abdication of the Tsar from the throne have any legal force at all? Since Nicholas had abdicated from the throne, so many God's and human laws were broken that the former Tsar could have appealed against his own abdication. He could have cited being under pressure and his life being under threat. In such conditions, he could do nothing but abdicate from the throne. Theoretically, we cannot reject such a possibility. That's why Crown Prince Alexei and Nicholas Romanov himself could be №2 and №3 on the list of the pretenders for the throne, respectively.

---

[1] It is essential to also note the fact that the abdication from the throne of a ruling monarch has not been stipulated by the applicable legislation of the Russian Empire. That is why the abdication of Nicholas II added more confusion to the already complicated situation, when it was hard to understand how legitimate the country's authorities were. Everything got so tangled up that until now among monarchists there is no consensus on a rather simple issue — who the lawful heir to the throne is.

Now, a few words about the very first pretender to the Russian throne. Michael was the favourite son of Alexander III, who, being rather strict with other children, was always forgiving to his favourite son for all his antics. In July 1899, after the death of his brother George, he was declared the heir of the throne and had been the heir until the birth of Nicholas II's son –Crown Prince Alexei, in July 1904. It looked as if the throne had forever become inaccessible for Michael. And he behaves in the respective way: in October 1912, in Vienna he gets secretly married with Natalia Wulfert without having got a permission from his brother — the Emperor. This union is a fruit of the frenzied passion of the grand prince. The result was a secret wedding abroad. Because of this marriage, Michael was banned from entering Russia by the order of Nicholas II. Besides that, he was dismissed and was striped of his title of aide–de–camp. But Michael was not worried about all that, he was enjoying his serene family happiness living in **London.** He was allowed to return to Russia and received his title back only when the World War started, and his wife was conferred the surname of Brasova. During the war, Michael was the commander of the so-called Caucasian Savage Division formed of Chechens and Dagestani, which was famous for its uncontrollable temper. However, the brother of the Tsar was not allowed to go to the frontline.

And absolutely unexpected, at a twist of history, Michael becomes the Russian tsar. However, Michael didn't follow his brother's advice. On the contrary, being under pressure from Kerensky and other Duma members,[1] he left the question of succession to the throne to be decided by the All-Russian Constituent Assembly. Being who he was, could he proceed in a different way, take the power and save the country from the future turmoil? The fact is that he was not able to do it. That's why Nicholas II allegedly had to write the instrument of abdication twice. It was necessary that Nicholas abdicated not in favour of his son Alexei, but in favour of his brother Michael. The psychological portrait of Michael Romanov was well-known, because he had lived with his beloved in London for two years. He steers clear of the crown, preferring a calm private life to it. His reaction to the extreme situation can be easily predicted. In the moment of choice, Michael can be easily pressed and will use any pretext to absolve himself of any responsibility for power. And it really turns out that way. The decision regarding the takeover of the tsar's power by Michael, dictated by the Duma members and approved by the Constituent Assembly, had no precedent in the history. *It has never been so that the transition of power from one monarch to another was decided by the results of the plebiscite and, in addition to this, during the war!*

Having performed his task and having given up power, Michael settled down in the Gatchina Palace in the suburbs of Petrograd. In August 1917, the first bell rang for him, as well — he was also arrested by the Provisional Government.

---

[1] Translator's note: The State Duma was established in 1906 and was the first elected Russian parliament.

However, the release was not long in coming. And after that the real Theatre of the Absurd started. After the October overthrow, the pretender to the throne Michael Romanov asked Bolsheviks for the permission for a "free residency" in Russia in the capacity of a rank and file citizen, and received it. Not being able to understand the secret motives of the current events, not feeling the peril, which was created by his very existence, the naive Michael Alexandrovich believed that everything would be just so.

And later on the dates started to coincide oddly. Michael Romanov was again arrested by the Bolshevik government in **March 1918**. "Without any reasons," as the historians used to put it, describing these events. We fully understand the reason of the arrest: the second stage of the future elimination of the main pretenders to the throne begins. The Provisional Government didn't let anybody go abroad, now Lenin's government must kill the Romanovs. In this case, it absolutely doesn't matter at all whether Michael Romanov is involved in the anti-Bolshevik plots or not. He is arrested not because *of* something, he is arrested *in order to have something done.* He is arrested to be killed.

It was not only Michael who was in trouble late in **March 1918**, it was the whole family. And this family of the Romanovs is big — the executioners will have a lot of work. The genealogic tree of the Romanovs has grown exuberantly on the blessed Russian soil. Emperor Nicholas I had four sons and three daughters. Emperor Alexander II had six sons and two daughters. Emperor Alexander III fell behind his father a little: he had four sons and two daughters. Nicholas II himself had four daughters and one son. These are the children of the Romanovs, who have ruled in Russia. The productivity of the sisters and brothers of the Russian monarchs was also high. It was the tradition of the ruling house to have many children. In other words, the number of the Romanovs was just a bit smaller than the number of the Ivanovs[1] in Russia.

---

[1] Translator's note: Ivanov is one of the most common family names in Russia.

March 1918 is the beginning of the Romanovs' road to the Calvary. On **March 17, 1918,** Michael Romanov is exiled to Perm. The farther away from Petrograd the better, to a place where there is solitude and stillness. Have a look at the map, and you will get the idea. The private secretary of Michael Romanov, Johnson, who was British, was arrested and exiled by Bolsheviks at the same time. Accompanied by the secretary, escorted by two servants, the last Russian emperor comes to Perm. Other exiled Romanovs are gathered not far from Perm, in a little county town of Alapayevsk in the Perm province, which is known only for its monastery. They were accommodated in the local school building: the sister of the Russian Empress, Grand Princess Elizaveta Feodorovna, who had ardently welcomed Rasputin's assassination; Grand Prince Sergei Mikhailovich Romanov, and Grand Princes Ioann, Igor, and Konstantin. The last prisoner to come to Alapayevsk was Vladimir Paley (Alexander II's grandson). He was born in the second marriage of his father Grand Prince Pavel Alexandrovich and was the stepbrother to Grand Prince Dmitry Pavlovich, the murderer of Rasputin. Being Romanov by birth, he had a different family name — Paley. The scenario with the prisoners in Alapayevsk is the same: they live freely after both revolutions, and then they get arrested without any reason. Their arrest took place in **March 1918.**

The family of Nicholas II also experiences troubles **in March.** They lived a calm life in Tobolsk, when Commissar Ducmane from Omsk arrived there. He was appointed the commissar of the town, but his main task was to watch the Romanovs. And so he did. He watched the Romanovs, not interfering in their life, studying them. Exactly two days after his arrival, on **March 26,** the detachment of the Red Guard (the first (!) after the Bolshevik overthrow) arrived in Tobolsk. The safeguarding of the Tsar's family is getting tougher, but this process is undisclosed so far. Until now, the Romanovs have been safeguarded by the same soldiers who used to safeguard them in Tsarskoye Selo. Let's remember this date, **March 1918.** This is a period of preparations. The danger is not visible, but dark clouds are thickening above the house of the Romanovs.

March 1918. This is a fatal month for the Romanovs.[1] It's exactly from this month that the events that resulted in the death of the Tsar's dynasty representatives speeded up.

It's exactly here at this point that we'll make a stop.

But why exactly March 1918?

March 1918 is the month, when the Peace Treaty of Brest-Litovsk was signed. The death of the Romanovs and the manoeuvres of Lenin and Trotsky between the Germans and the "allies" are directly interconnected. Yet, if today Lenin's eventual connections with Germany are "hyped," his connections with the Entente countries are wrongly forgotten. And these connections are very important in order to understand all the following events, which include the death of the Romanovs, as well...

Right after the October overthrow, Lev Trotsky became the narkom[2] of foreign affairs. His many-volume memoirs are a priceless treasury of information, "On the 18th of November, General Jadson, the head of the American mission, unexpectedly visited me in the Smolny. He told me that he was not able to speak on behalf of the American government yet, but he hoped that everything would be *all right*."[3] Before leaving, the peace-loving general declared, "The time of protests and threats towards the Soviet Power is gone if it ever existed."[4] Kindly pay attention to this: only few weeks have passed since the Bolshevik overthrow, but the official head of the American mission doesn't have any claims towards them. And this is after the new Russian government had addressed Germany with a peace appeal. How could it be different if we remember that the fighter for the people's happiness Lev Trotsky arrived in Russia on the ship from the USA almost simultaneously with Lenin, who had arrived in Russia via Germany...

---

[1] This is really true. The February Revolution can be called the March Revolution in accordance with the New Style. In March 1917, the Romanovs lost the throne, and in March 1917 they were arrested.

[2] Translator's note: People's Commissar.

[3] Trotsky L. My Life (http//www.1917com./Marxism/Trotsky/My_Life/My_Life-00-02-06.html)

[4] Ib.

The unofficial representatives of the western behind-the-scenes forces visited the new Bolshevik leaders. They had "the honour" to continue the huge project on Russia's destruction. Three emissaries from three empires arrived: the representative of the French military mission Jacques Sadoul, the Deputy of the British Ambassador Bruce Lockhart, and the Head of the American Red Cross mission Raymond Robbins represents the USA.[1]

All three of them are not ambassadors and, consequently, they are not authorized to conduct the negotiations, and they may not expound the positions of their governments. They are not officially authorized, but they don't need this to carry out their special task. They have aplenty of unofficial authorities, and they are the true Entente representatives.[2] You can easy assure yourself of this if you pay attention to the fact that the *official* ambassadors of the superpowers left the Soviet capital for ... Vologda at the same time. The unofficial representatives stayed. All three *official* ambassadors: Buchanan (Great Britain), Noulens (France), and Francis (USA) hold a rampant anti-Soviet position.[3] And they go farther away from the main political centre of Russia. The unofficial representatives Sadoul, Lockhart, and Robbins wanted "to make their respective governments recognize the Soviet power,"[4] as the book "The Civil War 1918–1921," which was published before Stalin's purges, informs us.

That's why they stay with the Bolshevik chieftains. Lenin and Trotsky perfectly understand WHO has come to them. And the respect for the unofficial representatives of the "allies," showed by the Bolshevik leaders, corresponded with the significance of this visit. Trotsky met Lockhart almost every day, he gave him a pass to the Smolny, he let him use his private train to travel from Petrograd to Moscow and back, and even provided him with a document saying "All the organizations, Soviets, and Commissars are asked to provide all kinds of assistance to the members of the British mission."[1] The French representative Captain Jacques Sadoul also has an "iron-clad" document. This character is even more interesting. He was sent on a mission to Russia in *September 1917*, "striving to get closer to the leaders of the Soviet power; during February and March he managed to considerably neutralize the influence of the French Ambassador Noulens."[2] Later Sadoul "abandoned" the French mission and worked actively as a Communist. You can read about it in the books. He has allegedly turned his heart to the revolutionary ideas, has forgotten about his duties and the sunny valleys of Provence. He has immersed himself in Communism and Marxism.

---

[1] The USA didn't have any real intelligence services at that time. But in December 1913, the Federal Reserve System was established — a private little shop which got monopoly on printing the US dollars. Read more about the connections between the bankers, who owned the Federal Reserve System, and our revolutionaries, and about the history of this organization's establishment: Starikov N. Crisis. How It Is Done. St. Pb.: Piter, 2009.

[2] Warth R. The Entente and the Russian Revolution. M.: Tsentrpoligraf, 2006. P. 203.

[3] Kakurin N. Vatsetis I. The Civil War 1918–1921. St. Pb.: Poligon, 2002. P. 17.

[4] Ib.

---

[1] Bruce Lockhart came to Russia with a recommendation letter... from Maxim Litvinov, who in his turn became an unofficial representative of Bolsheviks to Great Britain. In his letter, Litvinov called the professional British spy, who was working under a diplomatic cover, "an extremely honest person, who understands our situation and feels for us". His presence in Russia will be very "useful from the point of view of our interests". (Warth R. The Entente and the Russian Revolution. M.: Tsentrpoligraf, 2006. P. 207.) Litvinov himself bought the weapons on behalf of Bolsheviks in 1905 and had connections with the British intelligence services. His fate is very telling. Being married to a British woman, he was the narkom of the foreign affairs during Stalin's reign and was displaced in 1939. For those who like to talk about the bloody dictator Stalin: his minister of foreign affairs is married to a foreign woman, but he survives through Stalin's reprisals. Why? Because he had connections in Great Britain and was a sort of a communication channel. Directly upon Hitler's attack on the Soviet Union, Stalin sent Litvinov to the USA in order to receive support from there. And Litvinov managed to receive it.

[2] Think about it: the captain "neutralized" the ambassador of his country. It means that all questions were resolved exactly by Sadoul, who "was feeling a sympathy" for Bolsheviks by order of his government, and the official representative of this government, Ambassador Noulens, was quietly sitting in Vologda not to disturb the captain in performing his task. (Kakurin N. Vatsetis I. The Civil War 1918–1921. St. Pb.: Poligon, 2002. P. 17.)

This is a lie. To understand this, one has to read Vladimir Ilyich's works more attentively. "The French Captain Sadoul, who verbally felt for Bolsheviks, indeed was faithfully and loyally serving the French imperialism,"[1] Lenin writes in the letter to the American workers. The head of the Bolshevik Party can't be deceived by artificial oaths and faked Marxism. His comments regarding Jacques Sadoul tell us directly *where* this nice young Frenchman has come from to get directly into the offices of the "newly crowned" Soviet power...

Jacques Sadoul was such a prominent figure that he was also mentioned in the memoirs of Lev Trotsky. "Captain Sadoul came to me immediately after the October overthrow to get information. As far as I remember, with the consent of the French diplomatic and military missions in Russia,"[2] the future founder of the Red Army would write in his memoirs. Only the person who knew where and who to go to could come to the chieftains **immediately** after the overthrow. It means that Jacques Sadoul had contacts with Bolsheviks before the October. That's true — he arrived in Russia in September 1917, i.e., right before Lenin and Trotsky got some real political power in Russia. Jacques Sadoul arrived to meet them. The facts of his biography incontrovertibly prove this version. In March 1919, the former captain of the French Army comes to Russia to participate in the 1st Congress of the Comintern[3] — the organization established to blow the revolutionary fire all over the world. The French Themis reacted quickly and adequately: the same year

---

[1] Lenin V. Works. M.: GIZ, 1950. P. 49.

[2] Trotsky L. The French Imperialism and Soviet Russia During Brest. (http://www.comintern-online.com/trotl658.htm)

[3] The Communist International, abbreviated as Comintern and also known as the Third International (1919–1943), was an international communist organization that advocated world communism.

Jacques Sadoul was sentenced in absentia to death for the treachery of the state, for the communist propaganda among the French sailors, for desertion and for the contacts with the enemy.[1] This is quite understandable. The further development of the events might surprise you. In the end of 1924, Sadoul unexpectedly returns to France. He is arrested and handed over to the Military authorities, his death sentence had been waiting for him in his motherland since 1919. It should seem that the story was coming to its end and that the French Communist Party would have a "ready made" martyr and a hero for its pantheon. But in March 1925, the military court in Orleans unexpectedly releases Jacques Sadoul from charge of desertion. The charges on all the other points against the brave captain are considered to be groundless.[2] The case is dismissed, and Sadoul goes at large. What is this? Yet another "miracle"? No, just a normal situation, which concerns the performance of the most important task at the state level. Only few people are aware of Jacques Sadoul's mission, for everyone else, including the French justice, he is a traitor, who is ripe for the gallows. No contacts with Bolsheviks are needed in 1924 — the USSR has got stronger and can exist without any active support from the "allies." Let's remember that Lenin, the main "contactee" of the French spy, dies in January 1924, and we fully understand, why Captain Sadoul returns to France exactly that year. He goes home, not being apprehensive for his life. At the right moment, the intelligence services will appear from behind-the-scenes. They will stand up for their agent, who has honourably performed his task. And French Themis, looking blank, sets aside the death sentence for the hero of the behind-the-scenes front... In addition to the unofficial diplomatic channels, used to make the contacts with the new revolutionary power and to support it, some other means, functioning under "cover" of the intelligence services, are also used: the press and public activities. For example — the Red Cross mission.

---

[1] Trotsky L. The French Imperialism and Soviet Russia During Brest. (http://www.comintern-online.com/trotl658.htm)

[2] Ib.

The soft-hearted citizens of the USA help those in need with food, clothing and medication. But this is only a "smoke screen," used to solve much more important tasks conveniently. Exactly on the eve of the October Revolution, the Red Cross mission was giving money to Bolsheviks. Naturally, to be used for the "humanitarian" purposes. In December 1917, these noble Messers handed over to Lenin one million US dollars. Of course, to fight havoc and famine. While nobody has ever given to the White Guard a kopeck either to help the starving people or to restore something. That's why a miracle took place in the citadel of the new revolutionary power: the storm of the universal Bolshevik nationalization didn't touch the Americans. The Petrograd branch of the *National City Bank,* where the Red Cross mission had its accounts, was the *only* bank, which had not been subjected to the nationalization in accordance with the respective Decree...[1]

The unofficial emissaries of the British, French and American governments helped Bolsheviks to keep the power, at the same time trying to drag the situation, when the Russian soldiers would be dying for the interests of their Entente "allies" as much as possible. The Bolsheviks used to talk a lot about the working people's interests. It's allegedly for this reason that they have taken the power. And the first step in the working people's interests should be to conclude a Peace Treaty with Germany. But it was not in the interests of the working people and peasants in Russia that they were going to conclude it...

March 1918 is the month when the Peace Treaty of Brest-Litovsk was signed. The bloody threads of the Russian strife are so tangled with each other that it's almost impossible to untwine them. If we understand who forced Lenin to conduct the negotiations with the German command in such a strange manner, it will become absolutely clear for us who wanted the representatives of the tsar dynasty to die.

Our way goes in the direction of Brest-Litovsk...

---

[1] http://business.km.ru/magazine/view.asp?id=C2DDA959582C46D8AA8FD0019D4352DF

The most difficult thing was not to hurry. To do what he had conceived long ago and what he had decided. To do it in a dignified manner and without haste. To become a part of history in a solid and firm way. Because it was without any doubt a moment in history, which had never been documented before. Nobody has done this before, nobody before him has ever conceived and tried to solve so many questions that impressively and simultaneously without having suggested any decision at all!

Trotsky glanced at those who were present, sighed deeply and started to read up. He was eager to say all of it at once, not giving anybody time to come to their senses. He started quite successfully, having found the right mode and feeling instinctively that he had chosen the right form. He told about soldier–plowmen who had to return to their fields, about soldier–workers and their workshops waiting for them. Then, not having taken a breath, he went over to the main issue:

— In the name of the Sovnarkom, the government of the RSFSR hereby brings to the attention of the governments of the "allied" and neutral countries fighting with us that Russia by waiving the subscription of the annexationist agreement, for its own part, declares belligerency with Germany, Austria-Hungary, Turkey, and Bulgaria ended.

That was a bomb! The diplomats are taught to maintain composure from the very beginning of mastering this very arduous profession. Then they polish the required skills in the numerous wars of words, thus reaching a total control of their facial expression. Here in Brest the best of the best diplomats were present.

— The Russian troops on all the fronts at the same time are given an order about the total demobilization, — Trotsky gasped and looked at the leaders of the German and Austrian delegations. Richard von Kuhlmann stared at him blankly and one could almost read on his soigne face the request to repeat all that had been said. Minister of Foreign Affairs of Austria-Hungary Ottokar von Czernin lost self-control for a moment and started to pull his collar.

That's it — the bomb has exploded. Let them sort out the intricacies of the current situation and rack their brains over it.

Our task now is to drag it out to the utterance and not to sign any treaty. To arrange a real political demonstration and to put all the responsibility on the Germans.

We stop the war, demobilize the army, but don't sign any peace treaty — this is the key to success. Nobody has ever done it this way. On the other hand, nobody has ever needed to calm down the population of their own country, to arouse the workers in Germany and Austria, to drag out the signing of the treaty with the Germans and to show their manageability and agreeableness to the OTHER side.

This invention was really ingenious. The Germans would lose anyway. Lenin got it at once.

— That would be the best, — he said, looking thoughtfully sidewards, — if General Hofmann was unable to move his troops against us.

— Then we would win a giant victory with immense consequences, — Trotsky was developing his idea, — If Hohenzollern is able to inflict a blow against us, we will manage to capitulate early enough.

— This is interesting, devilishly interesting, — Ilyich said, narrowing his eyelids, which was always a sign of a powerful thinking process. — Well, we have refused to sign the treaty, and the Germans will undertake an offensive. What will you do then?

— We shall sign the Peace Treaty under the threat of bayonet-points. The whole world will see them "at their best."

— And you will not support the revolutionary war slogan, will you? — Ilyich has narrowed his eyelids again.

— By no means!

— Under these conditions, the experiment might be not that dangerous. But we risk losing Estonia or Latvia.

Lenin made a step aside, and after having thought something over for a moment, added with a sly little laugh:

— A good peace with Trotsky is worth losing Latvia and Estonia!

Lenin was repeating this phrase for several days. And his mood was improving. We have found the way out of the deadlock — and that's him, Trotsky, who has found it…

…Somebody in the German delegation coughed loudly. Von Kuhlmann was muttering something unclear. Count von Czernin, who was the first to recollect himself after Trotsky's announcement, suggested calling a meeting in order to discuss the proposal of the Soviet delegation.

But Trotsky was not listening to him. The fat is in the fire. There is nothing to discuss. Nothing to wait for. He could go back to Moscow now…

CHAPTER 3

Who Lenin and Trotsky Concluded the Treaty of Brest-Litovsk For

> Now, by hindsight, I can confirm that our defeat started with the Russian Revolution.
>
> *E. Ludendorff, German General*

Having received the money from the Germans, Lenin promised them to take Russia out of the war. And then Lenin concluded a peace treaty, which was advantageous for Germany. This is the logic of those who "reckon" our revolution to be the credit of the German intelligence. In fact, nothing could dispel this myth about Bolsheviks, who allegedly were German spies, easier than the main proof, the main accusation against Lenin — the predatory Peace Treaty of Brest-Litovsk. We need to take a closer look at the sequence of events during the negotiations in order to understand whose tunes the leaders of the Russian Revolution were dancing to. Then a lot will be clearer and more understandable...

Which were the outside forces that were playing their game on the territory of the Russian Republic swept over by chaos?[1] These were Germany and the Entente. The historical pulse rate was twice as high as usual at that time. The terrible World War 1 was approaching its end, while nobody wanted to lose. The Entente was ready to put its last but strongest trump card on the table — the military involvement of the USA. The history gave the last chance to Germany, too. It was a long chance, but it did exist. This chance supposed immediate peace treaty with Russia, withdrawal of all the troops from the occupied territories, and the speediest troop projection to the west, the main strike against the British and the French forces, before the American forces appeared in the theatre of operation. This was the most important condition of World War 1 ending in a draw for Germany. Germany could not win.

---

[1] On September 1 (Old Style), Alexander Kerensky at his own decision proclaimed Russia a republic. By doing so he encroached the rights of the All-Russian Constituent Assembly, which had to decide what form of government Russia would have. Indeed, Michael Romanov abdicated from the throne temporarily until the Constituent Assembly made the decision. In case the majority of the delegates wished to restore the

The novelty of the Bolsheviks' peace proposal was not that they were the first to start talking about a peace treaty, it was the way how they proposed it. Having published his Decree on Peace, Lenin demanded that Commander-in-Chief General Dukhonin immediately made a truce agreement with the Germans. Dukhonin refused and was unseated by the Sovnarkom[1] and then killed by the amok sailors.[2] The warrant officer Krylenko was appointed for this posi-

---

monarchy, he would accept the throne again. Most likely, the naive Romanov imagined this was going to happen. As you can see, Kerensky actively supported the forces, interested in the legitimate power liquidation. The course of the political events would be as follows: Kerensky unlawfully declared Russia a republic, the Provisional Government would be broken up by Bolsheviks, as well as the Constituent Assembly. Which power is the legitimate one? What form of the government is legitimate? This is exactly the situation when a war of all against all would start, which is beneficial for all geopolitical opponents of Russia.

[1] Translator's note: Sovnarkom stands for the Soviet of People's Commissars.

[2] The body of General Dukhonin raised on the bayonets unwittingly gave birth to a horrible proverb from the Civil War, "To send to Dukhonin" would mean to kill, to shoot down. When Krylenko's troop trains with revolutionary sailors arrived to the General Headquarters, Dukhonin gave an order not to make any resistance. All the Russian generals tried to avoid the Civil War in every possible way. And to a large extent, that was exactly why the Civil War broke out.

tion. The new commander-in-chief suggested that the Russian military small units should make truce agreements with each specific confronting enemy unit. This was getting odd. If Bolsheviks are the German agents, why are they trying to provoke the German forces to breach the chain of command? The questions regarding peace and war were being discussed not by the soldiers in a meeting, but by the generals in Berlin. If the German soldiers, sitting in the opposite trenches, are suggested peace, they might start to disobey the military authorities. One gets the impression that Bolsheviks don't want to make peace with the Germans, and that their goal is to create the following logical chain in the heads of the German soldiers: peace — generals and the Kaiser who don't want peace — breaking the regime which opposes peace.

Isn't this behaviour odd for the German spies? And the most important question is who would gain of this situation? The Entente, of course, Britain and France. We shall come across this surprising (as long as we don't understand its reasons) behaviour of the Leninists once again...

After having "realized" his mistake, Krylenko addressed the German military authorities with the truce proposal. Here we notice another odd thing. Germany needs peace like air. A successful German "agent" Ulyanov, who made an unexpectedly great success in Russia, suggests the truce, gearing up for the peace treaty. The decisions should be made at lightning speed. The German politicians and generals should be happy and open the bottles of champagne, and pour the sparkling wine into their glasses. Yet, everything turned out differently in the real world. The actual Commander-in-Chief of the German Army General Ludendorff calls the Commander of the Headquarters of the Eastern Front General Hoffmann and asks him just one question, *"Is it possible to deal with the new Russian government?"*[1] General Hoffmann gave him a positive answer, "The Leninists can be dealt with." Meanwhile, in his memoirs he shared his doubts with us, "I thought a lot whether it should have been better to waive the negotiations with Bolsheviks for the German government... By giving Bolsheviks the possibility to end the war and thus to satisfy the Russian people's yearning for peace, we have practically helped them to keep the power."[1]

---

[1] Shatsillo V. World War 1. 1914 — 1918. Facts and Documents. M.: Olma-Press, 2003. P. 356

And it is not only the fate of Russia, but also the future of Germany that is at stake. One can't help saying, "You should have thought first!" These questions should have been discussed before Lenin was sent to Russia. If he really is a "German agent," of course. There is another aspect of this question. There is no other government in Russia except the government of Bolsheviks, and no other government is in view. Germany needs peace. And there are no other authorities than the Sovnarkom that the peace treaty could be signed with. Is here anything else to think about?

Coming back from the brown study, the Germans agree to the negotiations with the Bolsheviks. The Austrians implore the Germans to "satisfy Russia as soon as possible."[2]

The country of mazurkas and waltzes is running out of provisions, and the resoluteness of the Cabinet Council in Vienna disappears along with the bread and butter.

Brest-Litovsk occupied by the German troops is chosen as the place for the peace negotiations. The blindfolded empowered and authorized representatives of the Soviet Russia pass through the German lines of defence. The first step to the global peace has been taken. It's time to take the second and the third steps to stop the carnage as soon as possible...

Let's stop for a minute and speculate. The modern historical studies have just two explanations of Bolsheviks' further actions. The first, "Soviet," point of view reads that Lenin's desire for global peace was so great, and the Germans' desire to "grab" the Russian territories was so strong that the Peace Treaty was the result of these two straight lines crossing. The Peace Treaty was predatory and thuggish, and Russia lost a significant part of its territory. Due to the shortage of forces in the young "Red" Republic Bolsheviks reluctantly had to sign it. The second, more modern point of view reads that Lenin paid the Germans for the "sealed railway car" and their financial support for the destruction of the Russian state. Both versions are good, and both have been refined by many writers and historians to a high level of excellence.

---

[1] Shatsillo V. World War 1. 1914 — 1918. Facts and Documents. M.: Olma-Press, 2003. P. 356

[2] Ib.

However, can they really explain why Vladimir Ilyich has signed the Treaty of Brest-Litovsk? The answer to this question can be found in the very course of these negotiations. They developed absolutely not in the way we are used to believe. At the lead of the German delegation was Foreign Secretary Richard von Kuhlman, the Austrian delegation was led by Foreign Secretary Count Ottokar von Czernin. Comrade Adolph Joffe was at the head of the Russian delegation. His hair long and dirty, his beard greasy and uncombed, a worn-out hat on his head. The composition of the delegation is comical — among Lenin's diplomats there are a worker, a sailor, and a peasant, the images from a poster of those days. The last one was included in the delegation at the last moment. Bolsheviks thought it over and decided to include a peasant. The workers' and peasants' delegation couldn't do without a peasant.

So, comrade Joffe announces the Soviet conditions for the military operations to stop.

1. A truce period of 6 months.
2. Riga should be cleared from the German troops, as well as the strategically important Moonsund Archipelago, which they first occupied in October 1917.

Finally, Joffe announces the third Soviet condition, which brings the Germans in a state of shock.

3. The Germans have to oblige NOT TO MOVE TROOPS TO THE WESTERN FRONT![1]

What is the reason for such odd behaviour pattern demonstrated by comrade Joffe (or rather dictated to him by Lenin and Trotsky)? Why does a Soviet diplomat make such appalling demands? It is clear that it is absolutely unacceptable for the Germans to refuse moving their troops freely in any direction. A peace treaty of this kind doesn't make any sense for the Germans. The key to winning the war for any of the involved parties is in Russia. If the Germans move their best troops from the east to the west, they will still have a chance to avoid the defeat; if they keep the soldiers in Russia, Germany will collapse in a few months. It will collapse under the influence of the propaganda of Bolsheviks and the Entente.

---

[1] World History. The Results of World War 1. V. 20. M.: AST, 2001. P. 116

The German authorities prepare the offensive at the Western Front in spring. To do so, they need to dislocate their troops, to conclude peace with Russia and to move their soldiers to France, Belgium, and Turkey. The goal of the intelligence services of the "allies" is polar opposite. The Germans should not dislocate their troops from the east to the west. This should be prevented at any cost. They should make Germany stay in Russia. The most important point is not to let the real peace come by any means...

Let's agree upon the fact that the demands made by the "German agent" Lenin are odd, to put it mildly. Neither do they make sense if Lenin acts as a "protector" of the interests of the emerging revolution. Why would Bolsheviks artificially hold back the German troops at the borders of the revolutionary Russia? Indeed, being so close, the monarchic German Army is a permanent threat to Red Petrograd and Moscow. And vice-versa, the more German soldiers move to France and Belgium, the quicker Lenin and Trotsky will be able to disseminate the Bolshevism in the global environment. If Ilyich had had the interests of the revolution at his heart, he would have asked the German diplomats and military men not to keep their military units but to move them away as soon as possible. And generally speaking, why should the government of Russia bother about the unengaged German divisions? Don't they have anything else to care about?

Indeed, the Communist power has a lot of other concerns. *The representatives of the "allies" Jacques Sadoul and Bruce Lockhart have a common big headache, too: under no circumstances the German troops should be dislocated to the Western Front.* And an "odd" demand of Bolsheviks wouldn't look that odd if we knew the following:

- right after the October, the Germans started to dislocate their troops to the west;

- 30% of the German troops were concentrated in the Eastern Front (there were about 80 divisions);
- the dislocation of the troops was still going on in November.[1]

How can the dislocation be stopped? You've guessed right — by announcing "peace initiatives" and by totally confusing the Germans! The calculation of the allied curators turned out to be correct. *The Germans took the bait and agreed to stop the dislocation of their troops from the east to the west!*

Reflecting upon the conditions of Bolsheviks, we can figure up to what extent the Leninist government was under the influence of the British intelligence.

You be the judge. The German troops are at one snap the distance from Red Petrograd. It was not without a reason that Ilyich himself wrote in September about the threat of abandoning Petrograd to the Germans by Kerensky. The Germans are really close by, and they can really strangle the new revolutionary power. There are practically no British, French, or American troops on the territory of Russia, and they are neither able to stop the Germans from strangling Bolsheviks, nor to help them do this.

What is danger № 1 for the revolution? It's Germany.

Who should Bolsheviks negotiate first and foremost with? With Germany.

And Lenin's terms are admittedly unacceptable for the Germans, but very much needed by the "allies." It may seem illogical and foolish — if we consider that Bolsheviks had no relations with the British and French intelligence services. And vice-versa, if we are aware that Lenin "was making" his revolution in a close contact with them, while Germany was only playing a role of the paymaster, everything gets clear and fair enough.

The "allied" emissaries urged Bolsheviks to start the negotiations and demand the Germans to stop the dislocation of their troops to other fronts.

So, then why does Lenin agree to set forth these admittedly unacceptable requirements, while he should be interested in the success of the negotiations more than anyone else? This is exactly the difference between a good tactician and a bad one. A good tactician has a good grasp of the situation. The plan is as follows: firstly, one has to set forth such a condition for Germany that would satisfy the British, secondly — one can never tell, the Germans might accept it. This is next to impossible, but there still is a chance. The possibility that the Germans may reject the negotiations suits Lenin, too. He is clear in front of the British (we have tried!) and has a perfect explanation of the internal problems and the failure of his own experimental steps — the external threat. Rally around the government to repel the external aggression! Revolution is in danger!

---

[1] Ludendorff E. My War Memoirs 1914–1918. M.: AST, 2005. P. 514.

Yet, this situation is very dangerous. Bravado is permissible only until the Germans start fighting their cunning "spy" for real. Lenin is aware that Bolsheviks lack the military power at the moment. He perfectly understands that in case Bolsheviks continue to irritate the Germans with their foolish demands, the Germans would swat the young Soviet Republic like a hornet. It is not possible to totally obey the "allies," because they are constantly trying to provoke a conflict between Russia and Germany, and what is more, by leading the Soviet delegation from behind.

Might Lenin have had no commitments to Germany? I don't have an answer to this question. There are no records of secret negotiations, all the agreements made were never put in writing. The evidence of Lenin's cooperation with the Germans is ludicrous. From the period before the February Revolution there is only one (!) receipt signed by A. Parvus (not even by Lenin!) regarding a million rubles received for staging the strike. *And several bank statements from the later period regarding the payments to the accounts of legal and private persons, though, other than Lenin.* In other words, there is no direct evidence of Lenin's cooperation with Germany.

The grave accusation of betraying his motherland is imputed to Lenin due to the logic of his behaviour and his travel to Russia in the "sealed railway car." That's what the heart of the matter is. *Germany's cooperation with Vladimir Ulyanov resulted in its defeat in World War 1, not in the victory.* This is a fact. It lost the war not in the battlefield. Having repeated the scenario of the Russian Empire's collapse, Germany lost the war, because it was totally demoralized by the revolution in the rear.

The Entente, on the contrary, has won the war. It has smashed its main opponent — Germany, as well as Russia, which was its permanent geopolitical rival in the 19 century. If we sequentially analyze Lenin's actions, we shall come to the point that the Bolshevik leaders worked closely with the intelligence services of the "allies," not the Germans. This cooperation was much more serious than "espionage in favour of Germany," otherwise, the history of the revolution would again turn into a blend of surprising coincidences, inexplicable stupidity, and odd conducts. Vladimir Ilyich is walking on a very thin ice. As long as the revolution is really weak, he has to be friends with both the "allies" and the Germans. His guiding idea for the future is to bury both under the debris of capitalism destroyed on a worldwide scale. The world revolution isn't here yet, Ilyich has to manoeuvre.

The "love triangle" looks quite odd: Britain, Germany, and... Bolsheviks. All sides of the political triangle look for compromises just to breach them later and collide again in the search of further agreements. These behind-the-scenes negotiations between Bolsheviks and the "allies" took place at the time when the former Provisional Government, the former Russian Army, its officers and generals, and leaders of different parties were waiting for the assistance and support in order to put things right in Russia, and to bring it back to the civilized position. All that was in vain. Of all the scenarios the elite of the Entente always used to choose the best one for themselves and the worst one for Russia. Those were only the Bolsheviks who met their requirements at that time. The first volunteers of the White Army are dying in the steppes during the unprecedented Ice March, the first Cossack uprisings are flaring up in the south of Russia in pain. And the "allies" pay attention not to the heroes of the anti–Bolshevik movement, they don't hasten to protest against the outrage of the newly established the Cheka,[1] either, but what they do is shaking the hands of the Bolshevik leaders with a smile, because these are Lenin and Trotsky who are capable of "hugging Germany to death." The first attempts of the "allies" to find a consensus with Bolsheviks were quite clumsy. They offered them ... money. "The British directly offered our Supreme Commander Krylenko 100 rubles per month for each Russian soldier in case the war goes on,"[1] Lenin writes in his "Theses on the Matter of Separate Peace," which were published in the Pravda Newspaper.

---

[1] Translator's note: Cheka — the Emergency Committee, VCheka — the All-Russian Emergency Committee.

Why are the British acting so clumsily? This is the impact of the longstanding custom to get total loyalty of all the Russian revolutionaries for money. They paid people money to come to the barricades, to cast bombs, they tried to orchestrate Russia's defeat in the Russo-Japanese war for money, as well. That's why the effort to bribe an ardent revolutionary, fanatically fighting for the world commune, is quite a reasonable and sound idea. But it won't work out with Lenin. He doesn't want money, he needs the opportunity to build up a new state. If the request of the British goes against the interests of the revolution, Ilyich is not in a hurry to perform the request. Though, being a smart politician, Lenin is not in a hurry to say "no," either...[2]

Lenin found himself in a stalemate situation. The "allies" demand that the peace negotiation is ruined, and the Germans demand peace. To find favour in the eyes of the "allies" would mean to break up with the Germans. But Lenin would not have been Lenin if he hadn't found a way to overcome the deadlock. Lenin addresses the Russian soldiers with the same appeal, which Supreme Commander Krylenko recently called them upon: to immediately elect the authorized representatives to negotiate the enemy locally. The goal is very clear as are Lenin's decrees: peace without any prior arrangements. Officially we are unyielding, as London asked us to be, but what can be done if locally our soldiers don't fight each other anymore.

---

[1] Lenin V. Works. V. 21. P. 368

[2] Lenin truly wasn't a puppet. A telling example — when Romania took the liberty of arresting the Russian officers and soldiers on the Romanian territory and exposing them to humiliations, Bolsheviks reacted quickly and resolutely. Bolsheviks arrested the Romanian Ambassador A. Diamandi on January 13, 1918 (New Style). The next day, all allied and neutral ambassadors appeared in Lenin's office and expressed their indignation. In return, Lenin said that he was more worried about the fate of the Russian soldiers than about the niceties of the international laws. (Warth R. The Entente and the Russian Revolution. M.: Tsentrpoligraf, 2006. PP. 211–212). Diamandi was released and was given 10 hours to leave Russia. However, Lenin ordered to keep the Romanian gold reserve in Russia. Two weeks later he confiscated it after Romania had annexed the territory of Bessarabia (Moldavia).

The next day after his appeal Lenin makes another strong and resolute tricky move. The Sovnarkom passes a decree regarding the gradual reduction of the army. All the soldiers who were called up for the military service in 1899 are transferred to the reserve. This order is sent to all the headquarters, but it is so vaguely and poorly worded that it can be interpreted differently. No authorized persons responsible for the demobilization are appointed, either, and hence, the desertion becomes total. This is the final nail in the coffin of the old Russian Army. Russia has no armed forces at all. There are big crowds of people in great-coats and pea-jackets. They can't and they don't want to fight. It is quite understandable, as the power has changed three times in half a year, and now nobody understands what they have to shed their blood for.

This is not an annoying casual mistake. Destroying the army, Lenin solved several tasks at once: firstly, he got rid of the reproaches of the "allies"; secondly, he destroyed the structures which couldn't be used in the new revolutionary situation. Now, receiving any requests from Paris or London, Ilyich could just shrug his shoulders and look his partners honestly in the eyes. We tried for the best, you know the rest! How can we fight with the Germans now? We are eager to persevere with Berlin, but how? We don't have any army — the army got scattered. With his outstanding intellect, Lenin clearly realized that the old army didn't suit his goals. A new army was needed, but the Red Army could be created only after the total destruction of the tsarist armed forces. The revolutionary army should be built on the new, absolutely different principles.

Let's return to Brest-Litovsk, where Bolsheviks announced their odd demand during the first meeting. The Germans committed not to dislocate their forces to the west. At the same time the German authorities suggested that the Entente countries joined the peace negotiations. The German delegation was full of hopes for peace, but that wasn't going to come true. Great Britain, France, and the USA would not participate in the negotiations and would not even react to the peace proposal. The orchestrators of World War 1 don't need to stop the bloodshed, they need to reach their goals, for the sake of which the war had been started, in fact. The first interim goal has been reached — the Russian Empire has collapsed. The next goal to reach is the destruction of Germany.

Since the October Revolution till the negotiations with Bolsheviks the German Army was in echelons dislocated to the west. Now the British intelligence officers could relax — this stream disastrous for their motherland stopped. Who dares to say that the interests of Britain and France are not represented in Brest-Litovsk? On the contrary, the Bolshevik delegation argues furiously about those points of the treaty which are important for the "allied" curators. We remember that the Bolshevik delegation suggested a six months truce treaty. During the truce period Germany should commit not to dislocate any of its forces to the west. Had the Germans agreed on that, they would not have been able to move a single soldier out of Russia. While Britain and France have no limitations and restrictions with regard to this, they may deploy their forces at their own sweet will. That was why the Germans considered the truce period proposed by the Soviet Party to be too long. Consequently, it was shortened till January 12, 1918 (New Style), and should be automatically prolonged if no parties objected it.[1]

The truce treaty is an obligatory condition for the peace negotiations to start. Indeed, the parties at war can't simply sit down and start negotiating. Now, when the truce treaty was concluded, an official conference on peace could be held. During the first meeting on December 9 (22), 1917, Bolsheviks take the initiative again. They propose their peace program made of 6 points:

1) Seizure of the occupied territories is not allowed.
2) National self-determination.

---

[1] World History. The Results of World War 1. V. 20. M.: AST, 2001. P. 116

3) Renewal of the independence of the occupied countries.

4) Ensuring the cultural autonomy for those who are not looking for independence.

5) Renunciation of contributions.[1]

6) The last sixth point suggests that all the other matters of the state-to-state reconciliation should be resolved based on the previous five points.

When the modern historians boldly accuse Lenin of paying the debt to the Germans by signing the disadvantageous treaty or of betraying the Russian interests during the negotiations with Germany, it seems that they have never seen the proposals of Bolsheviks. Lenin's proposals perfectly correspond to Russia's interests. As the matter of fact, this refers to the territories, which will be separated from Russia anyway. The most important thing is that Russia will remain almost intact. Surprisingly, the German Foreign Secretary Kuhlmann, who presided the negotiations, declares that "the points of the Russian delegation can be used as a basis for peace negotiations."[2] Bolsheviks are ready to move their troops from the occupied territories of Austria-Hungary, Turkey, and Persia. In return, Germany has to move its troops out of Poland, Lithuania, Courland, and other regions of Russia. At first sight, it sounds quite fair, but this is at first sight only. The Germans are perfectly aware of the fact that Lenin is not to be trusted. If the German troops are dislocated from the Baltics and Poland, Bolsheviks will be there the next day. Had the Germans agreed to this nice looking proposal, the zone of unrest, chaos, and terror would have got closer to their borders. It could cause the revolution and collapse of the German Reich! Bolsheviks are not even hiding their goals. Ottokar von Czernin, the head of the delegation from Austria-Hungary, has long conversations with comrade Joffe, the head of the Soviet delegation. The consensus can't be found. The Bolshevik is dreaming of the world revolution, the prim count is full of scepticism and sarcasm.

---

[1] Shatsillo V. World War 1 1914 — 1918. Facts and Documents. M.: Olma-Press, 2003. P. 359.

[2] Ib.

"At this point we will refrain from copying the Russian theories, and we firmly reject any involvement in our internal affairs," the Head of the Austrian Ministry of the Foreign Affairs says harshly. "If he (*Joffe — N.S.*) still has an intention to insist on planting his utopian ideas in Austria, he had better leave with the next train, because the Peace Treaty is impossible in this case." Count von Czernin couldn't forget the answer of the head of the Bolshevik delegation for the rest of his life, "I still hope, — comrade Joffe said, — that we shall be able to cause the revolution in your country, as well."[1]

Thus, the negotiations continue in a very warm and friendly atmosphere. But the vigilance and suspicion of the Germans are growing stronger. They are ready to agree on the right for self-determination for the people of Poland, Lithuania, and Courland, but they should stay being occupied by Germany till the end of the war. The German troops will also stay in the lands of Estonia and Livonia. No troops can be dislocated from the Russian territory as long as the war goes on in the west. The Baltics and Poland supply Germany with provisions and the military and commercial goods required by war. The German delegation expounds these demands to the Bolsheviks, taken aback. Some of the negotiators on the part of the Bolsheviks are not even hiding the tears in their eyes. On the same day they take a 10-day break and depart for Moscow to consult.

The continuous meetings are held in Berlin, too. "I pointed out that due to the expected attack in the west the earliest conclusion of the Peace Treaty in the east is necessary, because only under the condition that peace is made as soon as possible we shall have the possibility to move our troops as appropriate,"[2] General Ludendorff writes in his memoirs. The Germans are in a hurry: should there be any delay, they will not manage to move their soldiers, to deploy the troops in a battle order to strike at the French and British forces in the Western Front.

---

[1] Sobolev G. The Russian Revolution and the "German Gold" (http//www.litportal.ru/genre23/author5654/read/page/23/book27201html)

[2] Ludendorff E. My War Memoirs 1914–1918. M.: AST, 2005. P. 553.

The German command had two strategic ways of breaking the war deadlock. The first way was to immediately conclude peace with Russia, to dislocate the troops from the Eastern Front and to start an offensive on the Western Front. The second way was to plunder Russia, taking the advantage of its temporary helplessness and using its food supplies, and natural resources as a "second breath" to continue fighting in the west. The Kaiser decided to plunder Russia. This would lead Germany to its collapse within less than eight months. Lev Trotsky in his speech during the meeting of VTsIK[1] on October 3, 1917, would speak about Germany's collapse, "There is no need to prove that a great part of this catastrophe was prepared in Brest by the German military diplomacy, as well as by the civil one."[2]

Why did Germany choose the deadly way of plundering and breaking Russia down? Why didn't it conclude a fair peace treaty with Bolsheviks without annexations and contributions? *Because in order for the Peace Treaty to be concluded it should at least be signed by both parties.*

The German command, however, understood clearly that:

- Bolsheviks were following the interests of Britain and France;
- Bolsheviks were not in a hurry to sign the Peace Treaty;
- Bolsheviks dragged out the negotiations in every way;
- Bolsheviks laid down the unacceptable demands;
- Bolsheviks suggested that Germany sacrificed its advantages not offering anything in return.

It's true that the war in the east stopped thanks to Bolsheviks. But Germany didn't gain anything of it. Fighting a war on two fronts, the Germans not only needed peace with one of the contenders, but they also needed a possibility to defeat the other one. And this was not the case. The Entente pretends there are no negotiations going on and continues the war to death. Germany isn't moving any of its troops to the west anymore...

---

[1] Translator's note: VTsIK — the All-Russian Central Executive Committee.

[2] http//www.revcom.com/biblioteka/Marxism/trotckii/my%20life/XXXI.htm

Germany toughened the demands exactly due to the behaviour of the Leninist delegation! The Germans started to feel that they have been deceived and are being led a pretty dance. We know already that the Germans started to hurry. Now we can easily guess how the delegation from the Soviet Russia is going to act. *You guess right — Bolsheviks start dragging out the negotiations!*

"The government of the Russian Republic finds it necessary to move the further negotiations to the neutral territory and suggests the city of Stockholm for this purpose... A. Joffe will be the chairman of the Russian delegation."[1]

Such telegram was received by the German and Austrian diplomats just six days after the Bolshevik delegation had departed. Why should Bolsheviks move the negotiations to the Swedish capital, when Russia is in chaos and is waiting just for one thing — the Peace Treaty? Bolsheviks have no reason to do this, whereas the reason of the British is quite clear. Stockholm is far from Brest. It will take time for the delegations to get there, to get accommodated and to gather for a meeting. The truce period is coming to its end and due to all the movements of the diplomats it will have to be prolonged. Time is running out — the German soldiers are not on their way to the Western Front. And Bolsheviks follow all the persistent requests of their curators from the British and French intelligence services. They do it in the prejudice of the revolution, in the prejudice of their own country. Just because it's impossible not to do it...

The German diplomats refuse to go to Stockholm. Bolsheviks have no choice but to send their delegation to Brest again. Now the Russians had to bring the heavy guns in: the Bolshevik diplomats are headed not by an unkempt Joffe, but by none other than Lev Trotsky. In his memoirs, he described the complicated process of the negotiations in detail. The phrase of Lenin, bidding farewell to Trotsky, is full of significance (the historians like to quote it), "*To drag the negotiations out a dragger is needed.*"[2]

The Germans are in good spirits: now that the Bolsheviks have arrived, the peace is not far away. They were looking forward to the peace in vain. "We were interested in dragging the negotiations out. That's why I arrived in Brest in the first place,"[1] Trotsky wrote later. Why, in fact, are the procrastinations and postponements regards signing of the very Peace Treaty so advantageous for Bolsheviks? What are they waiting for? You can easily find the answer in the history books: *Lenin and Trotsky are waiting for the world revolution!*

---

[1] http//www.pseudology.org/Trotsky/trotl623.htm

[2] Trotsky L. My Life (http//intervud.ru/all/memoirs/a/3844.138.html)

But for some reason they are waiting for the WORLD revolution in Germany and Austria ONLY!

And this is what happened. The methods of the state destruction by strikes, rallies, and the talkative babblers, saying one thing and doing another, have been already tested. They were successfully practiced in Russia — the Russian Empire doesn't exist anymore. It's time to repeat the success in Germany and Austria-Hungary. Open any books (rather schoolbooks) on this historic period. You will see that Bolsheviks were waiting for the world revolutions to happen in these countries *alone*. They didn't wait for the working class to awake in France and Britain, nobody expected to see the class instincts of the American farmers or of the Italian field–hands. Why? Aren't Bolsheviks waiting for a *world* revolution, not for the *German* one?

The answer is simple. The Bolshevik leaders get the instructions from the Entente. These instructions are quite clear: temporize. Lenin and Trotsky, who know well how the "Great October" was made, have a clear picture of the coming events in Berlin and Vienna. Indeed, the internal situation in Germany at this moment has "all of a sudden" grown worse. On November 25, 1917, there were rallies under the slogans for ending the war. It had all started in Russia exactly in the same way. It had started with "Bread!" and "Down with the war!" and then the Russian Empire had disappeared in no time. The illegal leaflets appeared in the streets of the German cities. The balancing wheel of the internal instability was gathering speed really fast. The mass strikes took place in Cologne, Munich, Hamburg, and other cities. Finally, on January 28, 1918, the biggest strike broke out. Virtually, for the first time during World War 1 the

---

[1] Trotsky L. My Life (http//intervud.ru/all/memoirs/a/3844.138.html)

German military plants stopped their production, and even barricade fights broke out here and there. Of course, the most important revolutionary "know how" was used — the Soviets of the Workers' Deputies. The would-be deputies gathered in the House of the Trade Unions in Berlin and suggested that the government should have concluded a peace treaty based on self-determination of the people, a peace treaty "without any annexations and contributions."[1] In other words, they had to leave the Baltics and Poland, thus losing the most important regions that supplied Germany with provisions, and give "green light" to further ruination of the country.

"Trotsky and the Entente were happy over the dragging out of the negotiations," General Ludendorff writes in his memoirs. "Over the radio he introduced his Bolshevik ideas to the whole world, and to the German workers, in the first place. For everyone who was not totally blind it was absolutely clear that Bolsheviks wanted to give rise to the revolution and to consequently defeat Germany."[2]

But this time Germany managed to resist. The commander of the Berlin garrison declared the city to be under siege and demanded that the workers should start working immediately. Those who would not obey were to be punished according to the laws of the wartime, which was to be shot down. The resoluteness of the government saved the situation. The troops were brought into all the towns, where the strikes took place, but the government refrained from the direct repressions against those on strike. The deadline for the mess termination was February 4, 1918. Such flexibility in combination with the threat of being shot down helped to restore the order.[3] The power in Austria-Hungary turned to be less strong and resolute. Almost at the same time as in Germany, in November 1917, a wave of meetings and antiwar rallies swept over the country. On January 14, 1918, the workers of the military plants in Budapest went on a strike. Next day, they were supported by the workers in Vienna. "Bad news from Vienna and vicinities," Count von Czernin wrote in his diary. "A strong strike movement was caused by the reduction of the flour ration and the slow progress of the talks in Brest."[1]

---

[1] World History. The Results of World War 1. V. 20. M.: AST, 2001. P. 142.

[2] Ludendorff E. My War Memoirs 1914–1918. M.: AST, 2005. P. 559.

[3] World History. The Results of World War 1. V. 20. M.: AST, 2001. P. 142.

Establishment of the Soviets of the Workers' Deputies followed the strikes (a carbon copy of those in Berlin). On January 16, 1918, the first Soviet in the country was established, and two days later the first Soviet was established in Vienna, its capital. The strikes went on till January 25, and as a result the government in Vienna promised to the leaders of the Social Democratic Party not to put forward any annexation claims.[2] On February 1, a real mutiny among the sailors of the Austro-Hungarian squadron broke out in the Port of Kotor. We know the demands of the rebelling sailors perfectly well: peace without any "annexations and contributions." There is also something new. The new demands are stunning, indeed: self-determination of the peoples of the Austrian Empire and the democratic governments establishment.[3] In fact, it's a demise of the monarchy and the breakdown of the country. The German resoluteness has again saved the situation: the German submariners put down the mutiny.

What about the Entente countries? Open the textbooks, look through the monographs. You will not find a single remark regarding the unrest, strikes, elections to the Soviets of the Workers' Deputies or any other corruption attributes in France or Britain in the period from October 1917 till March 1918. But the authors of the schoolbooks can't write nothing at all, that's why in the chapter "The Revolutionary Movement in the Entente Countries" you will read "A growth of the strike movement has been noted."[4] No figures, no dates, no descriptions of the barricade fights whatsoever. Nothing. Why?

Because the social upheaval takes place where it has been prepared and where enormous financial resources are allocated for it.

---

[1] Trotsky L. The Soviet Republic and the Capitalist World. (http//www.rwp.ru/index.html)

[2] World History. The Results of World War 1. V. 20. M.: AST, 2001. P. 143–144

[3] Ib.

[4] World History. The Results of World War 1. V.20. M.: AST, 2001. P. 144

The state collapses where its opponents manage to plant the anti-state views in the minds of its citizens by everyday propaganda.

The empire bursts like a bubble if the genetic elite decides for its own sake to "sell" its motherland for the material benefits.

The Soviet Union, as well the Russian Empire, collapsed exactly this way. In the same way the German, the Austrian, and the Turkish Empires would fall into oblivion.

Yet, apart from their own experience, Bolsheviks also have some accurate information. The information from the "friends" in the French and British intelligence services. They visit Lenin and Trotsky in their offices, having special passes in their pockets. They share their plans about the nearest future with Bolsheviks. And they ask again to drag out the peace negotiation and not to rush with signing protocols and agreements. If you do as we want, the Volunteer Army won't get any support from us. We shall not support anyone planning to overthrow you, dear Bolsheviks. However, if the peace with the Germans is concluded quickly, and the truce (and a total uncertainty with it) doesn't last long enough, we can promise you nothing at all, dear friends. The usurpers like you who have dispersed the All-Russian Constituent Assembly will not survive much longer. And when you are overthrown, the usual emigration way to Europe will be closed. It will be a great pity, Messers revolutionaries, but the government of France or Great Britain will surely extradite you as insurgents and coupists...

After such meetings it is not diplomat Joffe, but Trotsky, being very good at dragging out the negotiations, who is going to Brest-Litovsk. The stakes are too high, and that's why Lenin sends Trotsky to Brest-Litovsk, the smartest and the most talented of the Bolsheviks. He is also the only one aware of the state of the affairs. On December 27 (January 9), a new round of the negotiations starts. Now the Germans take the initiative. The Russian delegation calmly starts to accomplish its only task — to temporize. The Germans declare the 6-point declaration of Bolsheviks invalid, the very declaration, which the initial agreements were based on. The war of words concerning the procedure and the organization of the meetings starts. The German initiative gets stuck, being webbed by the Russian talkfest. The Germans understand that they will hardly come to an agreement with Bolsheviks and change the vector of their policy. Now the Germans don't place their hopes in the separate peace with Russia, they place their hopes in the separate peace with a part of Russia, with Ukraine. *It's exactly due to the policy of the "German spies," Bolsheviks, on dragging the negotiations out that Berlin has decided to carve up the territory of Russia!*

And what is the reaction? The main person, who was dragging the negotiations out, comrade Trotsky, is so easy-going that "he has no objections to the participation of the Ukrainian delegation in the peace negotiations." The Germans do not have any reason to interrupt the negotiations. Kind Lev Trotsky even starts speaking German in his speeches. And the speeches go on and on... His words are repeated by the European newspapers, especially by the German and Austro-Hungarian ones. The workers and the clerks in Berlin and Hamburg, Budapest and Vienna read them. And they strike and demand peace...

Two months more of such negotiations, and the monarchy in Germany will be torn into pieces. The patience of the Germans is running short, the dislocation of the German troops from the Eastern to the Western Front for starting an offensive there is being seriously delayed. That's why on January 18 (31), the Germans simply put a map on the table and asked the Russian delegation to have a look at it. A new Russian border was marked on it: Russia was supposed to lose 150,000 km^2 of its territory. Trotsky suggested taking a 10-day break "to let the governmental bodies of the Russian Republic to work out the final decision regarding the peace conditions offered." The Germans reject this suggestion because *one more month* has already gone by after the planned termination of the truce. They can't wait any longer — their offensive in the Western Front is already delayed. The Peace Treaty should be signed immediately. Despite the negative reaction of the Germans with regard to the 10-day break, Trotsky calmly departs to Moscow to meet Ilyich there.

It's exactly at this time that the "German spies," the Bolsheviks, decide to move the Central Committee of their party from

Petrograd farther from the German Front. Later, the capital will be moved to Moscow, too, in order to be farther from the Germans.

Eleven days later the delegation headed by Trotsky returned. Two rounds of the negotiations are over — the German diplomats haven't reach any goals. There is no peace, there is a total ambiguity with regard to the future. The Germans have to negotiate with the Ukrainians. After the behind-the-scenes negotiations, during which the Germans promised the Ukrainians their support, they provoked the Central Rada to declare the independence of their country on January 24 (February 6), 1918. Germany signs a separate peace[1] agreement with Ukraine. In accordance with the agreement, the Central Rada was committed to deliver to Germany and Austria-Hungary 1 million tons of bread, 400 million eggs, not less than 50 thousand tons of meat in live condition, and sugar, and much more.[2] In return, the Germans promised the Ukrainians to help them fight their own spies — the Bolsheviks.

The departure of the Bolshevik delegation for consultations and the events in Ukraine were a sort of a deadline in the German policy. It was the last chance for the German Empire to escape its collapse. By signing a peace treaty with Rada, Germany was setting a course for the disintegration of Russia, which couldn't secure a lasting peace. This decision, indeed, was equivalent to the doom for the Russian Empire. Having concluded the agreement with Ukraine, Germany signed it with the blood of its own soldiers. The German historian F. Fischer states, "The peculiarity of this peace treaty is that this agreement was consciously signed with a government which at the moment of signing had no power in its own country at all.

---

[1] When the fact that Russia didn't take part in sharing the trophies of World War 1 is explained by the signing of the Peace Treaty of Brest-Litovsk, one usually forgets that Romania signed the same separate peace treaty on May 7, 1918. None of the allies have accused Romania of this. Moreover, Romania seized Bessarabia (Moldavia) from Russia under the passive eye of the victorious Entente. Stalin got it back in 1940, while Gorbachev and Yeltsin "lost" it again in 1991.

[2] Shatsillo V. World War 1 1914 — 1918. Facts and Documents. M.: Olma-Press, 2003. P. 362.

As a result, all the advantages, which the Germans had on paper only, could be reached by seizing the country and by restoring the government in Kiev, the government which they had signed the agreement with."[1]

The German soldiers are needed in Ukraine to supply their *Vaterland* with milk and eggs. And they will have to fight with... Bolsheviks. The trains from Ukraine to Germany will never start moving. Why? As we have seen, Bolsheviks were imprudent and relaxed at the negotiations.[2] But here something incredible has happened.

Bolsheviks addressed the German soldiers over the radio and urged them not to obey their officers in command![3] This revolutionary leaflet, which called the Germans to kill the Emperor and the generals, and to brotherly unite with the Soviets, was intercepted and put on the desk of Kaiser Wilhelm. What would you do in such situation? Would you continue to negotiate with Bolsheviks? *When they tell us about the predatory Peace Treaty of Brest, about the strict necessity of signing it, let's not forget the provoking actions of Lenin and Trotsky, which literally forced Germany to roughly treat Red Russia, which breached all imaginable diplomatic principles.*

Let's remember about the British agents, standing behind the back of Bolsheviks, who insisted on these last fierce attempts to inflame the revolutionary fire in Berlin and Vienna.

The reaction of the German government was flash-like. It didn't make any sense to continue the negotiations. The Kaiser personally demands that the foreign secretary delivered an ultimatum to Bolsheviks, and in addition to the occupied territories, Germany lays claim on Estonia and Livonia, as well. When telling about those dramatic days, Lenin himself would say, "We agreed among ourselves that we should hold out till the Germans presented the ultimatum, we would surrender after the ultimatum."[1] "Among ourselves" means between Vladimir Lenin and Lev Trotsky. That was the decision Trotsky had in mind going back to the negotiations.

---

[1] Shatsillo V. World War 1 1914 — 1918. Facts and Documents. M.: Olma-Press, 2003. P. 362.

[2] Karl Radek, for example, upon his arrival to Brest directly on the platform started to distribute the revolutionary leaflets among the German soldiers, having taken a whole pack of the agitation literature in German.

[3] 1 Ludendorff E. My War Memoirs 1914–1918. M.: AST, 2005. P. 563.

And so, the ultimatum was presented. Nobody expected the answer of Bolsheviks to be like this!

"In the name of the Sovnarkom, the government of the RSFSR hereby brings to the attention of the governments of the "allied" and neutral countries fighting with us that Russia by waiving the subscription of the annexationist agreement, for its own part, declares belligerency with Germany, Austria-Hungary, Turkey, and Bulgaria ended."

This exactly is the well-known formula of Trotsky — "no war, no peace." Later, in the Soviet history schoolbooks they wrote that Mr. Trotsky breached the instructions and showed the unnecessary initiative. This is not true. The ingenious formula of Trotsky was approved at the decisive meeting of the Central Committee on January 11 (24), 1918.[2] The next day, late in the evening, a united meeting of the Central Committees of the Bolshevik Party and the Left Socialist Revolutionaries took place, and Trotsky's formula was approved by the majority of the participants. *Trotsky was on his way to Brest with an approved decision to bring even more ambiguity to the negotiations.*

After his hard-hitting announcement Trotsky was not criticized but even got support from the revolutionary government. Three days later, VTsIK adopted the following resolution, "Having heard and discussed the report of the peace delegation, VTsIK fully approves the line of conduct of its representatives in Brest."[3]

This approval looks quite odd if we take into consideration the dire consequences of the Bolshevik diplomatic manoeuvres, reflected in the terms of the predatory Peace Treaty. Don't be surprised. The revolutionaries did quite the opposite of what the Germans had expected. "Of course, it created a full mess in the east, meanwhile, we needed a totally clear picture. At any moment dark clouds could start piling up in the east again. And in the west we had to rush into the fight for life or death. The military situation required to be clear...,"[1] Head of the German Army General Ludendorff writes in his memoirs.

---

[1] Lenin V. Works. V. 36. P. 30.

[2] For Trotsky's formula there were 9 votes, and there were 7 votes against it.

[3] Trotsky L. The Soviet Republic and the Capitalist World. (http//www.rwp.ru/index.html)

What happened was exactly what the "allies" had counted on when they planted the idea of the Germans' cooperation with Bolsheviks. The relationship with Russia is not clear, and instead, the situation is getting more and more tangled. Trotsky leaves Brest without giving any explanations. Ilyich is fine with this. Let the German troops be on the Russian territory — Lenin doesn't have time for this now. Placed on the Russian territory, they even play into the hands of Lenin. He has got a trump card to bargain with London and Paris. Next day after Trotsky's departure the order of Krylenko on the war termination and the general demobilization is sent to all the fronts of the Russian Army.

At first, the Germans were totally confused. Everyone tried to interpret Trotsky's unprecedented declaration. At first, the Germans had a meeting and considered that "even though the peace hadn't been concluded by the means of the declaration, the state of peace between the parties had been restored." Only three days later, a shout from Berlin brought them down to earth. The Kaiser pointed out that the fact that "Trotsky had not signed the Peace Treaty didn't automatically mean that the truce was over."[2] Nobody could guarantee that the Russian Front wouldn't *by chance* rise again.[3]

In order to swallow a big piece of the Russian cake the Berlin command needed to open its mouth wider. To occupy Ukraine, Lithuania, and Livonia soldiers are needed. The reserves are needed, but there are none of them left in Germany after four years of war. Germany has run out of Germans. Where could they get the reserves from? The only solution they had was *to move the troops from the Western Front.* Let's sum up the results of the Bolshevik diplomacy:

---

[1] Ludendorff E. My War Memoirs 1914–1918. M.: AST, 2005. P. 563.

[2] Ib. P. 568.

[3] Ib. P. 564.

- the start of the negotiations with Germany and the signing of the truce treaty stopped the movement of the German troops to the Western Front;
- the long lasting consultations and discussions prevented the Germans from preparing the offensive in the Western Front;
- Trotsky's declaration resulted in the termination of the truce agreement and movement of the German soldiers from the west to the east.

The main goal that the German General Headquarters had sent Lenin to Russia for in the first place wasn't reached. The Russian Empire had collapsed and broken down, but Germany didn't gain much out of that. Kaiser Wilhelm established the government of Vladimir Ilyich Lenin, and now he had to segregate from his own creation. And to keep the troops in the east instead of sending them to the west, where they were so much needed.

...On February 18, 1918, the German troops, namely 47 infantry and 5 cavalry divisions started the offensive in the Eastern Front. The task was clear — the Germans wanted to clarify the situation: either to crush the contender definitely or to force it to sign the Peace Treaty. No fighting back Bolsheviks is possible: there are neither forces, nor resources. How did the "allies" react? It is definite — the treaty with Germany has to be signed. As we all remember, this was what Lenin did. Being a copious speaker, Trotsky describes in his memoirs the behaviour of the Entente representatives, "Since the German offensive started, the behaviour of the French (at least, some of them) changed drastically. Some of the French officers insisted on the signing of the Brest-Litovsk Peace Treaty to win a couple of weeks to get ready for the repulse: this point of view was defended by the French spy, aristocrat and monarchist."[1]

---

[1] Trotsky L. The French Imperialism and the Soviet Russia During the Brest Negotiations ((http//www.zhurnal.ru/magister/library/trotsky/trotl658htm)

In the meantime, Lenin tries to win time and to manoeuvre. Germany doesn't receive any answer on its warning about the end of the truce. The German offensive begins — Bolsheviks remain silent. In five days, the Germans moved 250 km forward, got hold of 2,000 artillery guns, hundreds of locomotives and trucks, thousands of railway cars with all kinds of cargoes. On January 21 (8), Kiev was conquered by the Germans. Lenin reacted on this development with a decree-appeal "The Socialistic Motherland is in Danger!" On February 23 (10), the Red Army day, the Germans presented another ultimatum to Bolsheviks, more severe than before. It's not a joke — in case they didn't receive any answer, they would take Petrograd. Only 48 hours were given to fulfil the demands of the ultimatum!

The demands of the Germans are so flagrant that even the hopeless Bolsheviks can't agree on them. The peace conditions were as follows: the Russian armies were to leave Latvia, Lithuania, and Estonia, and the German police will be brought in there to control the situation. Russia had to conclude peace with Finland and Ukraine, which meant to agree with the German occupation of these territories, and to commit to demobilize the army, including the newly established Red Army. An uproar takes place during the meeting of the Central Committee. Left-wing Communists, including Bukharin, Kollontai, Armand, Radek, and Kuybyshev, and left-wing Socialist Revolutionaries are totally against it. They believe that to sign such a treaty means to directly betray the world revolution and the national interests.

And Lenin is following his own way, because he understands perfectly well that after Bolsheviks performed their mission, which is to destruct the country, nobody would support them from outside. Beside this, the Entente emissaries insist on signing the Treaty in order to complicate the matters even more. Lenin had to convince his hysterical companions-in-arms, who had given notices to terminate their key positions as a sign of their disagreement with Lenin's compulsion. At long last, Ilyich threatened them with his own resignation, and it produced an effect. The Peace Treaty was signed on March 3, 1918. Having arrived in Brest, the Russian delegation leaded by Sokolnikov dropped their signatures on all the documents in silence in one day. *Had Bolsheviks done this one month earlier, the conditions of the treaty would have been quite different!* The head of the German Army writes in his memoirs, "They hold themselves in their misfortune, which they themselves are responsible for."[1]

Then, why, or rather for whom did Bolsheviks conduct the negotiations with Germany in such a way?

In the most complicated situation Lenin managed to manoeuvre between two international forces fighting each other. And gained the upper hand. By having agreed to all the demands of the Germans, Lenin saved his revolution. His government is irreplaceable for Berlin — another power could disavow the peace treaties. By fulfilling the requirements of the British — to drag the negotiations out and to create as many uncertainties as possible — Lenin got the possibility to ask them for support.

By the development of the events in Finland, the history in the course of two months confirmed that his tactics were correct. On November 23, 1917, the Eduskunta (the Parliament) of Finland declared Finland's independence by a majority of votes. However, in the middle of January, the revolution started, and it was followed by the Civil War. The future Finnish Marshal Mannerheim, who was a Russian lieutenant general at that time, managed to mobilize around 70,000 people to the governmental "White" Army. Indeed, he placed his stake mostly on Germany. The Germans were more than ready to side with the "White" Finns in the conflict flared up. Bolsheviks supported the Finnish "Reds," an at the end of 1917, their representatives were given weapons from the military depots in Petrograd. By signing the Peace Treaty of Brest-Litovsk with the Germans the Bolsheviks faced off the threat from themselves, but now the "Red" northern neighbours were under threat. Despite the fierce counterstand, the revolutionary Finns were defeated in April of the same year, and the German corps of 20,000 people had a significant impact on this. Had Lenin listened to Bukharin and Armand, had he refused to sign the agreement with Berlin, the German soldiers instead of the "Red" Finns would have driven out the first Government of the Workers and Peasants and have occupied Petrograd...

---

[1] Ludendorff E. My War Memoirs 1914–1918. M.: AST, 2005. P. 568.

In the meantime, the German command tries to be ahead of their antagonists from the Entente and to conduct an attack in the Western Front, before a high number of the American troops concentrates on the continent. On February 13, 1918, General Ludendorff reported to Kaiser Wilhelm, "The army is concentrated and well prepared to perform the greatest task in history."[1] On March 21, 1918, at 4:40 a.m., booming of the artillery announces the beginning of the decisive operation in World War 1.[2] The strongest 5-hour fire attack with the use of toxic projectiles is directed to the "allies" positions. As a result, the Germans penetrated the dispositions of the enemies for 84 km and won the victory, which neither the British nor the French had won since the positional warfare had set in.[3] The German offensive in the Western Front lasted for 119 days (from March 21 to July 18).

But what was the use of it? The Germans would lose the war, anyway. Why? Because Germany didn't use the advantageous moment for the strategic destruction of the enemy. The fact is the Germans didn't have any resources to put into the breakthrough. The German command suffers in the Western Front due to the shortage of free resources, and in Russia there are about 1,5 million German soldiers at the same time. *The Germans can't even throw the cavalry into the breakthrough, because the German cavalry is in the Russian Front!*[4]

These are the "advantages" that the Germans got, having concluded the Peace Treaty with the Russians. We can still read in the history schoolbooks that the Brest-Litovsk Peace Treaty was really advantageous for Germany...

---

[1] Strokov A. A. The History of Art of War. St. Pb., Omega-Poligon. V. 5. P. 609.

[2] The code name for the German offensive was operation "Michael."

[3] Strokov A. A. The History of Art of War. St. Pb., Omega-Poligon. V. 5. P. 614.

[4] Ib. P. 613.

Two shifts of power in February and in October were relatively bloodless. A civil war in Russia could not start. A civil war in its worst form with the extermination of millions of people and the complete destruction of the country's economy, as it was needed for the total liquidation of our country as a world empire. The Russians didn't want to fight, the demobilized soldiers rushed home. For the total destruction and the blood letting in Russia an all-out catastrophic civil war was needed. A universal atrophy. The destruction of everything and everybody. In such situation any political movement, hardly having started to really control the situation, immediately turned to be enemy №1 for the British and the French. Our Entente "friends" didn't plan to have a strong centralized power in Russia, whatever it could be called. Thus, in the current situation for the "allies" Bolsheviks turned to be a sort of interlopers...

CHAPTER 4

Why the West Relied on Bolsheviks?

> Some rascal can be useful for us exactly because he is a rascal.
>
> *Vladimir Lenin*

— Open the door! Cheka! — hush voices could be heard from downstairs. Then somebody knocked on the door. The knocks were persistent and resolute.

The secretary was a fine fellow — as soon as he saw the cars with the chekists approaching, he bolted the door in their faces. Well done!

Captain Francis Allan Cromie, the British Navy attache and in addition to his direct duties the head of the residentura[1] of the British intelligence services in Russia, shivered. He didn't expect the chekists to be so fast. Two officers were hurry-skurry burning down the incriminating papers directly on the floor.

— Open the door or we will break it open!

— This is lawless! You have no right to! It's a disgrace! — the secretary of the British Embassy was playing for time and trying to sound out the situation.

— Who are you?

— I'm Commissar Smirnov. Here are my papers, — said a calm voice downstairs. — I have a search warrant. Kindly open the door and don't prevent us from searching.

The door was solid, but they couldn't gain more than a couple of minutes. The secretary kept on resenting, when the entrance door cracked under the blow of an axe.

---

[1] Translator's note: Residentura is a department of an intelligence service operating in a foreign country.

Captain Cromie wasn't someone who could be easily frightened. A thin sheaf of papers, which were supposed to be burnt down, was still lying on the floor. There was no way they could be given to the chekists.

— Come on and burn them down quickly! — Cromie shouted to his officers and jumped out to the stairs.

It was about time! The door, which was broken into pieces, fell down aside, and about ten chekists burst into the entrance hall, pushing the secretary away. It's an emergency situation, it's the Emergency Committee. And its actions today are also an emergency. But the behaviour of the chekists today was quite unusual.

Captain Cromie stood in the staircase holding a Browning in each hand.

The Soviet representatives used to enter the mission with respect and even with awe. Now something unthinkable was taking place — a search! A search in the British Consulate! None of the Russian tsars has ever allowed himself to do so. And the Bolsheviks give the "all-clear" to this!

— Messers! You have to leave the territory of the mission immediately! — Cromie said calmly, still pointing his guns at the visitors. He would rather die than give in. He will not stand such a disgrace.

— Get out of our away and back off, otherwise we will shoot you down like a dog! — the commissar snapped sternly, reaching out for the gun holster.

Hopefully, they have managed to burn the papers down. It didn't make any sense to play for time further. Now they were against a backdrop of a light square of the door, and he stood like a dark shadow in the staircase. Soon their eyes would get used to the darkness, and he would lose his transitory advantage. Cromie gave a jolt to the left to avoid the first bullets and pulled both triggers. The first shots hit the target, the commissar sighed queerly and fell backwards.

The chekists started to shoot at the British immediately. The stairs lighted up with the revolver shots. One of the Bolsheviks screamed and fell facedown on the commissar's body. Captain Cromie kept pulling the trigger until something heavy hit his head. His legs bended, then he was hit with something again and again. And it got dark…

Sidney Reilly was walking rapidly through the evening Petrograd. A truck with the Red Army soldiers rushed past. And another one. Reilly forced the pace, turned round the corner and stopped. The area was secured. Several corpses were lying in front of the Embassy.

— Are you going to visit the Embassy, comrade? — the nearest sentry made a step forward. — Your papers, please?

— Here is my warrant, please. What's going on here? — Reilly asked in his turn.

— A search in the British Embassy, comrade Relinsky, — the sentry answered. — They have shown resistance. Two of ours and one from the Embassy have been shot down.

— Thank you, comrade, — answered Sidney Reilly and put his certificate of the Petrograd Cheka member in the name of Sidney Relinsky in his pocket.

They acted really resolutely and were not afraid to break into the Embassy. To be honest, one could expect this. Yesterday on July 30, 1918, the Cheka Head Solomon Uritsky was shot dead in Petrograd. Lenin was seriously wounded in Moscow. And the Cheka has got enraged.

He urgently had to leave. He will be searched for, maybe, they are already looking for him. Reilly readjusted his leather cap and turned into an off street…

It's a classical story for a Hollywood action-thriller: a scientist performs an experiment, the results of which appear to be unexpected. An unknown force breaks loose. Something like that happened at the beginning of the 20 century. Having used the revolutionaries to destruct the Russian Empire, the British hadn't estimated the potential of the Russian rebels. Bolsheviks have surprised their "allied" parents. They turned out to be functional and healthy. When they landed in Russia, they quickly seized power and despite all the circumstances they managed to keep it. Their behaviour was resolute and bold. From October 1917 to January-February 1918, the Bolshevik Revolution has spread all over the country. The power of the Soviets was spreading over the huge country at such a pace that Lenin called this process "a triumphant march." Bolsheviks managed to solve the tangled situation of the Brest-Litovsk Peace Treaty smoothly. Yet, the most horrible thing was that Bolsheviks in a few months managed to set up a system that could really function in a total chaos and a 100% havoc. Exactly due to their success in restoring the state the Bolsheviks became an undesirable element on the Russian political palette for the "allies." Because it was not for the sake of the triumph of the international ideas that the British intelligence services had helped Lenin and his clique to seize power. Of course, not! They did it to launch the Civil War. The economy should have burnt down, the legitimate leaders should have disappeared, and the territory of the huge country should have "melted" in the fire of the Civil War.

The Moors have done their duty, but they are not going to leave. It's an unpleasant surprise, but this problem can be solved. A new big political game was beginning. While conducting the negotiations and consultations with Lenin and Trotsky, the intelligence services in the west start to prepare their displacement from the political map of the country. Lenin and his clique have to be removed. He is too good, this Lenin! One never knows: with his irrepressible energy, he might get a grip of Russia before it becomes weak and defenceless. Or he might sign a new agreement with the Germans!

Who should they use to liquidate the Bolshevik power? Their colleagues — the revolutionaries. The British are preparing a takeover, the first part of which our history calls "The Revolt of Left SRs," and the second part — "The Plot of Ambassadors."

The residentura of the British intelligence services works freely in the new Russia. There's a happy hunting ground for the foreign intelligent services in the Sovietdom.[1] There is no counterintelligence service, no police, no gendarmerie. *There is even no army!* Who will be hunting down the spies? Maybe, the All-Russian Emergency Committee (VCheka), newly established especially for fighting counterrevolution and sabotage, headed by Felix Dzerzhinsky? No, it will not. As it is clear from its name, it fights against counterrevolution, meaning officers, bankers, generals, and Cossacks. The Cheka also fights against sabotage, and what is sabotage in 1918? A saboteur in 1918 doesn't secretly pour sand into bearings, and he is not a guerrilla derailing the trains. The saboteurs are former office employees and government officials who decided not to work and by this to speed up the end of the Bolshevism. The severe chekists force them to go to work under the threat of a death penalty, which is the supreme measure of social defence.

The British intelligence didn't consider the overthrow of Bolsheviks a complicated task. A revolt in the new capital — Moscow — was being planned, and all the most important governmental buildings should have been occupied. The Congress of Soviets should have had to legislatively confirm the new revolutionary government in Russia. The plan was that Left SRs, the only allies of the Bolsheviks, would get the power. Let us recall that Lenin's government, the Sovnarkom,[1] which mostly consisted of RSDRP[2] members, also included four Left SRs. In fact, Left SRs were also a governing party, but they did not understand the greatness of Lenin's decisions and considered the Peace Treaty of Brest-Litovsk to be a treason against the revolution and their motherland. The Left SRs did not see that their strife for the expansion of the Russian revolutionary fire was misused by those who wanted to add one more revolution to three other Russian Revolutions. In case of their success a new chapter would appear in the history books, which would tell us not about "The Revolt of Left SRs," but about some Great July Revolution of the Left SR Party. And it was planned to excite the anti-Soviet revolts in Rybinsk, Murom, and some other places at once.

---

[1] Translator's note: A contemptuous way the Russians used to call the Soviet power.

Let's be the judge. What perspectives would the foreign intelligence services have if their plan turned out to be a success? Lenin and his comrades would be cleared out of the way, and the Soviet regime would break up as a house of cards. There would be a vacuum of power. A new government of Left SRs would rule from Moscow. In the central Russia, the uprisals of Right SRs under the guidance of Boris Savinkov would take place. Left and Right SRs would never come to any agreement — it was not without a reason that they got divided into the "Left" and the "Right" ones. Cossacks on Don hate all the Socialists there are. The White Volunteer Army led by Socialist Revolutionary Muraviev together with the Cossacks in the Kuban region is also fighting against the Bolshevik forces. A break up and disintegration of Russia are guaranteed. Then one can calmly wait until this civil strife is over and under the total chaos appoint the ruler of Russia (or rather, the remains of the Empire), who will be useful for the internal interests of the British Crown.

---

[1] Translator's note: Sovnarkom stands for the Soviet of the People's Commissars.

[2] Translator's note: RSDRP stands for the Russian Social-Democratic Labour Party.

And this is not all. The plan is more complicated. To boost the conflict with Germany, German Ambassador to Russia Baron von Mirbach should be killed. The outcome is full chaos and Germany's drawing into a new war on the territory of the former Russian Empire. The premises of foreign embassies have a special status. Breaking into the German Embassy is equal to declaring a war to Germany, capturing the USA Embassy means occupying the territory of this state. The assassination of a diplomat is a direct challenge to the state, which has sent him to the respective country. Isn't the assassination of the ambassador a slap in Germany's face from the new Russian government?

The most important thing is that no counterstand to the take-over of the SRs was expected. The population of Russia got into a muddle long ago and was unable to tell one power from another. Another new revolutionary government will be met with indifference. The disappearance of Bolsheviks will be met by the population with the same indifference. The Soviets and all the outward emblems will remain after the take-over.

A hot summer of 1918 is one the most long game of chess. The fate of Russia is at stake in this chess game, as well as the fate of the whole world. Indeed, World War 1 is at its final stage. One more blow to Germany, and Germany will collapse like Russia. The combat actions against the Russian Bolsheviks or SRs could be the last straw for Germany. Then the goals of the World War will be reached — the competing empires will be liquidated. The operation in Russia is extremely important for the Foggy Albion, and that's why the best forces are sent to Russia. This is the Head of the British Embassy Bruce Lockhart himself, the officers of the embassy, and Captain George Hill, who has recently arrived from Britain. The on-site assistance is provided by the Head of the Residentura of the British Intelligence Captain Francis Allan Cromie. Finally, early in 1918, the last missing ring of the plot chain arrived. Ambassador Bruce Lockhart (and the agent at the same time) highly appraised this person, "Sidney Reilly is a mysterious figure of the British intelligence services, who has acquired the reputation of the best spy in Britain."[1]

This master of the behind-the-scene battles is sent to the roiling Russia early in 1918. It means that the "allies" are planning something secret, dirty and grandiose. Sidney Reilly's luggage on his way to Russia is not empty. Bruce Lockhart has in his pocket a warrant signed by Trotsky, which reads, "One should provide all the necessary assistance to the staff of the British mission." One may go wherever he wants with this paper. The pockets of Sidney Reilly are not empty, either: there is yet another letter of recommendation, signed by the future Narkom[2] of the Foreign Affairs Maxim Litvinov.[3] At that time he is a Soviet representative in London (unofficially official, just like Bruce Lockhart in Moscow). Litvinov asks to assist comrade Reilly. The letter has worked: as soon as the British agent arrived in Moscow on May 7, 1918, he met with two high-ranking Bolsheviks, Chief of Sovnarkom Administration Bonch-Bruyevich, and Deputy of Narkom of Foreign Affairs Karakhan.

Three weeks later Reilly had the papers in the name of chekist Sidney Georgievich Relinsky![4] Instead of disclosing the plots and plotters, the Cheka provided them with some sort of "protection," thus facilitating them to freely carry out the plot. Reilly is dynamically furthering the cause. Lockhart and other colleagues quickly introduced him to the right people. One of the figures, who interested Reilly the most, was Yakov Peters, the commander of the Latvian Riflemen division, a temporary vice-deputy of the Cheka Chairman Dzerzhinsky. Reilly had excellent compromising materials against this Cheka leader — during his emigration Peters married a British woman and concealed this fact from the party comrades.

---

[1] Sayers M., Kahn A. The Secret War Against Russia. M.: GIIL, 1947 (http//www.geocities.com/CapitolHill/Parliament/7231/sayers/sayers03.htm)

[2] Translator's note: Narkom stands for a People's Commissar.

[3] You must agree that such behaviour of Bolshevik Litvinov is odd — he gives recommendation letters to the British agents, one after another. These agents plan in short to overthrow the Bolshevik power.

[4] Sayers M., Kahn A. The Secret War Against Russia. M.: GIIL, 1947 (http//www.geocities.com/CapitolHill/Parliament/7231/sayers/sayers03.htm)

The British intelligence service starts to conspire. Lenin seems not to suspect anything. Trotsky is also very busy. The next Congress of the Soviets will take place soon, and the revolt is scheduled to coincide with the Congress. The timeframe of the All-Russian Congress of the Left SR Party is the same. It's very practical: all the leaders will be in the session, and every delegate is an extra bayonet in case of street fighting. The British are not going to have a heart-to-heart talk with Left SRs, of course! They are only pawns in the British political game. When writing a scenario of the revolt, one has to keep in mind the peculiarities of this party. They are very scrupulous with regard to Bolsheviks, their colleagues in the Sovnarkom. They are unable to kill the Leninists, who they sit in the sessions of the Sovnarkom together with. The German imperialistic ambassadors are a different story. Reilly needs the corpses of not only the German Ambassador Von Mirbach, but also of the Bolshevik leaders. The "allies" have to engage Right SRs in the terroristic actions. Despite almost the same name, they are tough with regard to Bolsheviks. Boris Savenkov, the former Kerensky's deputy, receives from Sidney Reilly money for training and arming the terrorists. Earlier, Savinkov has staged the assassination on Grand Prince Sergey Alexandrovich, now his targets are Lenin and the other Soviet leaders.

The British and the French don't give money for nothing. The first shot and the first trial of strength took place on June 20, 1918. The 27-year old Press, Agitation, and Propaganda Narkom Volodarsky (Moisey Goldstein) is on his way to Petrograd to take part in the meeting of railway workers. Right SR, gunman Sergeyev is waiting for him there. The Bolshevik minister has no guards with him, he is escorted by an unarmed driver only. Volodarsky has a revolver with him, but he hasn't even managed to unholster it. The first terror victim is killed by several pistol shots.

Left SRs in their turn prepare a revolt according to the plan. The resolution of their Congress reads, "It is necessary to terminate the Peace Treaty of Brest-Litovsk, which is perilous for the Russian and the world revolution, by revolutionary means."[1] The Congress charges the Central Committee of the Party with implementation of this decision, and the Central Committee entrusts Yakov Blumkin with this important task. He is an interesting character, who has to be described in more detail.

---

[1] Trotsky L. The Soviet Republic and the Capitalist World (http//www.rwp.ru/index.html).

We shall skip the childhood years of little Yasha, let's move over to his turbulent revolutionary youth right away. In January 1918, Blumkin together with the criminal Mishka Yaponchik actively takes part in establishing the First Volunteer "Iron Squad" in Odessa. The history is silent about the number of the bourgeois robbed and killed by Yasha and his criminal friend. Yasha has friends not only among the criminals, but also in the local poetic Bohemia. One of them is Pyotr Zaitsev. This "poetic" young man becomes the chief of the headquarters of the Odessa dictator, SR Mikhail Muraviev. Money has always had a magical effect on Blumkin. All his life he will be close to significant finance flows. Looking at his new friend Pyotr Zaitsev rolling in money Blumkin realizes that revolution means big money. A whole bunch of money.

Besides his greed, Blumkin had many talents. And his following rise was breathtaking. A young Jewish lad must have had some special qualities to satisfy his mysterious patrons. And from this moment his career skyrockets. Yasha Blumkin's career was incredible, simply fantastic! In March 1918, at the age of 19, he (without any previous military experience) was recommended to be appointed the chief of the headquarters of the 3rd Ukrainian Soviet Odessa Army (!), which had to bring the offensive of the Romanian and Austro-Hungarian troops to a halt.[1] This army had about 4,000 soldiers and was under the command of SR Muraviev. Indeed, without having got a smell of powder, the army retreated in panic when the enemy approached. *Despite this fact, "for having delivered special military services" (!) Blumkin was appointed the commissar of the War Council and the assistant to the army headquarters commander.* Here our hero takes part in an ambiguous finance fraud and tries to appropriate the confiscated, which is state-owned, money. Blumkin's dipsy-doodles became known and under the risk of being arrested he returned 3,5 million rubles back to the bank. His affair was safely covered up, and at the end of 1918, he left the army, where he was reputed for a thief, and went to Moscow.

---

[1] Savchenko V. The Adventurers of the Civil War: A Historic Research. Kharkov, Folio; M.: AST, 2000. P. 307.

He was immediately appointed the head of the security service of the Central Committee of the Left SR Party![1] "Revolution prefers young lovers," Trotsky wrote about Blumkin, pointing out that he "had an odd career behind and played an even odder part later."[2] In the future Yakov will be an orthodox Trotskist, but so far he is still a Left SR and will become a part of history in this guise. His carrier skyrockets, and in May 1918, Blumkin starts to work in the Cheka. *And he is not a rank and file employee — Yakov gets an important position and is appointed the head of the secret department for counterrevolution prevention!* Blumkin was put in this important position after the recommendation from the Central Committee of the Left SR Party as "an expert on the discovery of plots." The historians don't know anything about any real plot ever discovered by Yasha before May 1918. Why was he offered this position then? Which merits was he promoted for?

The preparations of the revolt were at their last stage, and the "allies" implanted the needed people with the help of the SRs. If the department for plot prevention is headed by a plotter, his colleagues can calmly prepare the planned action. Pay attention to the dates, please. The start of Blumkin's carrier is February-March 1918. The Peace Treaty of Brest-Litovsk hasn't been signed yet, and Lenin hasn't given a half of Russia to the Germans yet. The plot of the "allies" against Bolsheviks is in progress. The plot is, of course, at its initial stage: the selection and promotion of the needed people, who are being tested. It's too early for Left SRs to start hating Bolsheviks, they simply have not managed to betray the revolution yet. Who is initiating the plot? The British, **because irrespectively of the outcome of the events the strategy of the British is always the same:**

---

[1] Savchenko V. The Adventurers of the Civil War: A Historic Research. Kharkov, Folio; M.: AST, 2000. P. 309.

[2] Ib.

consistent destruction and annihilation of any statesmanship in Russia! The Anglo-Saxon policy with regard to the Russian Federation today is the same...

The Russian Empire is destroyed, Kerensky is in political oblivion, now it's the Bolsheviks' turn. In June 1918, Blumkin's carrier brings him to the starting position for a leap to the pages of history books. They have specified the title of the young chekist's position — he has become "the head of the subdivision of the counter-revolution prevention department responsible for foreign embassies' security and prevention of their eventual criminal activities."[1] The future killer of the German diplomat is entrusted with his future victim's security...

The operation on the liquidation of Baron Wilhelm von Mirbach was not at all easy. Blumkin started to work up to the operation. The first point was the ambassador's relative, Officer of the Austrian Army Robert von Mirbach, who was at that time in the Russian captivity. In April 1918, he was released from captivity and stayed at one of the Moscow hotels. Landstrom, a Swedish actress, the mistress of the young Mirbach, unexpectedly committed a suicide without any visible reasons. Most likely, the poor actress was killed by Blumkin and his assistants. The further chain of events brings us to the same conclusion. The chekists from Yakov's department conduct the investigation. Robert von Mirbach is detained, and his relative — Ambassador Wilhelm von Mirbach — tries to help him out. Von Mirbach approaches the Cheka with a request to release his relative against his own guarantees of the German ambassador.

It's time for Yasha Blumkin to pay back his friends from the British intelligence for his breathtaking career. Late in June, he convinces the leaders of the Left SR Party to murder the German ambassador in order to provoke a "revolutionary war of liberation against the German imperialists."[2] The events are approaching their bloody outcome. The Congress of Soviets is opened. Baron von Mirbach attends the first session just to hear a lot of accusations against him, as well as the country he represents. The SR speakers abuse the Bolsheviks and the Germans left and right. The German ambassador is only sneering. He got used to such empty talks long ago. But he doesn't suspect that this time it won't be the empty talks only...

---

[1] Savchenko V. The Adventurers of the Civil War: A Historic Research. Kharkov, Folio; M.: AST, 2000. P. 310.

[2] Ib P. 311.

The application for the negotiations with the German ambassador was printed on the Cheka official letterhead and referred "to the matter concerning the German ambassador personally." The member of the Central Committee of the SR Party Proshian forged signatures of Dzerzhinsky and another SR, Alexandrovich, who at that time was Dzerzhinsky's deputy, stamped the document and ordered to give Blumkin a Cheka car. The operation was prepared perfectly: a *real* Head of the Cheka department Yakov Blumkin with *real* documents in a *real* Cheka car was on the way to the ambassador to discuss his relative's case, which was *really* handled by Blumkin.

On July 6, 1918, at 2 p.m., Blumkin and Andreyev entered the building of the German Embassy and demanded an audience. The visitors were digging in their heels and insisted on a personal meeting with the ambassador. Usually cautious, von Mirbach came to see the persistent visitors. For five minutes Blumkin was telling the ambassador how his nephew has been arrested, and then he opened his briefcase as if to take out the needed documents. Suddenly he whipped up a revolver from his briefcase and shot, and then casted a bomb, which was fatal for Baron von Mirbach. Blumkin and his assistant Andreyev escaped the building by jumping out of the window, started the engine of their car and departed. On the way they discovered that Blumkin is wounded and couldn't move about without assistance. He was brought to the headquarters of the SR detachment commanded by Popov and bandaged.

Then the scheme gets more interesting. In some odd way the information about the whereabouts of the assassins reaches Dzerzhinsky in a split second. He comes to the assassins' hiding place to detain them and gets into a trap. "Iron" Felix went to Popov's detachment without any guards and without any doubt, because it was the Cheka detachment on special operations — in other words, he was going to his own subordinates. But the commander of Left SRs (who became a commander in Makhno's Army later) Dmitry Popov unhesitatingly arrested the head of the Soviet counterintelligence.

The headquarters of the detachment turned into the centre of the SR revolt. The Central Committee of the Party was moved here according to the plan. The main forces of Left SR were concentrated here, as well. They took over the telegraph office to inform the whole Russia that Lenin's wire messages should not be sent, as they became "bad" for the Soviet government. However, with regard to all the other actions Left SR are slow and lose the initiative, while Bolsheviks, on the contrary, are resolute and quick. SRs leave out an important point — Lenin is at large, alive and sound. Lenin gives an order to the Latvian and Red Army detachments to take rough action and put an end to the revolt of Left SRs. At pointblank range of fifteen guns, Bolsheviks gunned down the town district where the coupists were concentrated. The coupists did not stand the gunfire and withdrew.

And what about Blumkin? Which miracles are happening to him again? On July 9, 1918, he managed to escape from the hospital, which was hardly watched, with the help of his "politically uncommitted friends," as he recalls it. These friends take care of their agent. And who are they if not the SRs? Later Blumkin will write, "In August 1918, I was living a secluded life in the suburbs of Petrograd, busy with my literature work, compiling the materials about the July events, and writing my book."[1] In one word, he has done his part of the job, and it was not his fault that the revolt had been crushed and that the war between Russia and Germany had not started anew. And this war was so much needed! The German troops were not far from Paris — it was the last German offensive in this war. A decisive one. And the reopening of the Eastern Front would have been be so very welcome. By who? Yakov Blumkin's "politically uncommitted friends" from the British intelligence.

And yet, that was the very beginning of the miracles in Yakov Blumkin's life. The assassin of von Mirbach didn't need to hide for long from the proletarian justice's hand of vengeance. A special Investigation Commission, as agreed with the Presidium of VTsIK of the Soviets, decided to amnesty Blumkin. It's quite unclear why the chekists were so merciful about Blumkin, and which Blumkin's merits for the motherland were taken into account. However, Blumkin's biography is all made of such inexplicable "miracles." Let's take note of this, the guy is just lucky. After his amnesty in May 1918, Blumkin stopped hiding and was eager to work in the Cheka again. The chekists are ruthless, and they have no mercy for the enemies of the working people. Yet, Yasha Blumkin can't be turned down and thus gets employed by the Cheka for the second time! Nobody knows for sure what he is dealing with there: now he is a head of a certain Cheka detachment, now he is an agent under cover on counterespionage, now in accordance with the newspapers he is sabotaging in the rear of Petliura's troops.

---

[1] Savchenko V. The Adventurers of the Civil War: A Historic Research. Kharkov, Folio; M.: AST, 2000. P. 316.

Let's return back to the tumultuous Moscow. The revolt of Left SRs has been subdued, the investigation starts. The Cheka, which effectively let slip the plot among their own ranks, shows an excessive zeal — the esprit de corps is at stake, and the Cheka doesn't want to lose its face. Like a mirage in the desert heat haze, more and more details appear unobscured. It's getting clear that they have managed to destroy only the "consequence," whereas the "cause" of the revolt is in "allied" embassies. But there is no direct evidence of the subversion by the "allies." In order to bring the dark side of the western intelligent services to the light, the Cheka undertakes a bold operation, unprecedented in its history. The key chain link in this operation is the Latvian Riflemen division under the command of Dzerzhinsky's deputy, comrade Peters.

Dissatisfaction prevails on the other side of the "spy barricades." Sidney Reilly is annoyed — Left SRs have turned out to be worthless plotters. He immediately suggests another plan to his bosses, a plan which stipulates the internal take-over: the power of Bolsheviks will be destructed not by military actions, but by a revolt inside the Kremlin. Only the Latvian Riflemen can do it. Reilly starts to conspire things anew. His arguments are the materials discrediting Peters, the division commander, promises of high rank positions in the future independent Latvian parliament, and money. Lots of money. All the doors and locks can be opened with money for Sidney Reilly. His agents penetrate into the General Headquarters of the Red Army. The British spy blatantly says, "The sealed orders of the Red Army get to be known in London before they get unsealed in Moscow."[1]

The Cheka is on alert, as well. The operation of the Soviet intelligence services starts when two men come to visit Bruce Lockhart. The visitors hand over to the British ambassador a letter from Captain Cromie, the British Navy attache in Petrograd, who in addition to his direct duties was the head of the residentura of the British intelligence in Russia.

"I have always feared the agents provocateurs, — Lockhart writes in his memoirs, — that's why I examined the letter with attention, but without any doubts it was from Cromie."[2]

They were not just some regular visitors — both were high-rank officers from the Latvian division. One of them was Berzin, the head of the Kremlin security service. The Latvians said they were ready to make an agreement with the British, because they didn't believe Bolsheviks would win and didn't want to fight on their side anymore. Lockhart could hardly keep down. It was an unbelievable luck — the people he needed so much came on their own. He gave the Red commanders about 1 million 200 thousand rubles for bribing the other Latvian officers and sent them to Sidney Reilly. "Two days later, — Lockhart remembers, — Reilly reported that the negotiation was going on smoothly and that the Latvians did not intend to sink together with Bolsheviks. With the help of the Latvians, he hoped to stage a counterrevolutionary revolt after our departure from Moscow."[3]

Reilly's plan was audacious, simple and inspired by the failed revolt of Left SRs. An emergency session of the Central Committee of the Bolshevik Party in the Bolshoi Theatre was scheduled for

---

[1] Sayers M., Kahn A. The Secret War Against Soviet Russia. M.: GIIL, 1947 (http//www.geocities.com/CapitolHill/Parliament/7231/sayers/sayers03.htm).

[2] Ib.

[3] Ib.

August 28, 1918. All the top leaders of the party would gather in the same building. They would be guarded by the Latvian Riflemen: on Berzin's order they would lock the doors and take aim on the people in the room. All of them would be arrested, Lenin and the top leaders will be liquidated. The Soviets will never survive without Lenin.

Everything was almost ready for the operation, when the annoyed Latvians informed that the session of the Central Committee of the Party was rescheduled from August 28 to September 6. That was bitter, but wasn't a problem. We'll have more time to work out and check all the details of the coming take-over. Sidney Reilly goes to Petrograd to meet Captain Cromie. Reilly will be back in Moscow not later than on September 6. Here, in the Moscow apartment of his mistress ballerina Dagmar, the British spy safekeeps big amounts of money. And it is well known that no revolution, no take-over is possible without money. When they run short of money, the new amounts of money are drawn upon from the bottomless resources of the British Embassy.

In the meantime, the plan of Sidney Reilly takes shape. In the morning on September 30, 1918, a cyclist appeared in the Palace Square in Petrograd. That was a young man wearing a chequered cap, knickerbockers, and elbow-high yellow gloves. He carelessly left his bicycle at the wall and decisively entered house №5 in Gorokhovaya Street, where the Petrograd Cheka had its premises. It was the beginning of a working day, the lobby was empty, and nobody paid any attention to the young man. He sat very quietly down in an armchair and seemed to be absolutely absorbed in the newspaper he had in his hands. Around 10 a.m., Moisey Uritsky's official car stopped at the door. The head of the Petrograd Cheka entered the lobby and went to the elevator. The "cyclist" caught him there and shot him in the head. Uritsky had no guards with him, but he had a revolver. Just like Volodarsky, who had been assassinated earlier, he didn't even manage to upholster his gun. The assassin, who was a member of the Right SR Party, a student of Petrograd University Leonid Kannegiesser, was arrested.

On the same day, in the evening, Ilyich made a speech in the meeting at the Michelson factory. As usual, Ilyich criticized the "rotten" western democracy. "Wherever the democrats rule, we see a barefaced real plunder. We know the real nature of the so-called democracies... as long as the landowners are comfortably accommodated in the palaces and fairytale castles, freedom of gathering is a fiction and means the freedom to gather in the great beyond."[1]

The irony of it is that the leader of the world proletariat almost got into the great beyond himself in a few minutes. One of the terrorists deliberately blocked the movement of the workers after the meeting, and the Right SR Fanny Kaplan made two point-blank shots at Ilyich.[2] The bullets were ground down and poisoned with curare. One of the bullets hit Lenin's lung a bit higher than the heart, another one hit his neck close to the artery. The leader of the world proletariat had no guards, no gun. He was seriously wounded.

Why do I accentuate so much the carelessness of the Bolshevik top leaders and the lack of the elementary security system? Because two months before Volodarsky had been assassinated, and Bolsheviks had time to take the necessary precautions to save their own lives, as well as the health and lives of the Bolshevik top leaders. They are surrounded by enemies! Why is Ilyich, who is usually so forethoughtful, mostly comparing the proletarian and bourgeois democracies instead of establishing a reliable security system? Let's keep in mind that he is the head of the CENTRAL RUSSIAN GOVERNMENT. Thus, his behaviour can be called criminal negligence. Bolsheviks don't care about this sphere at all — even Lenin has practically no guards. How can they be sure that nothing would happen to them?

That's true — Bolsheviks staged the take-over in October 1917, thus instantly acquiring innumerable enemies, and the first successful terrorist act against them took place only nine months later — in June 1918.[3] SRs, both left- and right-wing ones, who had been inactive for nine months, all of a sudden started to assassinate

---

[1] Lenin's speech at the Michelson factory (http//suder-bm.narod.ru/main/page8_2.htm).

[2] The historians of today insist that it was not Kaplan who was shooting. However, this detail is of no importance for our investigation.

[3] In other words, on the eve of the July revolt of Left SRs.

Leninists as if commanded. Why had they been idle before? As we can see, the Bolshevik leaders were extremely careless. We have only one answer: according to the "package" agreements between the Bolsheviks and "allies," Bolsheviks were given safety guarantees. As long as the secret negotiations (approximately from January till July 1918) lasted, Bolsheviks were given all the guarantees, and due to this fact Bolsheviks moved so carelessly. But the British wouldn't be British if they didn't try to dishonourably betray Bolsheviks, as well. And one nice day Leonid Kannegiesser and Fanny Kaplan shoved the pistols in their pockets...

The further actions of the Cheka are explained by the anger, the righteous anger of Bolsheviks. The actions were really tough. It is as follows: you've breached the security guarantees, and we are going to breach the immunity of your ambassadors. The detachment of the chekists closes round the building of the British Embassy in Petrograd. Then they assault the diplomatic mission. The outcome is that two chekists are killed along with Captain Francis Allan Cromie, the Navy attache of Great Britain, who also was the head of the residentura of the British intelligence in Russia.

In Moscow, Bolsheviks are not too soft with regard to the western diplomats, either. At night on September 1, 1918, the representatives of the British and the French missions were arrested. Despite their immunity, the following persons were brought to Lubyanka:[1] the French General Consul General Fernand Grenard, General Leonce Lavergne, and Head of the British Mission Bruce Lockhart himself. He was arrested by the chekists, spent several days in Lubyanka, and then in the Kremlin. It's an interesting detail: the diplomats who were involved in the plot were arrested on the order of Deputy Chief of the VCheka Yakov Peters. The very Peters, who had been supposed to arrest Lenin and other Bolshevik leaders. Three days later the Bolshevik press makes an announcement by publishing a detailed plan of the revolt in the Bolshevik newspapers. Sidney Reilly had not been mentioned, but all the Cheka was searching for him.

---

[1] Translator's note: Lubyanka has been the headquarters of the Russian State Security Service since the 19 century.

He went underground, and so did Captain George Hill. Both managed to escape from Russia and to safely return to Great Britain this time. Then another period of miracles came. This time these were the diplomatic miracles. Having arrested the ambassadors of Great Britain and France, Bolsheviks committed an arbitrary act on an international scale. The glove was thrown down in the face of two superstates of that time. It's September 1918 — two months later Germany would collapse, which means that the British and the French would be a step away from their victories in the World War. The matter would be practically settled. They are not just superstates: together with the USA they are the *only* superstates. A terrible affront is put on these giants. They could arrange a terrific fuzzbuzz out of this! The usurpers and tormentors of the Russian people are for peace in their words, but in fact, they break all the imaginable laws. One could call to memory all the sins of Bolsheviks: how the Provisional Government was overthrown, and how the All-Russian Constituent Assembly was dispersed. Their odd decrees could be reduced to dust and tossed in the garbage. An impudent tyranny! The scum of the earth should be punished! Bolsheviks can't play a trump card with regard to the information — they don't have any. The connection between the assassinations and Bruce Lockhart has not been proved. Sidney Reilly is at large. Lenin has nothing to clear himself of all these accusations.

It's possible to come down on Bolsheviks like a ton of bricks and bring the ideals of freedom to the peoples of Russia. The Entente troops are still on the Russian territory. But instead of escalating the conflict and accelerating the political situation… nothing happened. In any history book one can read that the British government was oddly reserved in its reaction to the Bolsheviks' hostile actions. The British government interned Maxim Litvinov and sent a telegram to the Bolshevik government, threatening Lenin and Trotsky with reprisals in case the lives of the British subjects were endangered (kindly pay attention — again only Lenin and Trotsky are mentioned). That's it.

Indeed, Bolsheviks arrested not only Lockhart — the chekists revealed the whole espionage network. And the chekists detained not only the residents of the Foggy Albion. To expand the stock, they sent other people to cells, too. The French, for instance. A Soviet prison is not a health resort. Captain Eduard Vacquier from the French intelligence is arrested in Petrograd in the early hours of September 2, 1918. The charges against him were brought only two weeks later. And the charges were really heavy — a plot against the security of the state, his membership in a counterrevolutionary organization. After two months full of interrogations and examinations, on November 23, 1918, a Bolshevik investigator Delafare[1] all at once informed him that the Cheka didn't have any charges against him. If the person is not charged with anything, he normally should be released. However, this rule didn't work in the Soviet prison: the captain was again brought to Butyrka,[2] where he spent almost two more months till January 16, 1919.

All what happened to this brave French captain can be called with only one name: a sheer mockery. In such cases, the consul, the embassy, the government have to do their best to get their subject out of prison. Especially when he is innocent. You can imagine how the "allied" diplomats would raise their voices if the French captain had been thrown into prison by the gendarmes of Nicholas II. But the French remain silent, just like the British. Despite the fact that acting in the heat of the moment the chekists arrested about 200 British, and half of them surely were taken by mistake. This subject could be made a piece of work: blameless victims are in the Bolshevik torture chambers! And yet, the British keep mum. And the French are as silent as the grave. Resenting on the official level, on the backstage they know Bolsheviks are right. Their blow is adequate to the treason which has taken place. It would be odd not to do anything for their arrested subjects. So, the British and the French resent verbally, both knowing it was just talk, actually. And they are getting ready for the new backstage negotiations.

---

[1] Delafare is a strange last name for a Chekist, isn't it? We'll talk more about him in another chapter.

[2] Translator's note: Butyrka is a colloquial term for the official Butyrskaya Prison in Moscow, Russia.

The simplest questions are solved first. Through the mediation of the Netherlands envoy in Moscow, the negotiations regarding the exchange of Litvinov and his 50 staff members for 200 citizens of Britain and France, arrested by Bolsheviks, start. Look closely at the figures: they negotiated to exchange 50 persons for 200 persons, in other words, all for all. The British really let *all* of the Soviet citizens go, while the chekists released only Lockhart and 130 other foreigners.

More than 60 men, whom Bolsheviks called "the bourgeois men of the draft age," stayed in the Peter and Paul Fortress and Lubyanka. The Cheka will release the survivals only a year later! Only those who are sure of their rightness and force can act like this. Such acts inspire respect. Bolsheviks are easily forgiven for Captain Cromie's death, too. Britain would not need a resident agent who failed the operation. His heroic death is the best outcome for all. Cromie understood it also very well, why would he go to the limit otherwise? Nobody in any of the embassies resisted the Cheka! He is the only victim on the part of the "allies"...[1]

Telling about the powerful blow, which was inflicted by the Bolshevik intelligence services on the plot of the "allies," one can't help mentioning how selective Lenin's anger was. The blows were pinpoint: only those who in Bolsheviks' eyes had breached the agreements and betrayed Lenin were arrested and persecuted. That's why Bruce

---

[1] By the way, in all the modern British books you would read that Captain Cromie was a sailor, and not a spy, and that he was torn to pieces by a crowd of drunk pogrom-makers and not shot down by the chekists. Due to this, we place here an extract from a British book, which makes everything fall into place. "Following the murder of Uritsky, the Soviet authorities in Petrograd had sent Cheka agents to close up the British Embassy. Upstairs, the members of the Embassy staff, under the direction of Captain Cromie, were burning incriminating papers. Captain Cromie dashed downstairs and bolted the door in the faces of the Soviet secret police. They broke down the door, and the desperate British agent met them on the stairs with a Browning automatic in each hand. Cromie shot and killed a commissar and several other officials. The Cheka agents returned his fire. Captain Cromie had fallen, with a bullet through his head" (Sayers M., Kahn A. The Secret War Against Soviet Russia. M.: GIIL, 1947).

Lockhart was arrested. Sidney Reilly worked exactly under his wing. Bolsheviks let the diplomat go, but Reilly's fate was quite unfortunate. Much later, in the course of the Cheka operation "Trust," he would be lured to the Soviet Russia and arrested. In order not to worry his British bosses they would announce in the press that the British spy Sidney Reilly had been shot down trying to cross the Soviet-Finnish border. In reality, he is alive and actively cooperates with the State Political Directorate, sharing his experience and thus giving the emerging Bolshevik intelligence services a start in life. The cooperation was so successful, and his help was so tangible that the British suspected a dirty trick of Bolsheviks. Reilly will have to die officially for the second time. The chekists will admit that the British spy is in the Cheka and that he was charged in absentia with regard to "The Case of the Ambassadors," and his death sentence can't be cancelled. One day in 1923, Reilly's corpse was demonstrated in Lubyanka. Such a strange demonstration of the decedent should assure the British intelligence MI 6 that the chekists would not be able to learn any more of their secrets or professional methods. In reality, Sidney Reilly will spend the rest of his life in comfort, being under the custody of the Cheka. The role he played in the creation and development of the Cheka — OGPU[1] is of immense significance.

The fates of the "allied" spies were very different. Captain Jacques Sadoul didn't get harmed in the total outburst of the arrests, which followed the assassination on Lenin. In Moscow, there is not only the French diplomatic mission, but also the military mission. The staff of the mission used to send reports to France on a regular basis. Here is one of them, "On October 12, the exits of the Yekaterininsky Institute, where the military mission had its premises, were taken over by the Cheka agents. They started to arrest the officers and soldiers that were leaving the building. Thus, Captain Sadoul was also arrested (but they let him go after he had demosntrated his special card) along with Junior Lieutenant Gillance-Lavergne and about 10 rank-and-file soldiers."[2]

---

[1] Translator's note: OGPU stands for United State Political Department.

[2] http//unilib.neva.ru/dl/327/theme_9/Sources/WW_I/zagovor.htm

Isn't it surprising that the chekists let the French captain go? Ok, the arrests are going on, but Lenin has to further negotiate and consult with the "allied" intelligence. He needs a contactee and a negotiator. To avoid any problems, Sadoul got a special card, and the chekists always let him go as soon as he showed this card to them. However, it was difficult to explain to other French military officers, arrested by Bolsheviks, why Jacques Sadoul was enjoying special treatment. You wouldn't tell them the ins and outs, would you? Of course, not. That's why a criminal case was opened against the brave spy in his motherland to cover up the underlying cause of the odd love the Soviet power had to the young French Army captain. Jacques Sadoul was sentenced to death in absentia in France in 1919 after many officers and soldiers of the French mission had seen him presenting a very *special card* to the chekists a year before! When he returned home in 1924, his task performed, after his vis-a-vis Lenin died, all the accusations would vanish into thin air in the Parisian courtroom...

The assassinations and murders, uprisings and revolts caused Lenin's decision to burn out all the sedition in the country with an iron hand. One has to demonstrate power and resoluteness. The partners from the intelligence services understand the language of force only. Five days after the attempt of the assassination on Ilyich on September 5, 1918, "The Resolution on Red Terror" by the Soviet of People's Commissars appeared in press. It resulted in the unequalled cruelty of the Civil War, and the loss of hundreds of thousands of Russians. In reaction to the Bolshevik resolution, all the White governments established their own firing squads. But if we read carefully the text of "The Resolution of the Soviet of People's Commissars on Red Terror," we will see who Bolsheviks addressed their resolution to, "All those who have anything to do with the White Army organizations, plots and revolts are to be executed by a firing squad."

The nationality and citizenship of the plotters are not indicated in the published documents. This is ... a signal. A message. The British are clearly informed — we'll shoot down everybody. Nothing will stop us, and we will finish off the ambassadors and the staff of the embassies without exception. *We are capable of anything!*

Bolsheviks are ready to negotiate, to observe the agreements, but they will never let themselves to be used as a doormat. Such attitude inspires respect. Bolsheviks are serious people, and they can be dealt with. They kick back, and they will not let the others pummel them "for free." Well, as for the tough language of Bolsheviks, the "allies" use the same language of ultimatums with them...

Directly in Lenin's works, in his speeches at the numerous conferences, meetings, and congresses of that time, the information regarding the behaviour of the British spies and diplomats during the negotiations wiggles through, "The question regarding Murmansk caused even more aggravation, because both the British and the French laid the claim on it, having invested dozens of millions in the port construction...They respect the neutrality so much that they steal everything in sight, moreover, they consider that them having an iron clad battleship, and us having nothing to chase it away to be a sufficient argument for a seizure.."[1]

This is the way the well-bred British gentlemen conduct a dialogue: the arguments they use would fit perfectly a discourse of the Stone Age. We have a club, i.e., an iron clad battleship, that's why we are right, and you don't have such a club, that's why you are wrong. To be fair, it must be said that after 90 years the arguments in the world policy have not changed much. The only difference is that now there are aircraft carriers and nuclear missiles instead of the clubs...

So, the things are going on this way. The partners in these negotiations hate each other wholeheartedly, but they have to come to an agreement. The interests of the "allies" and Bolsheviks force them to find a consensus. It's quite a common situation in politics. As long as the goals of Bolsheviks and Britain coincided, they steered a parallel course. In case of disagreement a period of conflicts started. The assassinations on Lenin and other Bolsheviks were arranged, the revolts flared up, the landing troops of the "allies" entered the territory of Russia. Bolsheviks inflicted a counterblow — this is common courtesy before the negotiations begin. Each party tries to increase its advantages to bargain from the position of strength. And it is always ready to betray its partner at the earliest possible opportunity.

---

[1] Lenin V. Works. V. 36. P. 343.

We can only guess what Lenin and the British intelligence have agreed upon. The very fact of these negotiations, not to mention their results, have always been omitted by the Soviet historiography. The modern researchers are more interested in vilifying the Communists and their ingenious leader, and to do that they savour in details only the German "component" of the Bolshevik surprising vitality. And yet, this is not the most important component. Bolshevism came to Russia due to the acquiescence of the British marionette Kerensky and conquered Russia with his help only because it was needed to destroy our country. Lenin's government survived and gained victory in the Civil War due to the same reasons. Lenin did find consensus with the Anglo-Saxons again — we can be sure of that. That is why no assassinations on the Soviet government leaders have taken place since "The Plot of Ambassadors"! The diplomats and military officers of the "allies" were not being arrested, either.

Yet, there is an undistinguished and interesting episode in the biography of the Cheka Head Felix Dzerzhinsky. *Right after ruining "The Plot of Ambassadors," he unexpectedly departs for... Switzerland to get some rest there.* Can you imagine: it is the end of 1918, havoc, famine, the Civil War, Red Terror, the typhoid fever. The Cheka is hard at work, disclosing the plots and shooting down the hostages. And its head goes on a vacation. He goes boating, eats well, enjoys the beautiful nature. The historians have found a very weighty reason for such odd behaviour of Felix Edmundovich. Allegedly, on insistence of his comrades, Dzerzhinsky goes to Bern to rest with his family.[1] His wife works at the Soviet Embassy in Switzerland.

One would think, it must be a family issue, a bit odd, though. How are the "allied" intelligence services involved here? Let's see.

- **in September 1918,** a Soviet Embassy is opened in Bern.
- **in October 1918,** the head of the Red Intelligence goes to Switzerland on a "vacation."

---

[1] Tishkov A. Dzerzhinsky. M.: Molodaya Gvardiya, 1985. P. 245–247.

- **in November 1918,** the revolution takes place in the neighbouring Germany.

The mission of Dzerzhinsky the "vacationer" is top secret and paramount. Germany is on the edge of collapse, and a vast amount of money is needed for the German revolution. The history of the Peace Treaty of Brest-Litovsk comes to its end. "German spies" — Bolsheviks — have to perform another task for their British and French friends. Late in October 1918, Dzerzhinsky left Moscow for Switzerland *exactly via Berlin,* and in the middle of November the German Empire did not exist anymore.[1] The Swiss government immediately closes the Soviet Embassy and breaks off the diplomatic relations with Bolsheviks until 1946. The fat is in the fire, and nobody is the wiser...

Lenin again demonstrated his cool-headedness and the skill to make a good turn. In return, the British made their concessions. The "allies" and Bolsheviks have agreed upon the following:

- Lenin's enemies in the Civil War will not be supported;
- the "allied" troops will intervene Russia but will not fight with the Red Army, they will only take under control those Russian territories, which might be of importance for their governments.

But you get nothing for nothing in this world. To reach the agreement with the British Bolsheviks will have to put something weighty on the swinging scale pan. The life and death of the dynasty is a bargaining chip on the negotiating table, sitting at which Lenin and the British were looking for a new consensus...

---

[1] In Bern Dzerzhinsky met ... Bruce Lockhart, who had been arrested before and recently expelled from Russia. What a surprise! In October 1918, the British spy was on his way to Switzerland, too. It's funny, how things work out: what a touching unanimity! According to the author of "The Iron Felix" biography he didn't meet Lockhart there. But this is not really important. If the agents of different intelligence services meet in the same city all of a sudden, it means a lot. We just need to pay attention to the events which would take place later. Nothing happens in Switzerland, but a revolution happens in Germany. Who staged it? Or did it happen by chance, by itself? Like February and October Revolutions in Russia? Maidan in Kiev? Pogroms in Chisinau?

CHAPTER 5

Who Forced Lenin to Liquidate the Romanovs?

> Belsatzar ward in selbiger Nacht von seinen Knechten umgebracht.
>
> (That same night Belshazzar was killed by his slaves).
>
> *The inscription on the wall in the room of the Ipatiev House, where the family of Nicholas II was shot dead.*

One can understand the main point of the extermination of the Romanovs by analyzing the daily and weekly changes in the situation and by understanding the long-term and current interests of the Germans, the Entente, and Bolsheviks. That famous "love triangle" of the Russian politics. However, it's important to *correctly* understand the interests of the parties in the middle of 1918. Otherwise, the real reasons and real assassins will remain unknown to us...

Let us return to **March 1918**, when we stopped in our story about the horrible fate of the members of the Imperial dynasty. An unpleasant surprise awaits the exiled Michael Romanov right upon his arrival in Perm. The local Soviet makes the decision to arrest all those brought there. Michael is indignant and protests. Having abdicated from the throne, he now has to ask for freedom. Because that is what he has agreed to. But he does not know that even if one has come to an agreement with Bolsheviks, it does not mean anything. On **March 20,** he sends a telegram to the Chief of the Administration of the Sovnarkom Bonch-Bruyevich. Having received the telegram, Bonch-Bruyevich put the overzealous comrades in Perm in their proper place. The grand prince got a permit to stay at the Korolevskiye Nomera Hotel[1] under the Cheka supervision.

The hotel had been given this high-sounding name not because of the top quality service, but for a reason. Originally, the building of the hotel was owned by a certain Mr. Korolyov. Then he was totally forgotten, and the hotel was called "Korolevskiye Nomera" by changing the spelling. So, Michael stayed at this very hotel with his secretary Johnson and two servants. But not for long. On the night of June 12/13, 1918, three men in soldier greatcoats came to his room and, having presented a certain warrant for his arrest, left with the grand prince and his secretary. Nobody has seen Michael Romanov and his secretary alive after that. As it will be found out by the Whites, who will occupy Perm later, they were taken to a factory in Motovilikha, a few kilometres from Perm. Pretender to the Russian throne №1 and Johnson[2] were killed there. The corpses were thrown into the blast furnace. This is the beginning of a long list of the members of the Romanov dynasty who perished in the revolutionary windstorm.

The next victims would be pretenders to the throne № 2 and №3: Crown Prince Alexei Nikolayevich and his father, the former Emperor Nicholas II. Together with them on the night of July 16/17, 1918, all the members of the family and servants who were accompanying them would be shot dead in Yekaterinburg. The pretext for the massacre were the troops of the Czechoslovak Legion, fighting Bolsheviks and drawing closer to Yekaterinburg.

The next day, July 18, it was the turn of the prisoners in Alapayevsk. The killers woke them up, informing them that the White and Czech troops were approaching. Peasant carts were waiting for them at the entrance. It was explained to the Romanovs that they were being moved to another more secure place. Close to Alapayevsk there were some old abandoned mines. The Romanovs were taken there. The killers decided to save the bullets, and the poor things were slaughtered with clubs. Grand Prince Sergei Mikhailovich, who perceived what would happen and showed resistance, was killed by a point-blank shot in his head. All the others were thrown down the mine still being alive. A grenade was cast into the mine to make the walls pull down. The death of these unfortunate people was agonizing…

---

[1] Translator's note: In Russian, "Korolevskiye Nomera" stand for "Royal Apartments."

[2] It is curious to know whether the British secretary of Michael Romanov was really killed. And in general, in the context of our revolution it is very interesting why the secretary was an Englishman. It's difficult to imagine that the British intelligence services did not try to implant their spy into the Tsar's family. Could they have managed to do it?

What is surprising is that the reaction of the Bolshevik authorities in the case with Michael and the prisoners in Alapayevsk and in the case with Nicholas Romanov's family was absolutely different. Bolsheviks officially informed the people about the shooting of Nicholas II only. Nothing was published about the death of Michael and the other Romanovs. On the contrary, the authorities were looking for the kidnappers, and a great probability of an escape, disguised as a kidnapping, was being discussed.

Right after the liquidation of Michael Romanov, the Cheka started to look for him. They did it for real and not just for an effect. The next day after the disappearance of the grand prince and his secretary, the head of the Cheka in Perm cables the following text to Moscow, "This night Michael Romanov and his secretary have been kidnapped by unidentified persons in soldier greatcoats. The investigation has not given any results yet. Appropriate measures are being taken."

Today it is believed that the grand prince has been killed by the Perm chekists. We don't know yet whether Moscow had given its sanction for such an execution or not. The most interesting thing is not the attempt of the chekists to "catch themselves," but the reaction to what happened of Beloborodov, the head of the Soviet of the Ural region, the future executioner of Nicholas II's family and the prisoners in Alapayevsk. The Romanovs are under his "jurisdiction," and he is responsible to Moscow for them. And he is really worried! *He is not aware of the fact that Michael Romanov has been killed!* If Michael managed to escape, the Romanovs safeguarded by him can escape, too. One can clearly see real and sincere anxiety in his telegram sent to the Perm Cheka right after the grand prince's disappearance on June 18, 1918, "Immediately cable when Michael was brought to Perm, who took him over, what instructions were given in regard to security, who gave these instructions, what measures the Governorate Soviet took to tighten the security, who decided not to imprison him but to accommodate him in an apartment, what the results of the investigation were, who was arrested, their names and evidence."[1]

The head of the Soviet of the Ural region asks many questions, but there is only one question at the bottom: how did the grand prince manage to escape? Beloborodov takes his mission to safeguard the Tsar's family seriously, and he is really worried. Which means he does not know that the grand prince has been assassinated by the chekists. If he had been aware of this fact, he would not have needed to send any telegrams. It would have been sufficient just to tighten the security under the pretext of what happened. And to calmly wait for the order to liquidate the prisoners in the Ipatiev House, and in Alapayevsk.

The security measures get tighter. It's exactly the probability of an escape that will be the reason for the decision regarding the fate of the unfortunate prisoners: the Romanovs should be liquidated or they will escape like Michael. And here again we see an odd situation: if there is one common plan of the liquidation of the crown-bearing family worked out in Moscow if the villain Lenin conducts from the Kremlin the liquidation of the Romanovs, what is this show for? Why all the circus? One should simply send a letter of order in regard to what should be done. And to liquidate all those who stand in the way of the revolution. Instead, Bolsheviks lead each other in a pretty dance which suggests that these were not the chieftains in the Kremlin who ordered to liquidate the Romanovs. Who was it, then? Who is the secret stage director of the horrible performances where the children are bayoneted and where people still being alive are thrown down into the mines in the end?

---

[1] http//www.nik2.ru/documents.htm?id=269

However, after the elimination of the Romanovs, the same foot dragging started in Alapayevsk, as it did in Perm after Michael's disappearance. They say that some "unknown" people caught them, took away the prisoners and disappeared. During the "kidnapping" in Alapayevsk, there was a sort of a fight in front of the empty school building. Now it is said that it was staged, arranged by the chekists. Allegedly, they imitated the fight and the kidnapping of the Romanovs by the unknown people. To make this mock fight look real, they took another prisoner, killed him and threw his corpse into the school building, thus having deceived the locals and the local Soviet, as well, and the vigilant head of the Ural Soviet, Beloborodov. If earlier he had asked about what happened in Perm, now he sent a telegram telling about the happening in his "bishopric." Later, this telegram will be found by the White Guard officers, "The Executive Committee in Alapayevsk has informed about an attack of an unknown gang on the premises, where former grand princes Igor Konstantinovich, Konstantin Konstantinovich, Ivan Konstantinovich, Sergei Mikhailovich, and Paley were staying under arrest. It happened on July 18. There are victims on both sides, the search is underway..."[1]

There is one explanation only: Beloborodov doesn't know who attacked the prisoners in Alapayevsk and what he writes to Moscow is a simple truth: he doesn't know who liquidated Michael. Who is in charge of all these murders and kidnappings if the local Red chieftains are absolutely unaware of this? Here is the answer: there is a certain force which, according to a plan, is trying to liquidate *all* or *nearly all the Romanovs* without giving any notice to the local Soviet power. This force is working secretly and methodically. It doesn't need to be in touch with the local power. Hence the similarity between the situation with Michael in Perm and his relatives in Alapayevsk. The situation with the former Monarch is quite different. Nicholas Romanov can be liquidated "officially" — there is a certain reason and justification: the Bloody Nicholas. They had even been preparing a sort of court of justice, but didn't manage to — he was simply shot dead. The workers and peasants will understand this.

---

[1] http//www.nik2.ru/documents.htm?id=269

The situation with all the other Romanovs, including the children, is different. There is nothing they could be judged for, let alone be executed! It's essential to make them die. Here one must act differently.

It's very important for us to understand why the Romanovs were murdered and who was behind this. Not behind the death of every member particularly, but behind the process of the ruling dynasty liquidation. And this process, if we trust the up-to-date information sources, is very strange and mysterious. By spending not too much time, one can find the information about Michael's killers. All of them were the chiefs of the Perm Region Cheka Division. They made the decision to murder the grand prince by themselves at the suggestion of their leader Myasnikov. But what for? The answers of the modern historians are not very original: for no special reason; to become history; they didn't like the Romanovs very much.

These were cruel times. For such amateur actions, one could get shot by Moscow comrades. If the enthusiastic chekists are in charge of the murder of Grand Prince Michael and his secretary Johnson, as the historians say, the number of other questions remains. Who made the decision to murder the prisoners in Alapayevsk? The pedant Beloborodov who bombarded Perm with the interrogatory telegrams? Is it also for no special reason? There are no answers, everything is still unclear. Only the situation with the shooting of Nicholas Romanov's family is more or less clear: there are documents which prove the process of coordinating the execution with Moscow. The other murders weren't documented at all. The favourite excuse of the historians is *"it just turned out that way!"*

Versions, speculations, guesses... Over all the past years, the history of the liquidation of the Romanovs has turned into a huge snowball due to the abundance of the hypotheses stuck to it. We should consider all the events in order to avoid any mistakes in evaluating this unfolding drama. Myasnikov decided to kill Michael Romanov — this can be explained by his thirst for blood. How can we explain that almost all the Romanovs who were murdered in July 1918 had been arrested in **March 1918**, when there was no reason at all to arrest them? When there was no revolt of the Czechoslovak Legion, which only started late in May? When there was no offensive of the White Guard troops, and none of the Romanovs tried to escape being in exile?

But the regime was getting tougher for all of them at the same time. Michael was arrested in Perm on **March 24, 1918,** and his elder brother Nicholas wrote in his diary that day, "March 30. Friday. Every day there is a new surprise! Today Kobylinsky brought a paper from TsIK[1] in Moscow, which was received yesterday, regarding bringing all of our family members, who are staying in another house, to us. We are considered to be arrested again like in Tsarskoye Selo..."[2]

Nicholas calls it a surprise in his diary. But these are systematic arrangements to prepare the future murders. The first part of these preparations was performed by Alexander Kerensky. Meanwhile, Vladimir Ilyich seriously delayed his part of the job. Bolsheviks started the second round of the preparations for the murder of the Romanovs not in October 1917, but in **March 1918.** Had Lenin found the murder of the crown-bearing family members necessary, he would have acted in quite a different way. The revolution took place in October, and the Romanovs should have been arrested then! Right after the seizure of the power. No pretext is needed — the family name itself is both a pretext and a reason. OK, it was impossible right after the overthrow — one should wait for the All-Russian Constituent Assembly to start, pretending to be its zealous supporter. But in January, all this bourgeois democracy was dispersed by sailor Zheleznyak with the help of gun-butts. Now it's high time to finish off the crown-bearing bloodsuckers. One could arrange a show trial: the Russian people against the Romanovs. But exactly at this time, Michael receives a permit to live freely and happily in the new Red Russia from the "kind" Chief of the Sovnarkom Administration Bonch-Bruyevich. So he does, until in March he and many of his relatives get arrested and exiled *for no apparent reason all at the same time.* They are sent closer to the enthusiastic executioners, who murder them "for no special reason" but *strictly following the line of inheriting the throne.* Did it happen by chance?

---

[1] Translator's note: TsIK stands for the Central Executive Committee.

[2] http://alexorgco.narod.ru/rmnv/NicDn.html

This story is complicated and vague, let's move step by step. Let's begin with the first question: *why was it necessary to arrest and exile Grand Prince Michael Romanov*? He lives in Gatchina close to the capital — best chekists could easily keep an eye on him. The German troops were approaching Petrograd — the historians would point out to us — and Michael could fall into the enemy's hands. The answer sounds convincing to those who haven't looked into the subject. What of it if the Germans are approaching Petrograd? After all, it's Bolsheviks who are "German spies," nobody else. Just a little detail: they can agree on this matter with their masters in Berlin, can't they? Indeed, none of the Russian politicians acknowledged the Peace Treaty of Brest-Litovsk except Bolsheviks. Neither the left ones nor the right ones. No party acknowledged it. Well, Lenin could hardly defend himself even against his own companions-in-arms. The historians try to convince us that the Peace Treaty of Brest-Litovsk is a gift from Ilyich to his partners in Berlin. He pays his debts with the Russian lands and resources. Taking all this into consideration, would Michael flee to the Germans? What would he do there? How would he do harm to the young Soviet power? Would he sign refutation of the Peace Treaty with the Kaiser? Would Michael and Wilhelm shake hands and start to fight again? What is more: would Germany provide money and weapons to Romanov for him to urgently establish an anti-Bolshevik army, crush Lenin and continue to fight against the Germans in alliance with the Entente?

It is clear that this scenario is absolutely impossible. But the events in our country at that time were no laughing matter. There should be a reasonable explanation. We are indeed offered an absurd one. Appealing to our emotions and omitting the facts, they say Michael was arrested and exiled because the time was very somber, the Civil War was on. This argument can be used to convince those who have never studied history. It was with a good reason that we have so many times paid attention to the date marking the beginning of the Romanovs' troubles: **March 1918.**

The thing is that the Civil War hadn't started yet! The whole country was in chaos, that's true, but there were no full-scale military confrontation since Bolsheviks hardy had any opponents. A real war, financed by British and French money, will start at the end of May after the revolt of the Czechoslovak Legion. Michael Romanov arrived in Perm, his last refuge, on **March 17**. Subtract the days when he was en route and you will see that he was arrested early in March. It was in March again when the Romanovs were on their way to Alapayevsk and the regime for Nicholas II's family got tougher despite the fact that the political situation in the country didn't account for that. Where did these dark clouds above the house of the Romanovs come from?

Let's match the dates. Let's remember that the Peace Treaty was signed on March 3, 1918, but it was clear that the treaty would be signed since the end of February, when Lenin and the "allies" started a new round of the negotiations. When the British forced the Kremlin to give a go-ahead to the landing of their troops in Murmansk on the sweet pretext "of having a battleship." The negotiations ended quite successfully — the parties reached a consensus. And just two weeks after the arrests, the stiffening of the regime and the exiles of the Romanovs started. Why? *Simply because the life of the Romanovs was a bargaining chip in Lenin's haggle with the "allies."*

I would like to repeat again: the political situation in the country didn't give any reason for the arrests and for the tightening of the regime for the Romanovs! We can easily assure ourselves of this fact by reading Lenin's works. Let's have a closer look at his writings dating from March 1918. That was the time when Lenin made some very interesting comments. On **March 7, 1918,** Lenin makes a "Report on War and Peace" at the 7th Congress of the RKP(b),[1] "The Civil War has become a fact… The vast majority of the population sided with us in this war, which ensured our victory."[2]

On **March 14, 1918,** Lenin makes a report on the ratification of the Peace Treaty with the Germans and says the following, "The way our revolution followed from the end of February 1917 to February 11 this year, when the German offensive started, was all in all the way of easy and quick successes."[3]

---

[1] Translator's note — The Russian Communist Party (of Bolsheviks).

[2] Lenin V. Works. V. 27. P. 66.

[3] Ib. P. 147.

The essence of Lenin's words is that the Civil War is practically over, Bolsheviks have won, but there are some difficulties, comrades. The difficulties with the Germans! Being the "German spies," Bolsheviks are in a difficult situation: their "own" German military commanders, who had been financing the revolution, instead of giving new crispy banknotes now make troubles only. The "German spies" — Bolsheviks — got problems as soon as the German offensive started! Had there been no offensive, there would not have been any problems for the Soviet power! Isn't it funny? If one considers Bolsheviks to be German spies, then the chiefs of the German intelligence services were completely slow-witted. They tried to negotiate with their own hirelings instead of *giving them an order!*

In order to protect themselves from the German offensive Lenin and the government hastily move to Moscow, where the 4th Extraordinary Congress of Soviets is taking place. All of it happens at the very beginning of **March 1918**. There was a certain danger for the government: German troops battered the Red Army soldiers near Pskov on February 23, thus setting occasion for a future national holiday — the Red Army Day. It was more comfortable and cosy for Lenin to manoeuvre between the "allies" and the Germans from Moscow. And since the Red government has moved to the original capital, why not move Michael there, as well? Just to have him at hand. He is loyal and obedient as a lamb. But no, Bolsheviks send him to Perm, where an anti-Bolshevik revolt will take place in two months. What for? Is there any logic here? If you find a person dangerous to you, it's logical to keep this person in sight. No, in the Romanovs' case everything is very logical, but the logic is alternative. It is the logic of destruction. Michael, as well as Nicholas II's family, is sent to the region which is expected to become unstable in the nearest future. This instability will ingurgitate all the pretenders to the throne.

May there still be many difficulties ahead, and that is why the Soviet power is so tough with the Romanovs? Let's give a word to the leader of the world proletariat. Let's turn over the pages of Lenin's work "The Immediate Tasks of the Soviet Government." It was published on April 28, but was written in **March to April 1918.** Lenin solved the most complicated issue with the Peace Treaty of

Brest-Litovsk and convinced his comrades, who didn't clearly understand his manoeuvres. He saved the revolution from the revolutionaries' own stupidity. Now he can draft a plan for further actions. "The Immediate Tasks of the Soviet Government" is this very plan. Here's what we read in it, "The task to crush down the opposition of the exploiters has been generally performed in the period from November 7 (October 25), 1917, to (approximately) February 1918..."[1]

Now we understand the meaning of the quote "this way was all in all the way of easy and quick successes" from Lenin's report at the 4th Congress of Russian Communist Party. He was talking about "the crushing down of the exploiters." One can only feel happy for Vladimir Ilyich — his revolution is almost bloodless. Bolsheviks have established their power, the opposition has been suppressed "to (approximately) February 1918." Now quite different tasks are on the agenda. Lenin in his "Immediate Tasks of the Soviet Government" goes into the subject in a very detailed way. "Run the house economically, be careful with the money, don't be idle, don't steal, maintain strict discipline in the workplace — after the overthrow of the bourgeoisie, these slogans are now the most important slogans of the moment."[2]

Are you surprised? And Vladimir Ilyich keeps enlisting the tasks for the young Soviet power: to increase working efficiency, to organize competition, to develop the Soviet power structure...

And what about the Civil War? What about the peril of plots and murders? The peril of restoration of the monarchy? How is it possible? What is Lenin talking about? Is he blind? *In one month, the political situation will flare up, and Russia will have three horrible years of the Civil War ahead!* Is "the organization of competition" the most important task of the Soviet power in a fratricidal war?

If you think about this, the following picture arises in your mind: the divisions of the First Cavalry Army are on the march. At the front, on a black horse is Commandant of the Army Budyonny, and next to him is Voroshilov on a white horse. A red banner flies behind. It's written on the banner, "Run the house economically, be careful with the money, don't be idle, don't steal"...

---

[1] Lenin V. Works.v.27. P. 214.

[2] Ib. P. 232.

Of course, Vladimir Ilyich was not a naive "Kremlin dreamer." But he was not a bloodthirsty cutthroat, either. He is a cold calculating politician. This ingenious tactician finds the right moment for each action. The Soviet power amnesties those arrested and doomed for political cases, exactly at the moment which Lenin finds appropriate. On April 28, 1918, Lenin's work "The Immediate Tasks of the Soviet Government" is published, and on May 1, the Soviet government pardons those who have been fighting against it. Purishkevich, one of the murderers of Rasputin, has also been released under this amnesty.[1] Ilyich is infinitely flexible. The circumstances have changed, and his position has instantly changed, as well. The intrigue of the Russian Civil War, generously financed by the "allies," has started developing: Ilyich and Trotsky react to it rapidly. The Sovnarkom declares the martial law in Moscow on May 29, 1918.

Lenin's strength as a politician was his way of acting: always in accordance with the given circumstances. If we have won the victory, we are busy restoring the economy, we learn how to rule the state. If there is a war again, we start fighting. Lenin never indulged into wishful thinking, which was very typical of Kerensky. If the army is not ready to fight, the head of the Provisional Government starts an offensive which fails. Ilyich in the same situation makes "bad peace" with the opponent. Is Kerensky less smart than his fellow landsman? The fact is that Kerensky's actions consciously aim at worsening the situation in the country — this is his task. Lenin plays a political chess game to win the game. Hence the different approaches.

---

[1] A rather funny story here: Purishkevich, a zealous monarchist, an anti-Semite and also one of the founders of the "Black Hundreds" was hiding from the Bolsheviks under the surname Yevreinov (!) (which sounds in Russian like "Jewish"), but was arrested. Vladimir Purishkevich was interrogated by Dzerzhinsky himself, and the sentence of the Soviet power for the first attempt of a plot to overthrow it was ludicrous — only four years of community service. Purishkevich didn't spent even a short time in prison — the fair proletarian court released him in four months. He was released under the aforementioned amnesty. The formulation of the reason for his release was truly astounding, "Released due to the illness of his son." Could a zealous monarchist be executed when his son was ill at home? No, he couldn't if he was involved in the murder of Rasputin. Rasputin, who had been shot by the British spy... More information: N. Starikov. 1917. Key to the "Russian" Revolution. M.: Yauza, 2008.

That's why Lenin realized the peril of the "counterrevolutionary plots" when it appeared for real — at the end of May 1918. In the middle of April, Lenin considered the opposition to be already suppressed and moved on to the next stage, purely economical one. Now, when we know this, let's ask ourselves again: why did they need to move Michael Romanov to Perm **at the end of March**? Why were Grand Princes Ivan, Igor, and Konstantin, who had never been involved in politics before, arrested and brought to Alapayevsk all at the same time? Why was Grand Prince Sergei Mikhailovich also brought there? Why was Grand Princess Elizaveta Feodorovna arrested? Why were they not amnestied? May it have been because they didn't take part in any plot and the amnesty didn't apply to them?

How does one usually justify the murder of the Romanovs, committed by Bolsheviks? Not the murder of the children — this act can't be justified, but the murder of the adults? Like, the White Army was approaching, there was a threat of escape, and so on. This is not a simple lie, this is a lie squared, this is a lie cubed. Even if the Romanovs had escaped to the Whites, they would have simply gone abroad and would not have participated in the internal conflict. That was the case: none of the Romanovs had ever served in the White Army due to a very simple reason: all the Whites were fighting for the All-Russian Constituent Assembly. They were republicans, and it didn't befit the representatives of the dynasty to stand under the White Army banner, and it doesn't befit the democrats to take the Romanovs under their banner, either. In order to once again understand all the falsehood of the motivation behind the murder of the Romanovs, let's read the resolution of the Sovnarkom regarding the martial law in Moscow again, "Due to the discovered contacts of the counter-revolutionary plotters in Moscow, whose kernel are Right SRs..."[1]

The linchpin of the plot, its brain are Right SRs. This gives a 100% guarantee that the Romanovs are not taking part in this plot. Because the husband to Grand Princess Elizaveta Feodorovna, the governor general of Moscow, was torn into pieces by a bomb thrown by terrorist Kalyaev, and it was Boris Savenkov who had staged this assassination. He was the head of Right SRs in spring/summer 1918. All the acts of terror against the leaders of the Soviet power, the era of which will start with Volodarsky's murder only *three months later (!)*, were staged by Savenkov. But these terrorist attacks are a part of the future! If we talk about the "ingenious" insight of the young chekists regarding the future terror and consider the arrest of the Romanovs as a sort of a preventive measure, the story doesn't hold water. The grand princess would never be involved in an anti-Soviet intrigue with her husband's killer! None of the Romanovs would ever share a table with him!

---

[1] Bothmer K. With Baron Mirbach in Moscow. M., 2004 (http//lib.ru/HISTORY/FELSHTINSKY/Bothmer.txt_Piece40.07)

Then the question one would want to ask is still the same: **why were all the Romanovs arrested in March, while the situation didn't give any reason for that?** They were not dangerous, they didn't participate in any plots, the situation in the country in April/May was calm. Lenin didn't see any peril and didn't mention it in his works. What he was writing about were mostly administrative issues: nationalization of banks and industry! All this means that the causes of the behind-the-scenes manoeuvres around the Romanovs are of different nature. Here we have come to the most interesting part. Lenin estimates the situation without any concern, because he considers his obligations to the concerned parties fulfilled. The Germans have obtained peace and Ukraine with the Baltic states, Lenin doesn't owe to the "allies," either: till the last day he has been laying out his absurd demands of the Germans not to move the troops to the Western Front. And he has also been dragging out signing the "sleazy" peace treaty till the very last moment, when the front collapsed.

That's why Ilyich is so optimistic. He perfectly understands that the Civil War in Russia will blaze up only if some petrol is added to the ember. He has agreements with all the parties and has fulfilled his obligations, as well. It means no petrol will be used, and hence no internal war in the country will take place. This optimism is reflected in the spring works of Lenin and Trotsky in the form of some strange economic slogans. But Lenin has underestimated the "allied" emissaries. He believes his obligations to have been fulfilled.

But from the point of view of the "allies," the power will lose its legitimacy only after the death of all the pretenders to the Russian throne. As long as the lawful heirs, whose rights for the throne are unimpeachable, are alive, the plans of Russia's geopolitical competitors regarding its destruction are at stake.

At the same time, the "allies" plan to remove Bolsheviks from power because they have proved to be real pragmatists and turned out to be much smarter than it was expected. Everything looks nice and logical: at first, Bolsheviks liquidate the potential crown-bearers, then Left and Right SRs will liquidate themselves. Easy and efficient.

We have to answer the question: who needed the elimination of the Romanovs? If we find an answer to it, we shall understand the rest, as well. We have three short answers: the Bolsheviks, the Germans, the "allies." When investigating the murder of the Romanovs and explaining the causes of this bloody villainy, historians usually focus on two first versions. This is quite understandable. If we regard the murder as not being related to the causes of World War 1 and the Revolution, if we don't take into consideration all the "strange" things and "surprising coincidences," which are analyzed in this book, we shall never understand how Michael Alexandrovich and Alexei Nikolayevich could disturb their "allies" from the Entente. The fact is that to understand all the causes of the tragedy of the Russian Empire, we have to start our research not from 1914 and even not from 1905, but from the 1850s!

Studying the particular events apart from the general logic will make it difficult to see the invisible threads tying them into one seamless whole.

Unlike the modern historians, we shall contemplate all the versions of the Romanovs' murder. We shall start with the most popular one: Bolsheviks were extremely interested in the death of the crown-bearing family. Analyzing the murders, we have to answer several questions:

- What benefits does Lenin get in case of the Romanovs' death?
- What are the disadvantages for him in this case?
- Why were the Romanovs liquidated in that particular way?
- Why were the Romanovs murdered exactly during this time?

All the researchers of the Romanovs' murder like to quote the extract from Trotsky's memoirs. It was written by Trotsky 17 years after the events he is writing about:

"In a conversation with Sverdlov, I asked him incidentally:

— By the way, where is the Tsar?

— He's been shot dead, of course, — he answered.

— And where is the family?

— His family is with him.

— All of them? — I asked him, apparently somewhat surprised.

— All of them! — Sverdlov answered. — What's the problem? — He was waiting for my reaction. I didn't say anything.

— Who made the decision? — I asked.

— We all made it. Ilyich believed that we shouldn't give them a living banner, particularly in the current difficult circumstances!"

Even at first sight, Bolsheviks appeared to get more minuses than pluses in case of the Romanovs' death. The only possible advantage is mentioned by Trotsky: not to give a living banner to the enemy. A murder of a monarch is not a joke. It is something very serious. This is a core part, the key moment of any revolution. After that there is no way back. A hundred years have passed, and Lenin and the regime created by him are still reproached for the murder of the Tsar's innocent children. This murder overshadows the achievements of the Soviet power, its successes and breakthroughs. Because all of this rests on the unstable foundation made of blood of Nicholas' four daughters and a son. Their murder is still a dreadful argument of the anticommunists of all suits. Why would Bolsheviks give their enemies such a trump card? It would have been better to let the Romanovs go or let them stay in the country, as Grand Prince Michael had asked for, and be proud of that afterwards. To demonstrate the Romanovs to the foreign ambassadors as a symbol of generosity and tolerance of the new power.

The blood of the innocent would cast a shadow over any benevolent intentions. The former monarch can be condemned and executed, but the others — let them go to Jericho! This will not be a benefit for the White movement, and the secret murder of the children and the murder of the third person, the 17-year-old Prince

Paley, will inflict a huge damage on the political heft of Bolsheviks. If it is possible to build a better tomorrow without blemishing it with blood, this chance should be used. It's extremely important in the Civil War to have a propaganda trump card. During an ordinary war, a soldier fights for his motherland, and the enemy protects his home. They never come to an agreement: they have different motherlands, and the benefits of one of the motherlands will increase at the expense of the other that is on the other side of the trench. In a civil war, the opponents share a common motherland, and the winner will be the one who propagates for "his" Russia more successfully. Each soldier has a chance to walk from one side of the barricades to the other. From the White Russia into the Red one, and vice versa. A strong propaganda is a trump card of a tremendous force. Bolsheviks won this war exactly thanks to their outstanding propaganda. They perfectly understood its importance and did their best to avoid exposure to the enemy!

Let's suppose that Lenin pathologically longs for the death of all the members of the Romanovs' family tree, including all the offshoots and tendrils, even the youngest ones. Then, this operation should be prepared scrupulously in all details. The Romanovs should be liquidated behind the scenes, and nobody will be able to tie up the loose ends. Then Lenin has to pretend to be a fool and order the chekists to investigate the case, hunting each other down. Now the behaviour of Bolsheviks is getting a bit more understandable, except for one important issue. In case of the murder of the grown-ups and children without legitimate criminal investigations and court decisions, *the most important thing is to hide the traces of the crime.* If they started to prepare the murder in March, everything had to be perfectly ready by June. So it should have been, but in fact, it was the other way around. The corpses of Nicholas Romanov and his children were thoroughly destroyed, and they weren't found until modern times. But the fact of the murder was *officially* registered and investigated by the legal investigator Sokolov. As a result, having hidden the bodies, they didn't manage to conceal the fact of the murder itself. The historians would say: the Whites were approaching, the murderers were in a hurry to cover up the crime.

This is another lie. The White troops were marching against Bolsheviks, but they did it rather slowly as if giving the reason and time to execute Nicholas II's family. The striking force was the Czechoslovak Legion, which was moving with no haste. Were the brave Czechs really eager to reach the house of the engineer Ipatiev as soon as possible? Tyumen is taken, as well as the other big towns in the region, but *Yekaterinburg, where the Romanovs family is, hasn't been conquered yet.* Nobody is coming to rescue Nicholas's family! The Czechoslovak Legion passes around Yekaterinburg from the south and takes Kyshtym, Miass, Zlatoust, and Shadrinsk. **The Czechoslovaks enter Yekaterinburg 9 days after (!) the murder of the Romanovs.** As if giving the murderers an opportunity to cover up the crime. And it could have been done! But Bolsheviks left so many traces of the crime that the investigator Sokolov would manage to write a whole book on it!

The same goes for the murder of the martyrs in Alapayevsk. The traces of the crime were not covered up at all! Despite the fact that there was more than enough time to dispose of the corpses and the criminating evidence. **The town of Alapayevsk was taken by the White troops almost three (!) months after the murder, in September 1918.**

However, Bolsheviks did nothing to hide what they had done! Instead of covering up the crime and scrupulous destruction of the traces of the crime, there was just one grenade cast into the mine with the Romanovs' bodies. And again, the same investigator Sokolov, authorized by Kolchak, quickly found the bodies of the murdered Romanovs with the help of the locals. The bodies were found, the fact of the foul murder was registered. Is this the way to cover up the traces of a crime? Is this the way to prepare a liquidation?

No, this is not. Everywhere in the story of the Romanovs' murder we can see haste, mistakes, and improvisation instead of scrupulous preparatory work. Which means that Bolsheviks didn't prepare the murder of the crown-bearing family in advance. It is getting more interesting: on the one hand, there were no preparations, on the other hand, there is a fact that all of the Romanovs were arrested at once. How is it possible? As if an unknown force made Lenin give an order to arrest all these people sentenced to death. But ordering to arrest the Romanovs, Ilyich doesn't know that they are sentenced to death yet, because **in March** this *force* asks (or rather demands) just to restrict the Romanovs' freedom of movement. To arrest but not to kill. The Bolsheviks did so. And then they unprofessionally murder all of the Romanovs, making bloody executioners of themselves instead of demonstrating that they are fighters for the peace all over the world! All this takes place at the time when the "Red Terror" has not started yet. They murder the Romanovs a couple of months after the amnesty for all the political opponents of the Soviet power...

Let's summarize:

- Bolsheviks did not prepare the murder of the Romanovs.
- the Romanovs posed no threat to Bolsheviks' power. The further development of the Civil War confirmed this. None of the members of the Romanov dynasty who survived played any role in it.
- the murder of the Romanovs in such a villainous way is no help to the Soviet power; and quite opposite, it brings an awful discredit on it.
- on the contrary, the Romanovs still alive and peacefully living in the new Russia are a nice sign for the population of the country and are good for Russia's public image.

Nevertheless, there are some traces of certain preparatory works of Bolsheviks, and one of these signs is the fact that all the Romanovs were arrested at the same time. The death will look into the eyes of the Romanovs later. Was Lenin forced to agree to the murder of the Romanovs? Or was he simply informed of the accomplished fact? Another question is who was the one who made Lenin do this? During the period we are describing there were only two forces in the world capable of that. Lenin was trying to manoeuvre between them: the "allies" and the Germans.

Could the Germans have initiated the assassination of the Romanovs, pushing their "spies," Bolsheviks? The execution of the imperial family was performed exactly by the hands of the revolutionary power. The number of volunteers wishing to kill the former shapers of the Russian State's fate was quite large. But there was a certain subordination among Bolsheviks, as well. The Tsar and other Romanovs would be killed after Bolsheviks have received instructions from Moscow. Were the Germans able to force Lenin to do that?

By analyzing the conduct of the German commanders before and right after the conclusion of the Peace Treaty of Brest-Litovsk, we can suggest that the Germans were not able to do it. This was not in the interests of Germany. The Romanovs alive don't disturb the Germans at all. It's rather the other way around. The only thing that Germany wanted from Russia at that moment was *peace*, which would make it possible for them to descend upon the Entente troops at the Western Front with all the German forces. The Peace Treaty is the summit of German politicians' ambitions. Kaiser Wilhelm had offered Nicholas II to sign a peace treaty several times, but Nicholas always rejected all the contacts. Then Bolsheviks appeared, and the Germans obtained a long-awaited peace. But the politicians in Berlin very soon realized that the deal with Bolsheviks in Brest would cost them dearly. This understanding came very quickly, and the Germans started to look for other "more civilized" negotiators in Russia. Not only the authorized representative, the untidy comrade Joffe, but also the Bolshevik methods and ideas caused disgust on the Germans part. General Ludendorff, who actually commanded the military actions of the German Army, writes to General Groner on June 12, 1918, "The German General Staff will provide the Cossacks from Kiev with the required weapons and ammunition (on the pretext of protecting the German prisoners of war in the Cossack regions, the Cossacks had to be armed against Bolsheviks). In the future, the General Staff would supply the Cossacks and the peoples of the Northern Caucasus with weapons and ammunition from Tiflis, as well."[1]

This friendship between Lenin and Kaiser Wilhelm was quite fragile. This situation will not stand any abrupt movements. Both parties are very cautious. For the Germans it would have been best if the German Kaiser had agreed about the peace with the Russian Tsar. It would have "blessed" the Peace Treaty of Brest-Litovsk and saved the meticulous German officers from the necessity to communicate with Bolsheviks, who they would rather hang up on the nearest birch tree. Had such development been possible, the Germans would have been ready to give Ukraine back, because they considered it to be unfair to separate Ukraine from Russia themselves. Which other government could be a reality in Russia late in spring/early in summer 1918? The Provisional Government is totally under the control of the "allies": its slogan is "War till the final victory and commitment to the Entente until death." The factions of the Provisional Government will never agree to a separate peace. What do the Germans have left to do? To dig deeper into the history of the Russian power and extract the monarchical regime in any form with any legitimate heir on the throne. That's why the Germans need Nicholas Romanov, Alexei the Crown Prince of the Russian Empire, and Michael Romanov **alive.** One of them can be brought back to power and be made to sign a new peace treaty.

---

[1] http//www.hrono.info./dokum/191_dok/19180612lud.html

The Germans should wish for Nicholas Romanov to stay alive due to one more reason — simply out of the monarchical solidarity. Kaiser Wilhelm can't impose sanctions for the murder of his relative — his "cousin Nicky" — and his wife, who is also related to him. The Kaiser can't wish for their children to die — they are not dangerous for him. On the contrary, to relieve the suffering of the crown-bearing family is both the duty of the German monarch and a step to the future negotiations with the new or old Russian tsar. The highest ranks of the German aristocratic elite can't wish the Tsar's family to perish, either. The Tsarina's brother, Grand Duke of Hesse, is one of the senior German commanders; her sister's husband, Prince Heinrich, commands the German Navy. The big politics are mixed up with personal feelings. There is evidence that Kaiser Wilhelm II, who once was in love with Grand Princess Elizaveta Feodorovna, the sister of the last Empress, twice sent to her, already a widow and a nun, Baron von Mirbach and offered her to go to Germany. She refused and stayed under arrest in Alapayevsk, ending up at the bottom of a mine somewhere in the Ural.

The Romanovs didn't want to accept a compromise. When Nicolas learned about the Peace Treaty of Brest-Litovsk, he called it "a treason against Russia and the allies" and considered this treaty to be "the most disreputable act for the honour of the country." He was firmly standing his ground. While there was only a couple of months left before the death of his children, he chopped firewood and had no idea about the current distribution of political forces. He remained true to his ideals. That's why he wrote to his sister Xenia, who was "suffering" under arrest in the Crimea, on January 7 (18), 1918, from Tobolsk, "It's extremely difficult to live without news — newspapers aren't sold every day, and you only learn about the new horrors and outrage in our unfortunate Russia. It's sickening to think about the contempt for Russia our allies might feel."[1]

But the Germans were obliged to try and get Nicholas involved in the "mediation process." The monarchical Germany had raised the question concerning participation of the Tsar's family in negotiations with Bolsheviks several times. The chekists didn't arrest the Romanovs until March for the simple reason that the situation with the Germans had not been settled yet by the Peace Treaty signed in Brest.

Lenin certainly considered the crown-bearers to be a sort of pest insects, but to sully his own reputation and the reputation of the new power by the murder on the eve of negotiations with Germany was exceptionally unreasonable. The Germans, monarchists as they were, might refuse to sit down at the negotiating table with the killers of blue-blooded persons. Or they might swat the young Soviet state like a blood-drunk mosquito. Right after the Treaty was signed, the situation started to change drastically. The ink had hardly dried out on the papers, when Bolsheviks started to arrest the Romanovs. Germany couldn't violate the Treaty, which was *officially* signed with Bolsheviks, due to the fact that Bolsheviks might break an *unofficial* agreement concerning alleviation of the sufferings of the Romanov dynasty members. Furthermore, Bolsheviks had a nice excuse as a first step: a total mess and amateur actions on the local administrative level in the country. When Ambassador Von Mirbach expressed Berlin's deep concern over the fate of the Imperial family, Yakov Sverdlov answered him in the following way, "When the horse is kicking and refusing to go back to the stables, force is of no use. Give it a stroke, and it might go voluntary. What else can we do? We don't have a proper administrative mechanism yet, and we have to allow the local Soviets to make decisions on different issues. Let Yekaterinburg calm down."[1]

---

[1] http/www.orthodoxmoscow.ru/A_12_08/uzniki_12_08.html

I can almost hear the angry voices of the historians, asking why the Germans didn't ask Bolsheviks to turn the Romanovs over earlier. For example, when the Peace Treaty was being signed. Of course, certain diplomatic measures were undertaken to help the Tsar's family. Karl von Bothmer, the counsellor of the German Embassy in Moscow, sounds very laconic and convincing in his diaries, "We are often asked here why Germany, when signing the Peace Treaty in Brest, didn't demand the extradition of the Imperial family to a neutral country like Denmark with the guarantee that the respective government of that country would allow the members of the Tsar's family to return to Russia in order to support the counterrevolution..." Russia would have accepted such demand from our side, as well as all the other demands, without any resistance. Apparently, our government was motivated by the following considerations: on the one hand, our left-wing parties would have considered this step to be an intervention in Russia's internal affairs and support of reaction. On the other hand, we were not sure that even if Bolsheviks agreed to the extradition this would not prevent the assassination of the Tsar, which would naturally happen "much to the regret and against the will of the Soviet government."[2]

Bolsheviks didn't undertake any repressive measures against the Romanovs before March in order not to alarm Germany, and Germany did not demand the extradition of Nicholas II in order not to provoke his murder. A vicious cycle.

However, persistent rumours about the death of the Tsar's family, which started to circulate at the end of June, caused a strong anxiety of the German government. On June 24, 1918, the empowered and authorized representative of the Soviet Russia in Germany comrade Joffe, who we already know well enough, wrote to Lenin about the potential consequences of the execution of Nicholas II and its influence on the relationship between Berlin and Moscow, "It's necessary that in case something happens, we could publish a quite convincing material, proving the fact that we have not been involved. This is of paramount importance."[1]

---

[1] http// tsarevich.St. Pb.ru/pub/0073.php

[2] http//www.chibl.ru/lib/study/pravo/Fel'shtinskij_jurij_ _Istorija_ revoljucii_v_ trudakh _revoljucionerov_396.html

Comrade Joffe, who is sitting in Berlin, clearly understands that the murder of Nicholas Romanov is absolutely unnecessary and wrongful. He is not even writing that one cannot execute the children and the spouse of the Monarch — this is an obvious fact which doesn't even need to be mentioned. Joffe's appeal was heard in Moscow — that's why on June 25, the central Bolshevik Izvestiya Newspaper publishes in its issue № 129 the information from the head of the executive committee of Yekaterinburg, who strongly refutes the rumours about the murder of Nicholas Romanov. A day before in issue №128, Izvestiya had already brought this subject up, "The rumours about the assassination of Nicholas Romanov are a provocation."[2] But if the Germans are so worried, the refutation might as well be repeated.

However, the Romanovs were murdered in Yekaterinburg. Four days after the villainy, on July 20, 1918, comrade Joffe wrote a letter to Narkom of Foreign Affairs Chicherin about the reaction to the execution of the Russian Tsar in Germany, "Today all the newspapers have informed that Nicholas Romanov was shot dead on July 16 in accordance with the decision of the Soviet government. The newspapers read that this fact is not denied by Moscow anymore, and it is said to be confirmed in the Moscow circles. All the newspapers express their resentment regarding the alleged murder."[3]

The last line in the message of the official representative of Red Russia in Germany is astonishing and very indicative, "*What*

---

[1] http//www.m-i-e.ru/library/dokumenty

[2] http//www.krotov.info/history/20/krasnov/regel_1918.html

[3] The museum of Yekaterinburg history; http//www.m-i-e.ru/library/dokumenty/

information do you have about the fate of Nicholas Romanov?" The murder of the Tsar is so spontaneous and unexpected that the Soviet diplomats have not been notified about it, and no official standpoint has been expressed. The Soviet ambassador doesn't know how to answer questions from the Germans, he is confused and is asking for more information. Such an important event as the murder of the former monarch should have been prepared more thoroughly, shouldn't it? Especially if we keep in mind that Joffe was an ambassador to *the only* country, which was really able to eliminate the Soviet power at that time. Berlin's reaction to the villainy to a large extent depends on Joffe's explanations. But he has not been informed about anything.

On the next day, July 21, 1918, the Soviet ambassador sends a new telegram to Moscow, "Von Busch has informed me that the former Tsar was allegedly killed in Yekaterinburg upon the decision of the local Soviet of the workers and peasants, and that Sverdlov had allegedly justified this murder. He read an extract from the Pravda for me, where the details of this killing were described, and the expression "brigandish imperialism" was used in regard to Germany. The latter has caused numerous protests. He has pointed out that the murder of the Tsar will damage our reputation all over the world, and officially asked to save the lives of the former Tsarina and her children. I could not give him a direct answer because I didn't know the state of affairs, but I told him that I would take notice of that."[1]

Our diplomat's awareness of the state of affairs is equal to zero. It's not Joffe who is informing the German side, but it's the German leaders who bring the news to the Soviet ambassador by reading to him some extracts of the Bolshevik newspapers. He just looks blank and answers, "I'll take notice of that."

Some unscrupulous historians have a professional ploy. It's simple and plain, but by using it we can interpret the facts as we please. The essence of this ploy is that the important, interrelated events are described in absolutely different places throughout the book. An ordinary reader doesn't pay much attention to the dates. He tends to forget them very quickly, and in order to make him discover the coincidence of the events, those should be placed next to each other, and the fact of their coincidence should be highlighted. If the facts are placed apart from each other, the reader will find it difficult to figure out the continuity of the events. This is exactly what historians do. Due to this, the fact of the Romanovs' murder is never placed next to the fact of the assassination of Baron von Mirbach. Nevertheless, these events took place almost at the same time, and they are tightly interconnected.

---

[1] The museum of Yekaterinburg history; http//www.m-i-e.ru/library/dokumenty/

See it for yourselves. Let's go back to the events we described in detail in the previous chapter. The German Ambassador Baron von Mirbach is not only the head of the German Embassy. He is the German representative of the highest rank in the Bolshevik Russia. All the financial links, connecting the Germans and the revolutionaries, are in his hands. Von Mirbach is the key person in the relations between Russia and Germany. What's more, he is the head of the "unofficial" headquarters in charge of rescuing the Romanovs. Many family ties connect the imperial houses of Russia and Germany. And despite the war, the House of Hohenzollern doesn't disregard its relatives.

It was Baron von Mirbach who was assassinated on July 6 by Left SRs Blumkin and Andreyev.

Do you understand? It's an imposing double blow: the main negotiator of the Romanovs' case is out of the game, and at the same time this is a reason for a quarrel between Lenin and the Kaiser. The Germans are in a state of shock. Baron Karl von Bothmer left a very interesting note in his diary. On July 10, he wrote, "The assassination of the ambassador was in the interests of the SRs and the Entente..."[1]

Well, the action committed by Yasha Blumkin was not that simple. There is a good reason that the British spies helped him in his skyrocketing career. He had no idea about the number of problems, set one into another like in a Russian *Matryoshka*, which the death of Baron von Mirbach would create for Germany and... for Lenin.

---

[1] Bothmer K. With Baron Mirbach in Moscow. M., 2004. (http//lib.misto.kiev.ua/HISTORY/FELSHTINSKY/Bothmer.txt)

Try to imagine that you are Vladimir Ilyich Ulyanov. A moment ago Left SRs and the Entente, which is behind them, made another attempt to put Soviet Russia and Germany against each other and thus cancel your highest achievement — the Peace Treaty of Brest-Litovsk. It is hanging by a thread, and if the Germans show that they are insulted and start the offensive, the future of the Soviet power will become vague and unclear. Besides, you know that the Germans hate you, and they have already little by little started to support General Krasnov and the anti-Bolshevik governments in Ukraine and Georgia. Now they have a good reason to break the Peace Treaty and try to establish a new government, maybe even a monarchical one they could sign a new peace treaty with. But this time without you, Vladimir Ilyich, and without your Soviet power! The great Socialist Experiment may come to an end without even having started! What will your next move be?

It's logical to try to clear the atmosphere, make a reparation for the wrong which has been done, and try to withhold the Germans from making resolute steps. The Bolshevik leaders do exactly these things the next day after the tragic incident. In the German Embassy they are met by Karl von Bothmer, who we already know well enough, "The first representative of the Soviet government was Radek, who, as I have heard, was not able to hide his disagreeable character even in this situation. Then Chicherin and Karakhan appeared. Having entered the embassy, Chicherin told me that he had accepted this news with great sadness, but he was sure that this blow was aimed first and foremost at the government but not at us."[1]

In return, the German ambassador remarks, "Your regret will not help now. The government should have taken more serious measures against the public incitements to protect the envoy." This is the answer of the counsellor of the German Embassy. The reaction of Berlin is not clear yet. Bolsheviks are at the edge of the abyss, and the ground is shaking under their feet. The situation is so serious that according to the evidence of von Bothmer "Sverdlov, Lenin and the notorious Head of the Cheka Dzerzhinsky arrived very soon." The top leaders of the Bolshevik government arrived to calm down the Germans, to figure out the situation and to urgently tighten the security of the German mission. To make the German diplomats feel safe, the German war prisoners (!), awaiting to be sent back to Germany, got weapons. They were accommodated in the mansion next to the embassy.

---

[1] Bothmer K. With Baron Mirbach in Moscow. M., 2004. (http//lib.misto.kiev.ua/HISTORY/FELSHTINSKY/Bothmer.txt)

The balance is shaky. Von Bothmer's impression of the Bolshevik leaders' attitude is as follows, "The government circles are worried and afraid of the serious conclusions which the German Empire might draw from this incident, and they are also afraid that in addition to that, this political murder would launch the internal struggle. Narkom of Justice Glushko is *personally* in charge of the investigation."[1] You see how Yasha Blumkin framed Lenin! Ilyich personally expressed his condolences, his minister of justice put aside all the other files and was conducting the interrogations, and the Head of the Cheka Dzerzhinsky was personally in charge of enhancing the security of the German diplomatic mission. Didn't they have anything else to take care of? Of course, they did, but Lenin put them all on their toes, having explained to them what the situation was fraught with!

In two days, no detente had set in. On the contrary, the German ambassador' funeral was scheduled for July 8, but the Germans defiantly had not invited the representative of the Soviet government to it!

"Due to the fact that the things had not been sorted out, the Russian government was not invited to the funeral and was not even officially informed of the coming payment of the last respects to the valiant person, who had become a victim of the unjustified hatred,"[2] Karl von Bothmer writes in his diary. It sounds very serious. The funeral bells toll. They toll for the Bolshevik power and for the world revolution. It's difficult to say how much valerian tincture was taken in the Kremlin those days. Presumably, a lot. Everything is hanging by a single thread...

---

[1] Bothmer K. With Baron Mirbach in Moscow. M., 2004 (http//lib.misto.kiev.ua/HISTORY/FELSHTINSKY/Bothmer.txt)

[2] Ib.

Well, let's leave Bolsheviks alone to deal with their problems. We'd better try to find what the brave historians so scrupulously hide from us by putting the interrelated events into different parts of the books and monographs. We'll match the dates and have a look at the result.

The funeral of Baron von Mirbach took place on July 8, 1918. In one (!) week the family of Nicholas II was murdered in Yekaterinburg on the night of July 16/17!

One could not have found a better timing for this massacre. The ingenious tactician Lenin, not having squared the diplomatic embarrassment with the murder of the German ambassador, has insulted Germany again. He has given Germany another slap in the face. From the far-away capital of Germany the situation looks as follows: the German ambassador to Russia, who was dealing with the rescuing of the Romanovs, is murdered. The goal is to eliminate Nicholas Romanov and his family while no negotiations on this issue are being conducted due to the absence of the "negotiator."

The German plan to legalize the Peace Treaty of Brest-Litovsk turns out to be inexecutable. Now Berlin has nobody to deal with: Michael has "escaped," Nicholas has been murdered. Lenin is now the only "negotiator," the only government on the Russian part. No other governments will appear in the nearest future. Such a turn of events is just great for Lenin. Except for a little problem: the offensive of the Germans instead of negotiations: Bolsheviks have gone too far this time.

Karl von Bothmer and the German Embassy learned about the tragedy in Yekaterinburg on July 19, 1918. Three days later, they received new information. Von Bothmer puts it down into his diary, the German government is informed accordingly, as well, "The details of the Tsar's murder, which are becoming well-known, are terrible. Now, there is arguably no doubt that the Tsarina and the children of the Tsar were murdered in the most monstrous manner, that the sanction for the massacre was given by the central government and that the Yekaterinburg Soviet was authorized to work out a detailed plan of the murder."[1]

The problem is not only that Bolsheviks have insulted Germany again but that they have also not made any reparation for the murder of Ambassador Von Mirbach yet. The new German Ambassador Karl Helfferich will write in his memoirs, "The Russian government showed a great diligence in making excuses for what happened but demonstrated much less diligence in prosecuting the murderers and instigators. Even though we finally received a list with more than 100 persons who were executed for allegedly having taken part in the murder. But neither the names of the immediate murderers nor those of the main instigators were on the list."[2]

For the Kaiser and the German Cabinet everything that happened is a real plot. Shedding tears and making excuses for the murder of Ambassador Von Mirbach, Bolsheviks in no time murder "cousin Nicky" and most likely the empress, who is German, and the small children, as well. Therefore, the German ambassador was also assassinated by Bolsheviks. They are bloody maniacs and dishonourable hypocrites! They are not to be trusted! Aren't the indignities, inflicted on Germany by these revolutionaries over less than two weeks, enough? Are you, Vladimir Ilyich, sure that the Germans will not start the war anew after this flow of insults?

Let's suppose that Lenin had wanted to murder the Romanovs for a long time. Let's suppose, he was dreaming to liquidate the offspring of Alexander III in revenge for the execution of his brother Alexander Ulyanov. But to murder the Romanovs *exactly at that moment* was a total madness! One could not find a less suitable time: had the murder been performed earlier, the death of von Mirbach, which has insulted Berlin so much, would not have taken place. The right thing to do was to wait for a short time: it was only four months before the collapse of Germany, and just one and a half month before the beginning of the "Red Terror." Then the Romanovs could be done with calmly and without any complications. But no! The Kremlin gives the sanction for the murder of the Romanovs at the risk of revolution, at the risk of everything that has been saved by the timely signed Peace Treaty of Brest-Litovsk. Lenin, a politician with a rational mind, does absurd things. Neither before nor after it did he do things that odd. Who forced him to make a fool of himself?

---

[1] Bothmer K. With Baron Mirbach in Moscow. M., 2004 (http//lib.misto.kiev.ua/HISTORY/FELSHTINSKY/Bothmer.txt)

[2] http//www.chibl.ru/lib/study/pravo/Fel'shtinskij_jurij_-_Istorija_revoljucii_v_trudakh _revoljucionerov_401.html

Obviously, these were not the revolutionaries. Obviously, these were not the Germans. So it should have been a third force which pressed Bolsheviks. At that time, it could be the Entente only. The "allies." **The "allies" were particularly interested in the Romanovs' deaths.** Let's forget for a second about the broken thread of the legitimate power in Russia. If there are no pretenders to the Russian throne, if there is no monarchy — then:

- there will be no need to give to Russia the Bosphorus and the Dardanelles, which have been promised;
- no accounts of the Tsar's gold, placed in the western banks, should be given;
- the strong Russian Empire will never rise again.

The elimination of all the main heirs to the throne is the main task, which should prevent the gathering of the Russian lands together. The person, whose rights for the power are indisputable, can collect under his banners all those involved in the internal conflict. The western spies can sleep peacefully if just the first three pretenders are killed. It doesn't matter, whether any of the second or third rate heirs stay alive. Their rights to the throne are not absolute. These pretenders have their own disadvantages: someone is in the left-hand (morganatic) marriage, another one swore fealty to the Provisional Government with a bow-knot of the red ribbon on the chest. And it will turn out exactly this way: all the Russian emigration will be unable to put forward a pretender to the Russian throne after the murder of Nicholas Romanov, his son Alexei, and his brother Michael. To start with, there will be two pretenders: Grand Prince Kirill Vladimirovich and Grand Prince Nikolay

Nikolayevich. Only one of them will stay then, but his right and the right of his offspring to the Russian throne is not considered to be unconditional and raises doubts in the monarchical circles till the present day.

The goal, the focus of the "allied" interests, have been defined. During the behind-the-scenes negotiations, the smiling "allied" emissaries demand that Lenin should settle the Romanovs problem for good. They may not even be asking directly to eliminate the Romanovs but to start with, they are asking to exile the Romanovs to the end of nowhere and put them under control. And there is a reason for that, dear Vladimir Ilyich: it's too early to celebrate the end of the Civil War! The story is only starting to unfold. The times are turbulent, there will be revolts and uprisings. Why would you, dear friend, let the flying banner — the living pretender to the throne — get in the hands of the counterrevolutionaries?

It's easy for the "allies" to talk about it like this: they finance the revolts, and so they talk about them with Bolsheviks. They don't care for the Russian fighters against Bolshevism, and if the circumstances demand it, "the allies" can even stage their own offensive against... Bolsheviks. To reach their goals the British and French intelligence services will stop at nothing and will betray anyone. And the Romanovs are being moved from one place to another. Lenin, as usual, tries to manoeuvre. The demands of the parties, fighting against each other, are totally opposite, like they were during the negotiations regarding the Peace Treaty in Brest. The Germans demand to spare Nicholas' life, while the "allies" are eager to see the Romanovs dead. But the influence of the "allies" on Lenin has been very strong from the very beginning of the operation when he was sent to Russia in the sealed railway car. The British and the French honestly say that they can support... the Whites in the Civil War, which they have initiated themselves. But they also may not support the Whites if the Romanovs are killed...

Lenin has no choice. He hates the Romanovs, it doesn't make sense to fight for their lives being under such a threat. He agrees. Whereas Berlin's reaction to the death of the Russian Tsar can be very severe, Bolsheviks play a comedy with telegrams, attacks of unknown people, and escapes. Since Bolsheviks themselves hadn't planned such a massacre, the performance was mediocre, and the traces of the crime had not been adequately covered up. Only those who influenced Lenin very much and put a strong pressure on him could make him do absurd things. That's true — the same force could explain to Lenin in layman's terms that no negative consequences would follow after the planned murders. Puffing on their cigars, the representatives of this force carried on a nice conversation with Lenin. And they promised Bolsheviks that nothing terrible would happen. After having removed all the Romanovs, Lenin would be the only acceptable figure for Berlin on the Russian political chessboard. That's why in the case of the Tsar's death Germany would swallow the insult, and the Soviet power would remain.

It would really turn out this way. The Germans would learn about the massacre, but would not do anything. Just one point: all this would become known post factum. But the person who informed Ilyich on the future development of the events in such a great detail, must have been someone who he trusted a lot. Or, to be more specific, he had to trust not the person, but his source of information. Which intelligence services are considered to be ones of the best, maybe, the best ones in the world today? Which intelligence services were the best, when the American intelligence didn't exist yet, and the Russian intelligence already stopped to exist? The British ones...

Sometimes our brains refuse to believe the facts. The impossible becomes possible. Miracles and inexplicable things happen. Again this time everything will happen the way the "allied" emissaries have promised. Or rather, nothing will happen: on July 26, 1918, a message from Berlin arrived at the German Embassy in Moscow, "Berlin has brushed aside the idea to stop all the contacts with Lenin and his comrades."[1]

Having waited for nine days after the murder of the Tsar's family, Berlin decided not to proceed with the matter. Why did Kaiser

---

[1] Bothmer K. With Baron Mirbach in Moscow .M., 2004 (http//lib.misto.kiev.ua/HISTORY/FELSHTINSKY/Bothmer.txt)

Wilhelm abandon his "cousin Nicky" so easily? The politics in general are a tough thing. Again, in the eyes of Berlin, Nicholas II was fully responsible for the instigation of the World War. It's clear that the British and the French were the war-mongers, but the persistent love of truth, the astonishing trust in Paris and London plus the unnecessary war-like attitude of the Russian Monarch made it possible for the "allies" to launch their plan, aiming at the destruction of the European monarchies. Germany decided to pretend as if nothing had happened, and not to break off the relations with Bolsheviks.

How could the "allies" see right through the reaction of Berlin? It was very simple. The collapse of the German Empire was a matter of few months. Once before the February 1917 the strong body of the Russian Empire was crawling with political worms. Gnawing the body of the empire within half of the year, they brought the country to its collapse. Now Germany was suffering from the same disease. The figures for the final "chess" party were already set in the Parliament in Berlin, as well as in the docks of Hamburg harbour. The future political leaders, who would sign the predatory Treaty of Versailles, were ready to start. The intelligence services of the "allies" were going to destroy Germany, as they had destroyed Russia. The preparatory works for the catastrophe were at the final stage. German was running out of military forces. It was exactly this state of affairs that made it possible for the smiling "allied" spies to promise Lenin a soft response from Berlin. Even in the case of a mistake, nothing terrible would have happened.

"The Plot of Ambassadors" was being prepared, and Bolsheviks were to go into the political non-existence anyway. Well, if a mistake has been made... who would hold the "allies" responsible for it? Nobody would. At the end of August, Right SRs, bribed by the British, made an attempt on Lenin's life...

Lenin did exactly what the "allies" wanted him to do and got from under the bloody rain caused by the Romanovs' deaths. Vladimir Ilyich would trust the "allied" emissaries until the moment when he himself was nearly killed by the SR's bullet. Then, having realized how true the expression "beware of the Greeks bearing gifts" was, he inflicted a sledge blow on the "allied" embassies. As a result, he would be respected even more than before, and the "allies" would not attempt to overthrow his power anymore.

And what about the Romanovs? Their sufferings didn't end with the massacre of the prisoners in Alapayevsk. The numerous Romanov family entered upon the road to the Calvary simultaneously in **March 1918**. We shall be not surprised by another decree concerning the members of the ruling dynasty, which was published in the Petrograd newspaper "Krasnaya gazeta" exactly on **March 26, 1918**. According to it, Grand Princes Nikolay Mikhailovich, Georgy Mikhailovich, Dmitry Konstantinovich, and Pavel Alexandrovich should have been exiled from Petrograd. They would be arrested in July and imprisoned in the Peter and Paul Fortress in August. Then the murder of Uritsky and the assassination of Lenin would take place. A decree on the "Red Terror" would appear. On September 6, 1918, the Severnaya Kommuna Newspaper published the first list of the hostages, who were to be shot down in case any of the Soviet leaders was killed. The arrested grand princes were first on the list. The grand princes had nothing to do with any anti-Soviet plots. But it didn't matter. The fact that they were on the list made it possible to shot them down when the time came. Nonetheless, the semblance of the legitimacy was being kept. Not like throwing people down a forest mine alive but shooting them down honestly and publicly. This is a normal justice of the revolutionary time.

The Romanovs were staying in the Peter and Paul Fortress when "The Plot of Ambassadors" was disclosed by the chekists, when a group of the arrested British diplomats was exchanged for the group of Russia's empowered and authorized representative Litvinov. They were sleeping on a volcano in the midst of the "Red Terror," of the horrible and bloody Bacchanalia ravaging the country. The waves of the "Red Terror" were roughing, sinking into oblivion the officers, the nobles, and the bourgeois all over the country. People were shot down quickly and without any delay. And the lists of those shot down were put up for the sake of the intimidation.

The Romanovs were the first ones on the list of the hostages. They would not need to wait too long for their execution. Maximum a week, minimum two or three days. Why did the grand princes wait for five months to be shot down? If all the hostages had spent so much time in detention, the Bolsheviks' machine of coercion would have stopped. The prisons should be emptied really fast: there is no need to feed these counterrevolutionaries — this is not a health resort, it is a place where the proletarian justice is rendered. And those grand princes (in regard to them it's black and white) are still in prison and need to be fed.

The historians don't tell us anything about the cause of the Cheka's red tape, they just describe the sufferings of the prisoners and their end. They can't come up with any reasonable explanation which lies on the surface! The grand princes spent so much time in prison because Bolsheviks and the "allied" intelligence services were bargaining at that very time. If Lenin and Trotsky had really been interested in the death of the grand princes, they would have ordered to shoot them down in the "Red Terror" manner with the first lot of hostages. It was exactly Bolsheviks who didn't hurry to send the representatives of the Romanovs to kingdom come. They did it under the pressure from the British, managing to get even more preferences.

Apropos the prisoners, they didn't perceive their situation as a tragic one. Like the victims in Perm, Yekaterinburg, and Alapayevsk, the prisoners in the Peter and Paul Fortress were hoping for their quick release. Because, like Nicholas II, they had an absolutely wrong picture of what was going on in Russia. Like Michael Romanov, they didn't understand **who** was behind the Russian unrest, either. That means that they couldn't understand the goals of the orchestrators of the Russian troubles. That's why they were optimistic. From the point of view of the grand princes, arrested by the Cheka, the state of affairs was as follows:

- Michael Romanov had disappeared being driven away by some unknown people, i.e., had escaped,
- the prisoners in Alapayevsk had been recaptured by unknown people and had also disappeared,
- the family of Nicholas II was supposedly alive.

They were well aware of one thing only: Nicholas II had been executed by Bolsheviks. It means that only one and the guiltiest member of the dynasty was killed and other Romanovs should not be scared of anything. Everything will be sorted out and Bolsheviks will set them free with apologies. There is nothing to be shot down for! They are not guilty and they have not done anything evil to the Russian people. Do not get confused by the general ranks all (without exception) the Romanovs had. The service in the army, so to say, is a family tradition. Among those arrested only Grand Princes Dmitry Konstantinovich and Pavel Alexandrovich were military men in their pure form. The son of the latter was Vladimir Paley, who was already lying at the bottom of the mine in Alapayevsk, but his father was not aware of that. Pavel Alexandrovich himself was seriously ill. One year will pass after the murder of Rasputin and Pavel Alexandrovich, the father of Rasputin's murderer Dmitry Pavlovich, will be brought by Bolsheviks on a stretcher to the place of his execution.

Grand Prince Nikolay Mikhailovich is absolutely civil. In his youth, he was passionate about the entomology and wrote a huge work in nine volumes "Memoirs about the Lepidopterae." For this work, he was elected a member of the French Society for Entomology in 1877. He is a well-known historian, the doctor of history at Moscow University, the chairman of the Russian Geographical Society, the chairman of the Russian Historical Society, the doctor of philosophy at Berlin University, the member of the French Academy. Unlike the other members of the ruling dynasty, he had very radical political views and even advocated constitutional monarchy. That's why he wrote a letter to Nicholas with an appeal to establish "a responsible ministry" and signed a request to forgive Grand Prince Dmitry Pavlovich.

Georgy Mikhailovich Romanov was the most incarnate coin collector and an acknowledged authority in this sphere among the grand princes. He owned one of the best collections of Russian coins and was the author of a well-known edition "The Russian coins from the 18 and 19 centuries." Being very devoted to this subject, Georgy Mikhailovich personally financed the 15–volume edition of the documentary numismatic work on the history of the monetary circulation in Russia. On the top of this all, he was the director of the Russian Museum. What should he be shot down for?

The Danish Government tried to make Bolsheviks release some of the prisoners of the Peter and Paul Fortress, not all of them, of course, but the most "civil" and harmless ones. The Danish Government, which was preparing the release, was, of course, unaware of the coming massacre and the behind-the-scenes negotiations. It offered hope to Grand Prince Nikolay Mikhailovich. In his letter from prison dated October 5, 1918, he even asked about "the schedule of the Swedish ships to match his release to it." In December 1918, the Danish Ambassador Harald Scavenius was forced to leave the Soviet Russia. Then the Russian scientists got involved in this matter. They wrote an appeal to the Sovnarkom and asked to release Grand Prince Nikolay Mikhailovich, who "had been the chairman of the Imperial Historical Society for many years," from prison. Gorky also talked about him to Lenin. Tell us, why is this entomologist, historian, and coin collector so dangerous for the new power?

Lenin's answer is well known. "The revolution doesn't require any historians," the head of the Soviet State answered, allegedly meaning that the new power didn't need the historians with the great knowledge of the past. Lenin's words are now being interpreted as a sign of his narrow-mindedness and cruelty. In fact, everything was quite different. The decision regarding the execution of the grand princes, as well as the massacre in Yekaterinburg, Alapayevsk, and Perm was imposed on Lenin by the "allied" orchestrators of the liquidation of Russia. We can say that the continued massacre of the Romanovs was a component of the "package agreement," which we've talked about earlier. When the decision that the "allies" would support the Reds and not the Whites was made...

Imagine yourself in Vladimir Ilyich's place. You have an agreement with the "allies," who have been helping you, and at the same time have been financing the shots in your back. You hate them with all your heart, but you have to communicate with them for the sake of the revolution. You would rather shoot your partners down in the negotiations in the back yard, but instead you offer them tea and cigarettes. And all the time you are looking for a consensus. Otherwise, the Soviet power, your creation and your hope, will collapse in one or two weeks. And you negotiate for the sake of its future.

For the sake of a glass of milk, which a child from the working class area can get in the evenings. For the sake of the workers, who are dying of famine, for the sake of the revolution, which will victoriously march all over the world. You do everything for your dream, for your ideal. And your partners with smiles on their soigné faces mildly demand that you exterminate the Romanovs. Your choice is not big: the revolution, its progress, or the life of a harmless entomologist, historian, and coin collector, the manager of the Russian Museum. The proletarian writer Maxim Gorky stands next to you, looks at you with his clever eyes and says stressing his 'o's,[1] "Vladimir Ilyich, Nikolay Mikhailovich has to be released."

What can you tell him? The truth? That the grand princes have to be shot dead because the British demand this? He would never believe you. And you cannot tell him more. You will not tell him about the secret negotiations, about the money, and about the "advice," which the "allied" emissaries have given you. You may not mention either how the October overthrow happened, how Kerensky did his utmost to play into your hands. How would you tell him that nobody, except you and Trotsky, believed in the victory of the revolution because nobody knew anything about the dirty underhand dealings? Is it possible to explain to Gorky why the innocent children of Nicholas Romanov were murdered? Can he understand why you took this sin and later cried pressing your face against the cold wall? And when all of it runs through your mind over a few seconds, you, suffering from a terrible headache caused by all the fatigue and problems, will answer, looking into the kind eyes of Alexei[2] Gorky, "The revolution doesn't require any historians..."An obvious absurdity, but what else could you say?

On January 29, 1919, the four grand princes of the Romanov family were shot dead in the Peter and Paul Fortress...

---

[1] Translator's note: Gorky talks in his own manner, pronouncing the unstressed "o" as a stressed sound in his Russian words, which is typical for people from the Volga Region.

[2] Translator's note: Maxim Gorky was a pseudonym of the writer, whereas his real name was Alexei Peshkov.

...One year before his death, in February 1919, the Supreme Governor of Russia Admiral Kolchak gave an order to send to Britain all the private belongings of the Imperial family, which had been collected and had nothing to do with the investigation. Xenia Alexandrovna Romanova was supposed to receive the clothes and jewels of the members of her brother's family, the daily used things, books, and icons. Some fragments of the floor and the walls from the basement of the Ipatiev house, where the massacre had taken place, were also sent to London. All the objects were packed in fifty boxes and sent by a special train to Vladivostok. Upon the arrival of the cargo at the port, it appeared that some of the boxes had disappeared without a trace. Twenty-nine boxes were loaded on the British cruiser Kent and sent off to the Foggy Albion. If the loss of the boxes on the Russian territory can be explained by the mess and thievery, the following events cannot be explained so easily.

Upon the arrival of the cargo to the English port, it was discovered that the contents of most of the boxes had disappeared and that they had been filled with all the kinds of rubbish.[1]

The British intelligence services were covering up the traces so that nobody would ever learn the truth...

And the truth is horrible. All the Romanovs, whose security the Head of the "democratic" Russia Alexander Kerensky so movingly cared for, are dead. They were murdered in Yekaterinburg, Perm, Alapayevsk, and Petrograd. But there was one more big group of the members of the Tsar's family. They were really lucky — they had managed to escape. Because their security was in the hands of a much more responsible person — Vladimir Ilyich Lenin himself...

---

[1] http//www.rusk.ru/vst.php?idar= 321702

CHAPTER 6

Why Lenin Safeguarded the Romanovs Better Than Himself

There are fallacies which appear like verities.

Lucius Annaeus Seneca

...Count Nikolay Tatitschev was standing onboard the cruiser Romania, looking at the blue January sky. Despite the bright sunshine the guard captain got stiffen with cold, because he had only underwear on him. The clouds, which were floating away, were the only thing which he was able to look at. It was not due to his strong affection for the sky — he simply could not see anything else.

His arms, drawn back and roped at the elbows and wrists, have become numb. Count Tatitschev's legs started to ache because they were also roped in several places, and his feet were knotted to a heavy weight. His head, drawn back by the ropes to the fixed arms and legs, was directed at the sky. That was the reason why Nikolay Tatitschev could not see anything but clouds. The rope was stretched like a bowstring, cutting the neck and choking him.

Tied and helpless people like him were standing next to him onboard Romania. The Count could not see them, but he knew that they were standing on both sides of him, because they had been together in the hold of this darned cruiser.

— God save and have mercy on us, — somebody was vehemently whispering to the right from the captain.

— You just pray, — a harsh voice sounded from behind, — nothing will help you!

Lieutenant Colonel Konstantin Seslavin, Staff Captain of Cavalry Feodor Savenkov, Colonel Arnold Sevrimovich, and Lieutenant Colonel Evgeny Yasinsky — Nikolay Tatitschev knew them all personally.

All of them lived in Yevpatoria after having performed their military duties in the battlefields during World War 1, and in Romania, as well. What a biting irony of the fate! They have escaped the German and the Austrian bullets, and the malicious revenge of the sailors has caught them off guard.

— What are you doing? Are you human beings or not? — a female voice somewhere to the left sounds hysterically.

It must be Irina Petrovna, the wife of the engineer with a surname so awkward for the Russian ear — Mamai. Tatitschev knew her first husband — Sergey Kritsky, and used to play cards with him. Why would she change her so decent previous surname to the ridiculous "Mamai"?!

Nikolay Tatitschev even smiled, but the rope choked him again. These bastards have tied him properly well. A smaller cloud shaped as a lamb or a little colt was floating above the deck, and suddenly the sun appeared from behind the cloud. The count narrowed his eyes, his nose tickled, and he sneezed loudly and unexpectedly. He didn't notice that a sailor in an unbuttoned pea jacket had approached him from behind.

— Move on! — Tatitschev got a strong kick in his back and fell into the water. The last thing in his life, which he could hear, was the roar of sailors of the cruiser Romania. Then there was a splash, a blue abyss, and silence…[1]

The nature of the Crimea is beautiful: the sun, the sea, and a lot of vegetation. A blessed land…In every guidebook on the local resorts you can read that "Yalta (Yevpatoria or any other place) is a resort located on the Crimean Black Sea coast and is one of the most beautiful and interesting places in the world." Graceful cypresses and palm trees, palaces, the spoondrift under the tender sun, prawns and fish, fruit and tasty wine… This was what the main Crimean resort looked like when the troubled times of the Russian strife came.

For the Crimean residents, just like for all the other Russian citizens, the February Revolution was a total surprise. The civil authorities were extremely surprised, too. The Commander of the

---

[1] The surnames and names of the victims who were drowned alive by the beasts in the service coats have been taken from the records of the special committee established by Denikin to investigate the Bolshevik acts of atrocity.

Black Sea Navy Admiral Kolchak felt lost at the very beginning. Having received the first messages about the unrest in Petrograd, he ordered the commandant of Sevastopol to immediately cut all the communications, including post and telegraph, between the Crimean Peninsula and the rest of Russia. This way Kolchak strived to preserve order and military fighting efficiency of the Russian Navy entrusted to him. The news were the most alarming ones, and they arrived... from the Germans. The enemy in a very bad Russian announced over the radio about the unrest, and the armed conflicts. Later the Germans spoke of the uprisal in the Baltic Sea Navy in Kronstadt, where the officers were slaughtered by the sailors.

The commander of the Black Sea Navy was trying to avoid the same in his "home territory." The situation was absolutely unclear, indeed. A couple of days later the situation got clear — the Provisional Government came to power. It was exactly Kolchak who was the first to make the naval personnel swear on oath to the new government.[1]

The irony of fate — the future supreme governor of Russia, a dictator, as a matter of fact, has become a zealous supporter of the parliamentary regime. It's for his loyalty to the Provisional Government, which immediately started to destroy Russia, that the "allies" will offer Kolchak the Siberian throne of the supreme governor. However, after having got the power, Kolchak would very quickly stop to be a "controllable tool" in the hands of the British, French, and Americans, and would turn into a leader, resolutely and without any compromises protecting the interests of the empire entrusted to him. Kolchak turned out to be more of a patriot than of a democrat, and that's why he would pay for his love to Russia with his life...

---

[1] When it became known that Nicholas Romanov had abdicated in favour of his brother Michael, Kolchak ordered to prepare the officers and soldiers to swear on oath to Emperor Michael II. And the whole Navy would have sworn on oath. This is apropos the statement that the country would not accept the power of the new tsar. It would accept it without any doubts! But Michael abdicated, and everybody swore an oath to the Provisional Government.

But in March 1917, everyone was looking forward with great optimism: the preparation of a Bosphorus landing was almost finished. In case the landing was a success, the outcome of the World War would be determined — the war would come to its end. The landing never happened due to the breakup of the country, the army, and the navy. The signs of morale degeneration could be seen all over Russia, but in the blessed Crimea the process went slower. First, in the middle of March the first naval soviets were established at the Black Sea. There were few Bolsheviks among them, while Mensheviks and SRs prevailed. Lenin came to Russia in April — and it all started! The Provisional Government didn't hinder Lenin to rock the situation and destroy Russia. The Baltic Sea Navy, which had been already demoralized by Bolsheviks, sent a delegation of five people to the Black Sea, who within a few days struck a death blow to the harsh discipline of Kolchak. The sailors on a massive scale started to ask for vacation and to look at the officers bearing German surnames with jaundiced eye. One month later, the sailors looked at all officers that way. On June 3 (16), a telegram to the General Headquarters was sent, "The situation in Sevastopol is worsening due to the Bolshevik propaganda."[1]

But no measures have been taken except for the ongoing meetings and attempts to persuade the soldiers and sailors to fulfil their duties and remain patriots and human beings. None of the armies or navies in the history could fight being unified only by words without the cast-iron discipline, and the latter was impossible to establish. Freedom and equality have been proclaimed in the country, Order Number One and the Declaration on the Soldier's Rights have been distributed. That's why Bolshevik propagandists should be left alone, and the cowards, and the deserters should not be shot dead.

The Black Sea Navy was falling into the abyss of hell together with the entire Russia. To start with, the crew of the squadron torpedo vessel Zharkiy refused to put out to sea, "because the commander steered the torpedo vessel too risky, and it jeopardized the lives of the crew."[2] Kolchak, who was trying to stop the breakup, ordered to haul down the flag, but it only added fuel to the fire. The crews of the torpedo-boat destroyer Kerch and the auxiliary cruiser Dacia demanded that the commanders were removed from their posts. The unrest among sailors started on the armor-plated ship Tri Svyatitelya, on the battleship Sinop, and other vessels. Things came to such a pitch that Minister for War Alexander Kerensky arrived to personally reason the sailors into stopping the mutiny. Unfortunately, the Russian Army was so big that the minister of war alone couldn't persuade all the military personnel. The symptoms of the upcoming catastrophe like mistrust to officers, breakup of discipline, and poison of the Bolshevik propaganda showed through during the fervent meetings and Kerensky's speeches, full of appeals. In the armed forces, there cannot be any democracy — this is clear to any man of sense. The minister of war doesn't "understand" it, and instead of taking some strong measures, he goes on persuading and reasoning...

---

[1] Bogdanov K. Admiral Kolchak. St. Pb.: Sudostroyenie, 1993. P. 103.

[2] Ib.

Kolchak has almost fully lost his authority in the Navy by June. In fact, the open mutiny starts. The meetings are seething, and Bolshevik propagandists seem to be never going to leave the tribunes. As a result, on June 6 (19), the Sevastopol Soviet under the pressure of the naval committees takes the following decision: the individual weapons of the officers should be confiscated, the search in their apartments should be carried out, and Kolchak should be removed from his post. The admiral is leaving the Navy, having cast his St. George sabre into the sea...

During the next months, the breakup and anarchy on the Black Sea Navy deepened. However, the real Soviet power would be established in the Crimea later, as Bolsheviks started some real action to bring the Crimea under their power as late as in December 1917. It was at that time that a detachment of the sailors, which had been sent from Sevastopol to intercept the White Army volunteers, heading for the Don Republic to join the White Army, returned. The sailors looked battered and were extremely angry. In his memoirs Baron Wrangler left the description of the sailors who had returned, "With insolent and brutal faces, crisscrossed with machinegun belts and with hand grenades tied to their girdles, they made themselves a way to Sevastopol in smaller groups, attacking the trains, throwing women and children out of railway cars, beating the railway employees up."[1]

The Sevastopol Soviet had been dissolved, and the military revolutionary headquarters were established instead. And immediately, on the same day (!), the bloody massacres started. The power in the Crimea was seized under the leadership of Bolshevik Gaven (Daumanis). He performed his task perfectly well: under his guidance, the sailors arranged a pure slaughter of the guiltless officers. At night on December 17 (30), 1917, 32 officers were shot dead on the Malakoff Ridge, and in total 128 officers were executed at the main base of the Black Sea Navy.[2] These were the first signs of the future horrors, the first "outrages" of the power of the workers and peasants. It was from Sevastopol that the bloody offshoots of the Bolshevik Soviets and the military-revolutionary courts started to spread all over the blessed peninsula. The terrible count of the victims of the new Russian time of troubles in the Crimea starts here. Let's remember that. **The Bolshevik massacres in the Crimea started in Sevastopol.**

---

[1] Wrangel P. Notes. (http://militera.lib.ru/memo/russian/vrangel1/01html)

[2] It's about this horror exactly that Anna Akhmatova will write this poem:

Is this why, for countless days,
In my arms, I carried you,
Is this why, your strength had blazed
Through your lively eyes of blue!

You grew slender and much taller,
Sang, and drank Madeira wine,
To the far off Anatolia,
You destroyer was assigned.

Somewhere on Malakhov mound,
A young officer was slayed.
For just twenty years around,
He beheld the light of day.
(Translation by Andrei Kneller)

At the same time in January 1918, the first clashes between the revolutionary forces and the Crimean Tatars, who got indignant with the violence and robberies of the unbridled soldiery, took place. At the beginning, the footfall of Lenin's power was triumphant, and on January 14 (27), the Reds, supported by the workers, entered Simferopol. In one week the whole Crimea became Soviet. These dates are very important for us in this chapter, let's remember them. **The Bolsheviks seized the power in the Crimea first in the middle of January 1918.** Their first "coming" didn't last for long — till April of the same year.

If the locals had known what horror was brought to Yalta by several hundreds of revolutionary Black Sea Navy sailors, they would have run headlong out of the town. But nobody has seen the Soviet power yet, and its first decrees didn't seem to be butcherly. Much later, Anton Denikin would establish a special committee to investigate the Bolshevik acts of atrocity. The materials of the committee dispassionately record, "On January 13, 1918, after four days of counterstand of the armed Tatar squadrons and the officers' brigades, Yalta and the surroundings were taken over by Bolsheviks, primarily by sailors from the crews of torpedo boats Kerch and Khadjibey, and the ferry ship Prut. Immediately after the seizure of Yalta the Bolshevik military-revolutionary headquarters started to arrest the officers. The latter were brought to the torpedo boats in the harbour, and after a short interrogation (and often without any) they were taken to the pierhead, where they were shot dead, or they were detained for one or two days in the premises of the Russian shipping line company. Almost all the arrested officers were at long last taken to the same pierhead and shot dead by the sailors and Red Army soldiers."[1]

A bloody Bacchanalia was sweeping over Yalta. Sometimes Bolshevik sailors, crazy of all the blood and impunity, killed their victims in the streets in plain view of Yalta residents, "No investigations regarding those shot dead were carried out. No mercy was given to anybody. There were two or three cases when the arrested people, who considered themselves sentenced to death, were all of a sudden released, and the cause for their release remained unknown, as well as the reason of their confinement."[1]

---

[1] The information on the Bolshevik atrocities at the southern coast of the Crimea (Yalta and its surroundings) (http://ricolor.org/history/kt/ktr/58/)

Baron Pyotr Wrangel, who was in the epicentre of the bloody drama, was a happy man. He was unbelievably lucky: he had not been shot down but was released thanks to the courage of his wife, who was not scared to make a stand for her husband in front of the "revolutionary" sailors, who got mad because of their impunity. The fortune saved the leader-to-be of the White Guard, but many honest and innocent Russian officers were left by the providence to suffer martyr's death. "According to the eyewitness, the old lighthouse keeper, more than a hundred people were shot dead in three days right in front of him. Their corpses were thrown to the sea from the pierhead with the weight tied to their feet,"[2] Baron Wrangel will write in his memoirs.

The Crimea is a resort where all those who need it can recover their health. At that time, there were several health resorts in Yalta. During the war, their patients were mainly the wounded officers. Being absolutely guiltless, they were victims to be added to the list, "A Warrant Officer Pyotr Savchenko was killed in the street on his way out of the Alexander III resort, being cannonaded. A sailor killed him, because the officer couldn't answer where the Tatar squadrons were heading for. After having despoiled the corpse of the dead officer, the sailor pinned the shoulder boards to the dead officer's chest and brought him to the slaughterhouse."[3]

The Russian military command has also deployed military hospitals in many towns of the Crimea. A terrible death befell many of the patients there, "Neither a disease, nor wounds, nor maiming injuries could protect from the Bolsheviks' atrocity: a young officer, who had been wounded several times by the Germans, now on crutches, was brought to the revolutionary headquarters, accompanied by a nurse. The injured officer had hardly entered the room, when the Red Army soldier Vanka Khripaty sprang to his feet and shot a bullet in the officer's brains right in front of the nurse. The deadly wounded young man fell on the floor, and another Bolshevik, Yan Karakashida, standing nearby, started to hit the poor soul on the face with the butt of his heavy gun."[1]

---

[1] The information on the Bolshevik atrocities at the southern coast of the Crimea (Yalta and its surroundings) (http://ricolor.org/history/kt/ktr/58/)

[2] Wrangel P. Notes. (http://militera.lib.ru/memo/russian/vrangel1/01html)

[3] The information on the Bolshevik atrocities at the southern coast of the Crimea (Yalta and its surroundings) (http://ricolor.org/history/kt/ktr/58/)

The brother of Anton Turkul, the future commander of the Drozdovsky division, was also killed at that time. "The terrible killings of the officers started in Yalta," he writes in his striking book "Drozdovtsy on Fire,"[2] "The rabble broke into the hospital where my brother was staying. The crowd derided the wounded officers, they were shot dead in their beds. Nikolay and four other officers from his ward, all wounded badly, barricaded the door and fired back on the raged sailors. The rabble filled the walls of the ward with bullets. All the officers were killed."[3]

Not feeling guilty, both wounded and healthy officers were not going to hide or resist. The apathy which had overtaken the country during the rule of the Provisional Government influenced them, as well.

The inaction will cost them their lives, "During the first two or three days after Yalta had been taken more than one hundred officers were killed. These were the officers who didn't take part in the Civil War but lived in Yalta in order to recover or get a medical treatment in hospitals or medical resorts. Most of the killed officers were thrown into the sea with a weight tied to their feet. The corpses of the guiltless officers were brought up from the sea bottom and buried in a mass grave five months later, when the Crimea was occupied by the Germans."[1]

---

[1] The information on the Bolshevik atrocities at the southern coast of the Crimea (Yalta and its surroundings) (http://ricolor.org/history/kt/ktr/58/)

[2] The book written by Colonel Turkul may be the best book about the Civil War. I heartily recommend all to read it.

[3] Turkul A. Drozdovtsy on Fire. Pictures of the Civil War 1918–1920. Munich, 1947. (http://militera.lib.ru/memo/russian/turkul_av/01html)

Is it possible that in Yalta specifically Bolsheviks were accomplished scoundrels and sadists, while the other towns in the Crimea had more luck, and the Communists were normal humans there? The materials of the investigation carried out by the committee established by Denikin show that violence and atrocity were the components of the new power identity all over the Crimean coast.

And yet, the most horrible thing happened not in Yalta, but in Yevpatoria.

"In the evening of January 14, 1918, two military vessels — the cruiser Romania and the ferry ship Truvor appeared at the Yevpatoria coast. The sailors of the Black Sea Navy and the workers from the Sevastopol harbour were onboard. In the morning of January 15 the cruiser Romania opened fire on Yevpatoria, which lasted for about forty minutes. At about 9 a.m. about 1,500 sailors and workers debarked the vessels. The local gangs joined them, and the usurpers took power in their hands."[2]

The searches and arrests started. Breaking into houses, Bolsheviks didn't only confiscate weapons, they took everything which they got at hand. The sailors with their faces masked or covered with soot were sneaking all over Yevpatoria like death angels. They arrested officers and all those suspected of counterrevolutionary activities.

"The arrestees were brought to the pier, where the Provisional military-revolutionary committee made of the arrived sailors and Bolsheviks, as well as of the extreme left-wing representatives from Yevpatoria, seated in the premises of the Russian shipping line company in those days. Usually without any interrogation the arrestees were brought under armed escort to the ferry boat Truvor, where they were placed in the ship holds. In the first three or four days over eight hundred people were arrested. They were badly treated and brutalized, and no food was given to them on the first day."[1]

---

[1] The information on the Bolshevik atrocities at the southern coast of the Crimea (Yalta and its surroundings) (http://ricolor.org/history/kt/ktr/58/)

[2] The information on the Bolshevik atrocities in Yevpatoria (http://ricolor.org/history/kt/ktr/56/)

According to an eyewitness, no food was given to them for two days, then a bucket of some wish-wash, a few bowls and only one spoon was brought. It became known that the officers were to be fed only with the leftovers that other arrested people hadn't eaten. Then a "fair" proletarian court of justice followed, and the sentence was the same for everyone — death. And a very painful one... "The executions first took place only onboard Romania, but later they also took place onboard Truvor. They were carried on in the evening and at night in front of the other arrestees. The executions were performed like this: the persons sentenced to shooting were brought to the main deck, where they were first brutalized and then shot dead and thrown into the water."[2]

These were lucky — some people were thrown overboard still being alive. The sailors, running amok, used to place people tied up with ropes along the board, and throw them into the water by kicking them in the back. The relatives standing ashore followed this horror, "This brutal massacre could be seen from ashore, where relatives, children, and wives stood. They were weeping, screaming, imploring, but the sailors were laughing in return."[3]

As terrible as it may sound, those who had been thrown into the water alive were lucky, too. The revolutionary sailors, who had been standing to attention saluting the officers just nine months ago, were now rapidly dehumanizing themselves. One can't read the materials of Denikin's committee without shuddering:

"According to the eyewitnesses, the atrocities were as follows: by the order of the court committee, before the execution the sailors approached the deck openings and called out the victims by their surnames. The sentenced persons under the armed escort had to pass a row of the armed Red Army soldiers over the deck to the place of the execution, the so-called Place of the Skull. The armed sailors took off the victims' coats, tied up their arms and legs with ropes and put them lying in their underwear on the deck. Then the victims' ears, nose, lips, penis, and sometimes even their arms were cut off, and the victims were thrown into the water. The blood on the deck was washed away with water. The executions went on for the whole night, and each execution took about fifteen to twenty minutes. The screams on the deck during the executions could be heard in the holds, and in order to deaden them the engines of the ferry boat Truvor got started, as if putting to the sea from the Yevpatorian coast. During three days of January 15, 16, and 17 over 300 people were killed and thrown into the water from the Romania cruiser and the Truvor ferry boat.[1]

---

[1] The information on the Bolshevik atrocities in Yevpatoria (http://ricolor.org/history/kt/ktr/56/)

[2] Ib.

[3] Ib.

It was as if the dark Middle Ages reigned all over Russia and the bustling Crimean resorts, as well. Most of the victims to the Bolshevik atrocities were later cast ashore by the waves. The horror of Yevpatorian locals had no limits: the corpses with the avulsed wounds, traces of bullets in their skulls, their arms and sometimes even their heads cut off, were floating in the coastal waters.[2] It looked as if not the new humane Soviet power was being established in this cosy resort corner, but a horde of bloodthirsty Huns was attacking the conquered foreigners. Wrangel, who miraculously escaped death, heard a lot about the Bolsheviks' atrocities, "Simferopol has passed through extremely bloody days. A great number of officers were shot dead, including almost all the officers from the Crimean headquarters, with the brutally murdered Colonel Makukha among them."[3]

In January, the executions were carried out everywhere. By the most conservative estimate, the number of victims was not less than one thousand, which included seven hundred officers and the Crimean Tatars, who offered resistance in Simferopol. In February, sixty officers were killed in the little Feodosia, and several military retirees were killed in Alushta. Having made a circle, the terror came back to Sevastopol. At night of February 23, which would be later for many years celebrated as the day of the Soviet Army foundation, to February 24, the second massacre in Sevastopol took place, "This time the massacre was properly staged: in accordance with the plan they were killing not only the marine officers, but also the officers of other arms of service, in total eight hundred people were killed. The trucks specially assigned for this purpose were collecting the corpses. There were piles of corpses in the streets. They were transported to the Grafskaya Pier, loaded on the barges, and thrown into the sea."[1]

---

[1] The information on the Bolshevik atrocities in Yevpatoria (http://ricolor.org/history/kt/ktr/56/)

[2] Ib.

[3] Wrangel P. Notes. (http://militera.lib.ru/memo/russian/vrangel1/01html)

This is an important point for us.

They didn't just start to kill people at the Crimean coast in Sevastopol, they continued to do it in the hair-raising manner. Let's not forget that and move on. The same massacres took place everywhere, but we are mostly interested in the situation in the Crimea. Why? You will understand it a bit later. We shall not even mention the violence and robberies with regard to the noncombat locals. Bolsheviks did it the same way in all the places they occupied. The same barbarity took place in Yalta,

"Before plundering the Alexander III health resort they had been cannonading it from the torpedo boat Kerch. When the chief medical officer of the resort asked to have mercy on the sick and wounded, the answer was, "There are only the counterrevolutionaries in this health resort, that's why it has to be razed to the ground."

However, the menace had not been fully realized, the canon fire was stopped, but the administration of the health resort was ordered to evacuate all the patients within two hours. After the evacuation the total plunder of the health resort started. The booty from hotels, shops, stores, and apartments was partly appropriated by the Bolshevik committee, but the greater part of the booty went to those who carried out the searches. Alushta, Alupka, Derekoi, Bakhchisarai, Massandra, and other places nearby were plundered just like Yalta.

---

[1] Volkov S. The Tragedy of the Russian Officership. M., 1993 (http://militera.lib.ru/research/volkov1/03html)

Before the plunder, Derekoi had been cannonaded from a torpedo boat; the locals fled to the mountains, and when they came back the next day, they saw that their property had been destroyed. The residents who had been doing well before became paupers."[1]

This is not even a power, this is an outrage, this is violence, which can be compared to the conduct of the Vikings during their raids on the Western and Eastern Europe, "A slightest request or an objection, and you get a muzzle of the revolver at your temple, the bayonet at your chest, and the gun-butt over your head ready to hit..."[2]

Here is one more case: two Tatar sellers were caught in the street of Yevpatoria. They were taken out of the town and killed. When their corpses were found, there were several bayonet wounds and deep cuts on the chest of one brother, while the head of the other was smashed by a gun-butt. Most likely, the unhappy sellers had a certain amount of money with them, and they paid for this with their lives. This can be called a call of the heart of the revolutionary masses, but there were the official plunders, too. "The bourgeois," or all the residents of towns, to be more precise, were levied tributes just like the Vikings used to take tolls from the peoples they had conquered. The Communist Committee in Yalta demanded twenty million rubles from the townspeople. This is a huge amount of money, but in case it wasn't paid more killings would follow. The extortions are huge, but the money has to be collected. However, in three months, the treasury of Bolsheviks received about two million rubles. After that the smart revolutionaries gave an order to all the banks to draw all the money exceeding 10,000 rubles from the current accounts of the "bourgeois" and to transfer the money to the current account of the Committee in the Narodny Bank."[3] When the revolutionary power was coming to its end, right before the Germans occupied the Crimea, these fighters for the equality and brotherhood "by using the armed force stole all the cash in the amount of 1,200,000 rubles from the cash office of the State Bank department in Yalta,"[1] i.e., committed a trivial robbery.

---

[1] The information on the Bolshevik atrocities at the southern coast of the Crimea (Yalta and its surroundings) (http://ricolor.org/history/kt/ktr/58/)

[2] Ib.

[3] The information on the Bolshevik atrocities at the southern coast of the Crimea (Yalta and its surroundings) (http://ricolor.org/history/kt/ktr/58/) Translator's note: Narodny Bank — the People's Bank in Russian.

Now it's time to wipe away the cold sweat, caused by the description of all these horrors, and ask ourselves a couple of questions:

- why should we steep in this bloody nightmare ?
- what do our valiant "allies" have to do with this?
- why are we focused on the Crimea?

You will understand now. Grand Prince Alexander Mikhailovitch Romanov, married to the sister of Nicholas II, the father of Felix Yusupov's wife, has left some remarkable memoirs to us. They are incredibly interesting. They are fantastic. Nobody has ever left for us any comments on their content. And how wrong it is! Because having read them, you would feel like making a really odd conclusion. There are kind Bolsheviks, and there are evil Bolsheviks. They are not only the members of the same party, they are in the same place — in the Crimea. All the atrocities are performed by the evil Bolsheviks, whereas the kind Bolsheviks are polite and fair. You don't believe this, do you? You think this is not possible, don't you? Don't be in a hurry to judge — thanks to the British intelligence services, the Russian Revolution has turned into a pure miracle and into a terror tale. And as we know, everything is possible in a tale...

Let's do it in the right order. Let's return back to March 1917, when the February Revolution took place, and Nicholas II abdicated. The story is just beginning. Let's describe Grand Prince Alexander Mikhailovitch Romanov, in a few words before giving word to him. A tall charming handsome man as he was, he had a very close relationship with the last Russian monarch, who was his nephew. "Uncle Sandro," as Nicholas II called him, was almost the age mate of the Emperor and his childhood friend, they used to play together when they were kids. Their friendship came into play when the matter of the grand prince's marriage was being solved. Nicholas II used every effort in order to make his dear relative marry his sister Xenia. In February 1917 the daughter of Xenia and Sandro, Irina, married Prince Felix Yusupov, who has gone down in the history as Grigori Rasputin's murderer.

---

[1] The information on the Bolshevik atrocities at the southern coast of the Crimea (Yalta and its surroundings) (http://ricolor.org/history/kt/ktr/58/) Translator's note: Narodny Bank — the People's Bank in Russian.

This was the part of the family story. Regarding his service in the army, the grand prince is well-known as the chief of the Russian imperial air-force, and in 1910, he founded the aviation school of Katchinsky, which was officially called the Sevastopol Officer Aviation School. The money, which had been raised by the Committee for Navy Recovery after the Russo-Japanese war, was used for this purpose. The donations of Russian citizens at the time were enormous and, a part of them — 900,000 rubles were spent to establish this aviation school. It has really done good for the country: from the day of its foundation till October 1917 the school had trained 609 pilots, 376 of them were former officers, and 233 pilots were former soldiers. Many of them distinguished themselves during World War 1 and the Civil War. Due to this, even now Grand Prince Alexander Mikhailovitch is called "the father of the Russian air fleet."

At the end of March, he was arrested and exiled together with his family to... the Crimea. To his own estate Ay Todor. The grand prince has described this period of his life in details in his memoirs, "Our voyage went under the escort of the sailors. Upon arrival in Ay Todor a certain gentleman with a sonorous title of "the special commissar of the Provisional Government" handed to us a long list of things, which we were not allowed to do. We were under home arrest and were allowed to move freely only within the estate, which was within one and a half arpent between the mountains and the seashore. The commissar was the representative of the Provisional Government, and the sailors were authorized by the local Soviet. These revolutionary powers were struggling against each other. The sailors didn't trust the commissar, and the commissar was looking in horror at the hand grenades, attached to the girdles of the revolutionary sailors."[1]

---

[1] Romanov A. Memoirs. Moscow: AST, 2008. P. 328.

The sailors disturbed the Romanov family a lot: at times, they were searched, because the sailors were looking for weapons and counterrevolutionary correspondence. The representatives of the Provisional Government didn't bring much joy, either. But humans get used to everything — the Romanovs, arrested and exiled to Ay Todor, bore their cross. Time passed by, the Bolshevik takeover occurred, its echo having reached the far away Crimea in November. If you are prepared to read more about the Bolshevik atrocities, you'll be really surprised. Then again, let's call upon to the speech of Alexander Mikhailovitch himself, "We had to get prepared to meet the new rulers of Russia. At noon, a dusty car stopped at the port of out estate, and a heavily-armed giant in the sailor uniform got out of the car. After a short conversation at the entrance, he entered the room unannounced.

"I have got an order from the Soviet Government to take the administration of this region in my hands," he declared. I asked him to sit down.

"I know you, — he continued. — You are the former Grand Prince Alexander Mikhailovitch. Don't you remember me? I served in your aviation school in 1916."

More than 2,000 pilots have served under my command, and of course, I couldn't remember his face. But this fact made establishing the relations with our new jailor a bit easier.

He explained to me that due to the "strategic reasons" we had to move to the neighbouring estate Dulber, which was owned by my cousin Grand Prince Pyotr Nikolayevich. It was long since I heard this military term for the last time. What did the situation of my family being under home arrest have to do with the "strategic reasons"? Could they be expecting the Turkish landing? He smiled, "No, the state of affairs is worse than you may think. The comrades in Yalta insist on your immediate shooting, but the Sevastopol Soviet has ordered me to defend you until a special order of comrade Lenin arrives. I have no doubt with regard to the Yalta Soviet, they will for sure try to take you by force, that's why an attack from Yalta is expected. Dulber with its walls is easier to protect than Ay Todor. This place is exposed on every side."

He took out a map of Dulber with positions of machine guns marked in red. I have never thought that the beautiful villa of Pyotr Nikolayevich had so many advantages from the military point of view. When he started to build it, we all were making fun of him, because the walls of the villa should have been so thick and high that we assumed that he was going to start a life of the Bluebeard murderer there. But our jokes didn't work, and he didn't change his decision. He used to say that one could never know what the remote future would bring. Thanks to his foresight, the Sevastopol Soviet had a well-protected fortress in November 1917."[1]

That was really unexpected — a detachment of sailors is sent not to massacre the helpless officers and bourgeois, but to defend them! And not by someone, but by comrade Lenin himself!

"The events of the next five months proved that the anxieties of our new jailors were well taken. Each second week the Yalta Soviet sent its representatives to Dulber to negotiate with our unexpected defenders.

Heavy carts loaded with machine guns with soldiers over them stopped at the walls of Dulber. The persons who arrived demanded that the Sevastopol Soviet Commissar Zadorozhny came out to them. Comrade Zadorozhny, a big guy of almost two meters high, approached the port and asked about the purpose of their visit. In these cases, we were recommended not to go out, but we could hear through the open windows the following dialogue:

— Zadorozhny, stop talking! We are fed up! The Yalta Soviet lays claim to the Romanovs, who are unlawfully detained by the Sevastopol Soviet. You have five minutes to think it over!

— Send the Yalta Soviet to hell! I'm fed up with you! Go away or I will treat you to some lead from Sevastopol!

— Have they paid you a lot, comrade Zadorozhny?

— Enough to arrange your funerals.

— The chairman of the Yalta Soviet will inform comrade Lenin about your counterrevolutionary actions. We advise you not to joke with the working class government.

---

[1] Romanov A. Memoirs. Moscow: AST, 2008. P. 328.

— Show me the warrant signed by comrade Lenin, and I shall give the arrested people to you. Don't tell me anything about the working class. I'm a veteran Bolshevik. I was the member of the party when you were in jail for theft.

— Comrade Zadorozhny, you will regret this!

— Go to hell!

A young man in a leather jacket and leather breeches, the chairman of the Yalta Soviet, tried from time to time to address the machine gunners from Sevastopol who he could not see, but whose presence he felt on the tops of the walls. He was talking about the historical necessity to fight against the counterrevolution, appealed to their sense of "proletarian justice" and mentioned the inexorable gallows for the traitors. *The machine gunners remained silent. From time to time they threw small stones or cigarette butts at him*."[1]

All this is really odd. The discipline of the revolutionary machine gunners from Sevastopol is amazing. According to the memoirs of the grand prince, the described events took place in March 1918. And the detachment from Sevastopol consisted of the same sailors, who just recently — on **February 23** — had been going door-to-door slaughtering officers all over the town and then shooting Tatars dead in their vineyards. **In December 1917,** those same people were killing the officers on the Malakoff Ridge. They got mad due to bloodsheds and total impunity, they got used to kill anyone at large on whim, and in Dulber they demonstrated an amazing discipline and incredible self-restrain. The comrade from Yalta, who has been drowning the officers in the sea alive, is eager to shoot the Romanovs dead, and the sailors from Sevastopol, who have been shooting the officers dead and stabbing them with their bayonets, are now ready to defend them "under threat of the gallows for the traitors." What happened to them? Why did the Romanovs become closer and more precious for this detachment than Bolsheviks themselves?

It's funny: for no particular reason the unbridled Bolsheviks all of a sudden have become humane and disciplined. Does it mean that the Bolsheviks in Yalta are evil, and that in Sevastopol they are kind? The thing is that we have immersed into the bloody horror that reined all over the Crimea in order to make sure that all those establishing the Soviet power in the Crimea were bloodthirsty executioners regardless of the geographical location. Where do these kind and responsive people — like the commander of the fantastic detachment led by the comrade sailor Zadorozhny — come from in the Crimea swept by the revolution? The kind comrade Zadorozhny, who is so fantastically kind *that he and his people are ready to fight against their revolutionary brethren for the sake of a few Romanovs!*

---

[1] Romanov A. Memoirs. Moscow: AST, 2008. P. 335.

Zadorozhny answers this question in the memoirs of the grand prince, "'I have received an order from the Soviet government to take the whole region under my control,' he declared."[1] Please, pay attention: the order not of the Sevastopol Soviet, but the order of the new government, the Sovnarkom. Lenin is the head of the Sovnarkom, hence the order is his. Lenin's envoy is ready to fight, to shoot the revolutionary soldiers from Yalta — to save the lives of some members of the Tsar's family. Have you ever heard about that?

There is another thing, which is inconceivable: there is havoc and chaos all over the country, there is no discipline in the newly established units of the Red Army. The whole country is suffering from the gangs of looters and gangsters, who used to be soldiers in the old army. They have been bolshevized, then released and sent home. In the Crimea there is terror, anarchy, and no discipline at all, too. And there is only one detachment in Russia where there is a good, old, prerevolutionary order. This detachment is safeguarding neither Lenin or Trotsky, nor the Congress of Soviets — it is safeguarding several Romanovs. They do it completely **by chance**, of course. And only **by chance** there are the following persons in this group:

- Grand Prince Alexander Mikhailovitch Romanov,
- his family: his wife Xenia Alexandrovna, the sister of Nicolas II, their sons and daughters (5 people),
- Grand Prince Nikolay Nikolayevich Romanov — the former chief of the headquarters of the Russian Army, the cousin of Alexander Mikhailovitch. He was saved (arrested!) together with his

---

[1] Romanov A. Memoirs. Moscow: AST, 2008. P. 333.

wife Grand Princess Anastasia Nikolayevna and her son, Prince Sergei Georgievich, the duke of Leuchtenberg,
- his brother Grand Prince Pyotr Nikolayevich Romanov with his family,
- Dowager Empress Maria Feodorovna, the Danish Princess Dagmar in her youth, the mother of Emperor Nicholas II.

So, these are not the guard officers and not the blatant monarchists, but the revolutionary sailors of the Sevastopol Soviet, who are ready to sacrifice their lives for the salt of the Russian earth. Don't you think it's odd? Because if there is some communication between the Soviets, if the Soviets contact each other over the phone, couldn't they have sorted out within five months that the Romanovs had stayed in Dulber for who it was more convenient to shoot the Romanovs? No, they couldn't. Bolsheviks from Yalta visit the estate again and again instead of making the Sevastopol Soviet approve the liquidation of a few former rulers of Russia. All this means that the Sevastopol Soviet doesn't approve this action, but why? What could be answered to the "fair" request of the Yalta comrades asking to turn over the Romanovs' camarilla? Why wouldn't the Bolsheviks from Sevastopol give such an order? The commander of the detachment, which was safeguarding the prisoners, answered unequivocally, "Zadorozhny objected them very pointedly that any of his subordinates would be happy to shoot the grand prince dead but not before the Sevastopol Soviet ordered to do it."[1]

Who knows, there might be really kind Bolsheviks sitting in the Sevastopol Soviet, the conscience started to work within them, and that's why they refuse the evil Bolsheviks from Yalta. The evidence provided by eyewitnesses indicate the opposite: there is no geographical difference between Bolsheviks, all of them are killers and abusers. The Bolsheviks in Sevastopol and Yalta live in full harmony, fighting together against the world counterrevolution by means of summary executions, robberies, and violence. We still need to take a closer look and see who is more horrible and bloodthirsty. But there is a fundamental difference between them in one matter only — the fate of some members of the Romanov family. When they hear the surname of the former Tsar, the faces of Sevastopol knights of revolution get unwrinkled, their hearts of steel soften, and the sparks of mercy start glowing in their souls. Is it true?

---

[1] Romanov A. Memoirs. Moscow: AST, 2008. P. 336.

Let's remember, who is the head of the Bolsheviks in Sevastopol is. Is he so kind that he has even infected all the other ones with his criminal kindness? No, the head of the local Communists is Yuri Gaven (Daumanis), sent to Sevastopol by Lenin. In other words, he is a reliable comrade. That was him who turned the Black Sea sailors into beasts in three months. Judging by his "deeds," comrade Gaven is an evil person (and Wrangel writes the same), and in the case with the "prisoners of Dulber" he is the top kind soul. He doesn't want in any way to order comrade Zadorozhny to turn the Romanovs over to the Yalta anarchists. And they are persistent! It's not possible to keep silence during five months, otherwise, one risks to be charged as "a counterrevolutionary" and to be thrown with a weight tied to his feet into the water for the Black Sea fish to feast on. The comrades from Yalta need an answer, and it should be a reasoned one. The answer from Sevastopol should sound like, "There is an order from comrade Lenin to safeguard these Romanovs, and they should not be shot dead." But comrade Lenin can't give this order to anyone in the Sevastopol Soviet officially. The sailors like self-willed children will never accept all these "politesses" and can get out of control. Such an order can be given secretly to a very reliable person only, to comrade Gaven, for instance, who should be sent to Sevastopol in advance with an order to establish the Soviet power there. And at the same time one should wait for Zadorozhny's detachment to come and should play for time in order for the Romanovs not to be massacred. This Crimean epic of the Romanovs will last for five months, and they will have to put up with that and wait just a little bit longer after the described events of March 1918.

Why? *Because the German troops will occupy the Crimea early in April 1918, and the Romanovs will be saved.*

Let's not forget that comrade Lenin, who is so kind to Alexander Mikhailovitch and his companions, at the same time gives orders to arrest Michael Romanov, to move Nicholas II's family from Tobolsk to Yekaterinburg. But they are the heirs to the throne and should be liquidated as the first pretenders to the throne. Grand Prince Alexander Mikhailovitch and Nicholas II's elderly mother don't claim the throne, that's why they can and should be saved. Life in Dulber goes on in its due course. The Romanovs and their "jailors" live in perfect harmony. Grand Prince Alexander Mikhailovitch even helps the guards to fix the problem with the spotlights for better safeguarding. Neither Nicholas Romanov, nor the other members of his big family have ever had such a mutual understanding with their safeguards. Don't be surprised — *in this case they are safeguards, not the jailors!* They are rather saving "the prisoners" from a massacre than not letting them escape. Grand Prince Alexander Mikhailovitch made friends with his "jailors," and the other Romanovs were surprised at this strong friendship.

"Grand Prince Nikolay Nikolayevich couldn't understand why I was so often engaged in the endless conversations with Zadorozhny.

— It seems that you think to be able to change the views of this man, — Nikolay Nikolayevich often said. — One word of his superior is enough for him to shoot dead you and all of us with great pleasure.

I understood it perfectly well, too, but I have to admit, there was something appealing in this man's unrefined manners, in his fantastic faith in revolution. In any case, I preferred his straight speaking to the double-dealing of the commissar of the Provisional government. Every evening before going to bed I used to ask Zadorozhny the same question half-jokingly, "Are you going to shoot us dead this night?"

His usual promise not to take "any resolute measures" until he is cabled from the north calmed me down to some extent. Apparently, he liked my credulity and often asked me for advice in the most secret matters. In addition to the fortifications for the machine guns I helped him to build more fortifications around the villa and to write reports to the Sevastopol Soviet regarding the behaviour of the former grand princes and their families etc."[1]

---

[1] Romanov A. Memoirs. Moscow: AST, 2008. P. 336.

The motherland should know the names of its heroes — the name of the brave "sailor" Zadorozhny has been undeservingly forgotten. He is a unique person. He is the first human rights defender in the Soviet history. To be sure — he is the only Bolshevik who was ready to sacrifice his life for his class enemies. He is worth having a monument built in his honour, but he was mentioned only in the grand prince's memoirs...

The memoirs of the grand prince are so good that no comments are even needed. Everything is so obvious and unbelievable at the same time. There is a certain mystery in the image of the detachment commander: the only information on him that can be found is one insignificant fact of his biography. In his past, Zadorozhny allegedly was a scribe at the sugarhouse owned by Kharitonov in the Kharkov government. This total lack of information provokes strange guesses: neither the saved Romanovs try to find out anything about him, nor the Bolshevik archives tell us anything. You are almost ready to admit that Zadorozhny was a chekist. The only problem is that the Cheka was established in December 1917, much later than that November morning when he undertook his mission. But we feel that comrade Zadorozhny had received a special training — a scribe from the sugarhouse owned by Kharitonov simply would not have coped. If it was not the Cheka, then who could have pulled this remarkable operation and for almost a half of the year fool the Yalta comrades, risking his own life? The Bolshevik Cheka does not exist yet, but there is a well-planned orchestration and cold math in this operation. Yesterday's revolutionaries and ex-convicts would never have been able to carry out such an operation.

This conclusion can be easily verified. Let's imagine that Vladimir Lenin would charge the local comrades from Yalta or Sevastopol (the town doesn't actually matter) with the safeguarding of Dulber, a very important proletarian object. The revolutionaries would safeguard them as well as they could. They would rely on the most conscious sailors and politically literate workers from the local factories. They would talk to them and explain how important it was for the party to safeguard the arrested in the best way, otherwise the severe proletarian court of justice would judge them, and a deserved vindictive punishment would follow. All the comrades would, of course, be inspired by this responsibility and would set out. They would do it their way: sitting for hours on the stools and husking sunflower seeds. They would be talking to the "counterrevolutionaries" roughly and without any respect. Why not? They should be grateful that they have not been shot dead!

General Wrangel has also heard about the Romanovs, who were living nearby, "Empress Maria Feodorovna and other members of the Imperial family were accommodated in Dulber, the estate of Grand Prince Pyotr Nikolayevich, where they lived under the guard of the sailors. Nobody was allowed to visit them, but in March, the young Princess Yusupova managed to get a permit to visit her mother, Grand Princess Xenia Alexandrovna, and her grandmother, Empress Maria Feodorovna. The Yusupovs lived not far from us, and we used to meet rather often. We learned from them that the sailors, who were safeguarding the empress and the grand princes, treated them with respect and care. The commander of the sailors' detachment, a Black Sea sailor, sometimes showed a very touching attitude to the prisoners. After the Germans had occupied the Crimea, Grand Prince Alexander Mikhailovitch and Grand Princess Xenia Alexandrovna confirmed this to me."[1]

Wrangel was right — the attitude was really touching. The visits are allowed, Commander Zadorozhny is respectful and kind. And everywhere else — in Yalta, Sevastopol, and Simferopol — arrests, shootings, robberies, and killings are taking place. Wrangel himself had to hide at his friends' place, when the sailors from Sevastopol came to Yalta, and in Dulber everything was calm and safe. It's just an oasis of well-being in the stormy revolutionary sea, and this godsend is felt around the estate of Dulber, too: Felix Yusupov and his wife live in their estate Koreiz, in a close vicinity to Dulber.

It's due to all these reasons, I'm sure, that this odd detachment commanded by comrade Zadorozhny arrived from Petrograd and hadn't been drafted in the Crimea. The responsibility is too big, the stake in gains is too high. If you draft some killers in Sevastopol, what will be the difference between them and their local colleagues? Would they be willing to sacrifice their lives for the sake of this strange task?

---

[1] Wrangel P. Notes. (http://militera.lib.ru/memo/russian/vrangel1/01html)

If the locals guarded the grand princes, the result would be the following: those safeguarding the grand princes, and those attacking the estate know each other personally. How would you then be able to save the grand princes from being shot dead?

No, such a detachment should be recruited in Petrograd, but finding the right people there is also a problem. The discipline lacks dreadfully all over the country, and everyone interprets the definition of "the revolutionary necessity" in his own way. Chaos reigns everywhere. After the October overthrow the wine warehouses have been plundered. To stop this outrage Bolsheviks are sending one detachment after another to the warehouses, but instead of taking the proper actions the detached ones get dead drunk, too. The death penalty for the plunder of the wine warehouses has to be announced, and in some of the wine warehouses in the basements of the Winter Palace the machine guns are installed. But even after that all the mayhem was only over when there was no more wine left.

All this isn't good for Dulber. The discipline, the awareness of the importance of the task, the line of commands — these are three pillars, which the mysterious detachment of Commissar Zadorozhny leans on. Preparing the estate to be defended by his detachment, he didn't even cast a thought to turn the Romanovs over to the executioners from Yalta, Sevastopol or any other place. He is waiting for "a telegram from the north" and not for an order of the Sevastopol Soviet, as he declares to the local Bolsheviks. He had an order from Petrograd, and he was following it. The order of comrade Lenin was to save the Romanovs whatever it may cost. Even if it costs his own life. To perform such a task very different people are needed. Where can Ilyich find them? Nowhere except for Petrograd. If we accept that comrade Zadorozhny's detachment could have been of "Petrograd origin," we see a very interesting scenario. Grand Prince Alexander Mikhailovitch noted in his memoirs the month when Zadorozhny's detachment appeared in the Crimea, "In November the Sevastopol Soviet had a very well protected fortress." Thus, the folks arrived in the Crimea in November.

"The events of the five following months proved the anxiety of our new jailors," the grand prince notes further. It means that the Romanovs' epic was over in April. We can easily check this fact: the marching-in of the German troops in the Crimea, which took place early in April 1918, put an end to the events we are talking about.

On the other hand, the Bolshevik take-over took place on October 25. Well, let's make a simple calculation: the beginning of April minus five months makes early in November. Let's deduct four to five days, needed to travel from Petrograd to the Crimea, and we get a stunning result! **It was not just in November, it was early in November 1917 (new style!), when Lenin sent comrade Zadorozhny with a secret mission to the Crimea!** A few days after the Bolsheviks' takeover.

The only task of this high quality detachment is to save the lives of a few Romanovs who are not the pretenders to the throne. And who are the relatives of the British monarchs.[1] Ilyich sends the extremely responsible "comrades" to the Crimea at the moment, when his government is denounced to maximum two weeks' existence. At the very moment, when he is trying to attend all the congresses and meetings at once, when the Soviet power has just started to spread over the country. Every reliable person and detachment counts. And Vladimir Ilyich sends Zadorozhny to the Crimea, where the power is not in the hands of Bolsheviks yet and where his detachment will not be establishing the power of the workers and peasants, but will be safeguarding the grand princes.

Didn't Ilyich have any other problems in the first most complicated days after the take-over than to arrange the safeguarding of some of the crown-bearing family members? You-hoo, historians! How can you explain the execution of Nicholas II's family? Was it

---

[1] Of course, almost all the Romanovs were to some extent related to all the European monarchs. Here the situation is a bit different: Dowager Empress Maria Feodorovna, mother of Nicholas II, is the sister of Dowager Queen of Great Britain. She is the aunt of the British King George V.

Lenin's revenge for his brother? Did he want to eliminate all the Romanovs? Was Vladimir Ilyich a bloodthirsty maniac? This are blanks, which are to cover the essence of the historical situation. The miraculous saving of the Romanovs by Lenin and Zadorozhny can open our eyes on the revolution in general.

The wife of Felix Yusupov, Irina Romanova-Yusupova, lives next to the Dulber Estate in the Koreiz estate. By the way, she is the granddaughter of Alexander III. This Russian emperor once hanged the brother of Vladimir Lenin — Alexander Ulyanov.[1] Many historians consider the execution of Nicholas II's family to be a personal revenge of the proletarian leader Lenin for the killing of his brother. But one more granddaughter of the Emperor lives in the Crimea, and nobody has any plans regards killing her. Leave alone the granddaughter — Alexander III's wife and daughter live in Dulber, and *they are safeguarded from the massacre by Lenin's order!* Where is Lenin's famous logic? There is no trace of it, but there is more than enough of Lenin's flexibility. Just one question: who forced Ilyich into saving his deadly enemies by using his fabulous flexibility!?

Only the orchestrators of our revolution could have made Lenin save those, to whom they had certain commitments themselves. Lenin's situation is traditional — he has to keep his commitments and save the Romanovs. But he cannot reveal the reason of that to anybody: neither to the Soviets in Yalta and Sevastopol, nor to the comrades from the Sovnarkom. But it's possible to find ONE smart and honest person and charge him with this task, just because you are sure of his whole-hearted faithfulness. The surname of this Bolshevik is Zadorozhny. He will be in charge of organization under this task: to talk to various "comrades," to settle the conflicts. He speaks the same language with the Crimean Bolsheviks, and they consider him to be an insider.

---

[1] Usually the cause of Alexander Ulyanov's execution is not given in details. He simply participated in the assassination of the Tsar. "I was preparing some components of the bombs, which were to be used for the purpose, namely a part of the nitric acid for making the dynamite and a part of white dynamite, the quantity of which I refuse to reveal; I was also preparing some lead bullets in order to fill the bombs with them. To prepare the bullets I cut lead into pieces and made the bullets, not putting any strychnine in them, though. Then I received two cylinder shaped tins, which I filled with dynamite and with the strychnine–filled bullets," this is the testimony of Ilyich's brother, given during the investigation. Did you understand this? He poisoned the elements of the bombs with strychnine. What is he then? An innocent victim of the Tsar repressions? Or a nasty terrorist?

But Lenin has a problem of a different kind. Who should the detachment be made of? You can find one reasonable person to perform the task, but how can you find twenty to thirty revolutionary sailors and soldiers, disciplined enough and committed to a single idea? Especially if the idea is to save the mother, the sister, the niece, and the uncle of the loathed dethroned monarch. The "allies" help Lenin here. Together with the task to save the Romanovs the proletarian leader is given the "tool" to perform the task — a special detachment of the "revolutionary" sailors. Only the intelligence services of the "allies" were able to conduct a successful operation for saving the Romanovs under total havoc. Not all of the Romanovs, not the Imperial family, but those Romanovs, who the British and the French wanted to keep alive. The family of the former Emperor and his brother Michael were "dearer" for the "allies" being dead, that's why nobody was trying to save them. Only the western intelligence services were able to recruit this cohesive detachment with the cast-iron discipline, where only one person would maintain all contacts with the outer world — Mr. Zadorozhny. *Because he is the only real Bolshevik!*

You can imagine a revolutionary sailor from 1917–1918: cartridge-belts crisscrossing his chest, an angry face, he is ready to grab his gun and shoot at any moment. Among them there are many anarchists, who don't acknowledge *any power* at all. And now a "young man" calls them traitors of the revolution and threatens them with gallows. I haven't seen the revolutionary sailors alive, thank God for that, but I think that the words of the Yalta Soviet representative should have caused their stormy reaction. He should have been called a traitor in return and definitely should have been told to back off. Or they would have gone down to him to sort out who this "civil crum" that had called them traitors was. Or would have thrown a hand grenade at him. This would have been like this if there had been any true "brethren" and "comrades" in the detachment of Zadorozhny...

The Yalta Soviet representative was shaking the air in vain. The machine gunners from Sevastopol were silent. From time to time, they threw small stones or cigarette butts at him.

Because they are not those who they pretend to be. Hence their reaction. *The sailors from comrade Zadorozhny's detachment simply... speak Russian with a strong British accent, or don't speak Russian at all!*

It looks as if the detachment was manned by the staff of the western intelligence services. That's why they didn't tell the young man from the Yalta Soviet to get lost, they didn't have any discussions with him and didn't smash his face. If I can't speak any English and still want to be taken for an American, I just should be silent and not react to anything. I might throw something at my enemy, though. The other members of the detachment were Russians. It's impossible to make a "revolutionary" detachment of foreigners only — it will be easily noticed.

Regarding the discipline in the Russian part of the detachment, it's not less strict than in the "English-speaking" and "French-speaking" parts. Since we didn't see kind Bolsheviks or kind revolutionary sailors at that time, we might come to an interesting conclusion: there were no Bolsheviks in the detachment at all except for comrade Zadorozhny! All the Russians in the detachment are the officers, who are committed monarchists. That's why it looks very logical that the detachment has arrived from Petrograd, where the intelligence services of the "the allies" have their headquarters in Russia, where there are a lot of their colleagues in the Russian intelligence services, and other people devoted to the dynasty. One can find them very quickly and thus establish a detachment of 20 to 30 people with a "bullet-proof" warrant from comrade Lenin. The Russian officers will agree to do it, "the allied" officers will be executing the order. Only they can be so disciplined: the British performing the secret task of their government, and the Russians saving the lives of the innocent Romanovs. After all, the mission is honourable: to save and not to kill.

If one continues to analyze the level of security which Zadorozhny's detachment reached in Dulber one comes to the same conclusion again: they couldn't have done without any foreign assistance.

We can safely say that nobody in the Soviet Russia in 1917–1918 was safeguarded in a better way. Neither the Smolny and the Kremlin, nor Lenin and Trotsky. *Nobody except Alexander Mikhailovitch and his travel companions.* After the Bolshevik overthrow the apathy is spread all over the country, and the new leaders of the country have no guards. The astonishing negligence, which usually lasts till the first failure. In the middle of December 1918, the first assassination was attempted on Lenin. He is travelling by car with his sister and Fritz Platten, who had arranged the "sealed railway car," and the driver.[1] The shots sound — Ilyich is lightly wounded in his arm. There are neither guards, nor the escort. Nobody. Even after that no arrangements had been taken and because of that Volodarsky would be shot in June 1918, Uritsky would be shot in August, and Ilyich would be wounded in August again — this time the injury would be serious.

The building of the Cheka, where its head, Solomon Uritsky, would be shot, was not safeguarded in earnest. Lenin himself used to go to the meetings without any guards, even though SR terrorists had already started to eliminate Bolsheviks. This is why the representatives of the "allies" are needed in the detachment — in order to raise the security at Dulber to the high "foreign" level, which was inaccessible in Russia collapsing. The Romanovs have the smartest, the most polite, and the most disciplined guards in the whole country. Not all the representatives of the Tsar house are being taken such a good care of, only the needed ones are. The family of Nicholas II is guarded by the ill-mannered cavemen, stealing private belongings from the former emperor's family members, and in the

---

[1] For more details regarding the "sealed railway car" and the part of the British intelligence services in arranging Lenin's transfer via Germany read Starikov N. "1917. Key to the 'Russian" Revolution." M.: Yauza, 2008.

Crimea, according to Wrangel, "the guards, who were safeguarding the dowager empress and the grand princes, treated them with respect and attention."

And then... then, in accordance with the canon of drama, the Romanovs' story comes to its culmination.

"Around midnight, Zadorozhny knocked at the door of our bedroom and asked me to come out. He whispered in a husky voice,

— We are in a difficult situation. Let's discuss what to do. The gang from Yalta has shot him dead nevertheless...

— Who? Orlov?

— No, Orlov is sleeping in his bed. He is okay. They have shot that babbler. They have lost the patience, exactly as he said, and when he returned back empty handed, they shot him on his way to Yalta. Sevastopol has just called and told us to get ready for an attack. They are sending five trucks with soldiers to us, but Yalta is closer than Sevastopol. I'm not afraid of machine guns, but what if they send the artillery from Yalta? You rather don't go to bed and be ready for everything. If we have a hard time, you could at least load the rifles.

I could not help smiling. My wife was right.

— I understand that it looks odd, — Zadorozhny added, — but I want you to survive till morning. If we succeed, you will be saved.

— What do you want to say? Has the government decided to release us?

— Don't ask questions. Get ready, — he rushed away, leaving me absolutely puzzled."[1]

Thus, the Bolsheviks from Yalta, angry over Zadorozhny's "rudeness," the indistinct explanations from Moscow and the unclear position of Sevastopol decided to act and attack Dulber. The cause of these drastic actions is clear — the German troops are approaching Yalta. The prisoners can escape. Just like a similar cause — the approaching of the Czechoslovak legion — will be used as an official pretext for liquidation of Nicholas Romanov and his family. The shooting of all the Romanovs from Dulber would be an ideal solution. The Bolsheviks from Yalta proposed to Moscow that the Romanovs should be liquidated "at the attempt to flee." But apparently, they have not received a positive answer or they might have received the answer which from their point of view was a treason of the revolution.

---

[1] Romanov A. Memoirs. Moscow: AST, 2008. P. 339.

That's why the Bolsheviks from Yalta decide to attack the treasonable detachment of "Bolshevik" Zadorozhny. In his turn, he is ready to protect his prisoners to the bitter end. This is a very important point. Earlier all the contacts were limited to the talks with a young guy in breeches from the Yalta Soviet, now a real clash between the imaginary revolutionary sailors and the real ones was ahead. This fact is so unusual that even Grand Prince Alexander Mikhailovitch doesn't know how to call it. So that the real background of these events did not appear between the lines of his memoirs. That's why the grand prince "falls asleep" in the pages of his memoirs. He "wakes up" after everything is over, thus omitting the following:

"When I opened my eyes again, I saw Zadorozhny. He was standing in front of me and shaking me by my shoulder. There was a bright smile on his face.

— What time is it now, Zadorozhny? How many minutes have I slept?

— Minutes? — he laughed. You mean hours! It's 4 in the morning. The trucks with armed guards and machine guns have just arrived from Sevastopol.

— I don't understand anything. Those... from Yalta... they should have arrived long ago. If...

— If... what? — he shook his head and rushed to the port.

At six o'clock in the morning the telephone rang. I heard Zadorozhny's loud voice. He was talking with agitation, "Yes, right... I shall do as you order..." He went out to the terrace. For the first time in these five months he looked confused.

— Your Imperial Majesty, — he said with a downcast look. — A German general will be here in one hour.

— A German general? You have gone mad, Zadorozhny. What happened?

— Nothing, so far, — he said slowly. — But I am afraid that in case you don't take me under your protection, something can happen to me.

— How can I protect you? I am arrested by you.

— You are free. Two hours ago, the Germans took Yalta. They have just called and threatened to hang me if anything happens to you.

My wife was riveting eyes on him. She thought that Zadorozhny had gone mad.

— Listen, Zadorozhny! Do not talk nonsense! The Germans are thousand *versts*[1] from the Crimea!

— I managed to keep the German troops' movement in secret from you. The Germans occupied Kiev last month and were moving eastward at the speed of twenty to thirty versts per day. For God's sake, your Imperial Majesty, please, don't forget that I have not done you any harm! I was just following the orders!

It was so touching to see how this giant was trembling due to the approaching German troops and how he was asking me to protect him.

— Don't worry, Zadorozhny, — I told him, tapping him on his shoulder. — You have treated me perfectly well. I have nothing against you.

— And what about their Majesties, Grand Princes Nikolay and Pyotr Nikolayevich?

We both laughed, and my wife have calmed Zadorozhny by promising that none of the grand princes would complain about him to the Germans."[2]

One can understand why Zadorozhny was so worried about *his own fate*. His commissar heart was not bleeding for his detachment. He is worried about his own fate, because it looks as if he is the *only* Bolshevik in his odd detachment. Any minute now the Germans, having seen enough of the revolutionary sailors' wrongdoings in the Crimea, could hang him not without having the situation sorted out. Indeed, for a rather long time, the German deep divers would be taking from the sea up the corpses of the officers drowned alive and STANDING in rows at the Crimean coasts due to the weight tied to their feet...

---

[1] Translator's note: Versta is an obsolete Russian unit of length about 1.07 km.

[2] Romanov A. Memoirs. Moscow: AST, 2008. P. 340–341.

Have you ever seen a Bolshevik commissar, who is happy because the grand princes are pleased with him? And not a usual commissar, but Lenin's envoy? Exactly due to this Zadorozhny can look straight into Lenin's eyes — he has been up to his task. The arrival of the German troops should not confuse us — there are no British or French troops nearby, and there can't be any. They will actually appear in the southern part of Russia a year later. That's why the saving of the Romanovs is considered to be the Germans' credit. Since almost all the prisoners in Dulber are remote or near relatives of... the Kaiser, as well.

Then an extremely touching scene takes place. Either Zadorozhny turns the cards over or Grand Prince Alexander Mikhailovitch understands what kind of detachment is taking care of him. **Anyway, contrary to all the logic, he asks the German authorities to let exactly these people continue safeguarding him!** Surely, Zadorozhny and his people will fight for the grand prince to the bitter end. This is an order, this is their secret mission. The German commanders don't know about this, and they should not know anything, that's why they are deeply astonished at Romanov's request. Kindly pay attention to the fact that for the first time not the author of this book, but Grand Prince Alexander Mikhailovitch himself put the word "revolutionary" in inverted commas! It's HIS slip of the pen! A Freudian slip!

"At seven o'clock sharp the German general arrived in Dulber. I shall never forget how astonished he was when I asked him to let the whole detachment of the **"revolutionary"** sailors headed by Zadorozhny safeguard Dulber and Ay Todor. He apparently thought that I had gone mad. 'But this is absolutely impossible!' he exclaimed in German, totally confused by the lack of logic. Didn't I realize that Emperor Wilhelm II and my nephew the Crown Prince would never forgive him for leaving "these terrible killers" at large close to His Majesty's relatives? I had to give my word that I especially would write to his patrons and undertake the full responsibility for this "crazy idea." And even after having said that the general kept on murmuring something about these 'Russian dreamers.'"[1]

Baron Wrangel fully confirms these facts with one little difference: that was not Alexander Mikhailovitch, but Grand Prince Nikolay Nikolayevich, who rejected the German guards. The strange affection to the "revolutionary sailors" is explained by the special situation, when the former Russian commander-in-chief can't be safeguarded by the Germans, "The next day after the Germans had occupied Koreiz, the representatives of the German military commanders visited Grand Prince Nikolay Nikolayevich in the Dulber Estate, where all the members of the Emperor's family gathered. Grand Prince Nikolay Nikolayevich informed the visitors via the general Staal that he was ready to obey if the German military commanders liked to consider him being a war prisoner. If their arrival is a private visit, he couldn't find the opportunity to accept them. The German military commanders were very polite and assured that they fully understood the feelings of the grand prince, and asked whether they could be of any use for him. They assured that the grand prince would be absolutely safe, and that the German command would take all the measures to safeguard him. Baron Staal by the order of the grand prince informed that the former didn't lack anything and would not need the German guards, preferring the Russian guards, which the German command had allowed him to keep."[2]

Poor German General — he stayed completely perplexed. And Wrangel himself doesn't pay attention to a surprising situation, when the sailors with "impudent awful" faces, as he describes them, showed themselves in the best light, safeguarding such high-ranking persons.

Let's, however, also have some compassion for the Soviet historians, who had to explain these miracles somehow. In order to perform this complicated task, they have chosen three ways. The first way is the simplest one: not to explain anything at all and to skip a great part of our history. Recently the remains of the dowager empress were reburied in St. Petersburg. It was not possible not to ask the question: how did she manage to get out from the strife-struck Russia? The explanation given officially was very sketchy: the Romanovs were arrested and exiled to the Crimea, where they were living under home arrest. Then the Germans came, and the arrested Romanovs were saved.

---

[1] Romanov A. Memoirs. Moscow: AST, 2008. P. 342.

[2] Wrangel P. Notes. (http://militera.lib.ru/memo/russian/vrangel1/01html)

The second way can't be called original, either: all what happened is explained by the unpredictability of the revolutionary times. Like the revolution is a power of nature, which can't be controlled, and everything is possible, and everything can happen. Nicholas II had no luck, but the fortune smiled upon the Romanovs in Dulber. Naturally, not a word has been said about this fortune, which is too selective and well organized.

The third way to conceal the truth is a more advanced one against the first two, but it is beneath criticism, too. This way, as well as the previous two ones, is aimed at those who have not read the memoirs of the grand prince, or at those who have read the memoirs, but have not noticed anything special in them. The explanation in this case is as follows: the members of the Sevastopol Soviet were pilots, who had been trained at the aviation school, established by Grand Prince Alexander Mikhailovitch. Like they were dragging out for five months and then saved the Romanovs. Not without a reason Zadorozhny, presenting himself at the first meeting, says, "I served at your aviation school in 1916." The hapless historians draw their conclusions from this fact.

Okay, let's suppose that the Sevastopol Soviet, which in reality mostly consisted of sailors, was mainly made of pilots. Let's suppose that Lenin's envoy Yuri Gaven-Daumanis was a fervent worshipper of the sky power. We can even assume that the strange detachment of comrade Zadorozhny consisted of the pilots only — even this assumption doesn't explain anything. The Sevastopol Bolsheviks have to coordinate all their decisions with Moscow. Comrade Zadorozhny is waiting for "the telegrams from the north," and the

Yalta Soviet is all the time communicating with the Sovnarkom, i.e., Lenin's government. Are there only pilots in the government, as well? Why are Grand Prince Alexander Mikhailovitch and some (not all of them!) of the Romanovs so dear for Ilyich and Trotsky, Sverdlov, and Uritsky that they arrange for them (and not for themselves!) a little oasis of the good, the old tsarist time with the polite guards and good food in the ruined Russia?

One more question is quite natural here: why did the British save not only the elderly empress, but some other members of the Romanov family, too? We have the answer. Chaos, war, and anarchy in Russia can be cultivated and supported, but nobody knows what the outcome of all these occurrences will be. No one knows in advance whether the Civil War will result in Russia's breaking up into dozens of "democratic" and "independent" republics or whether our country will manage to keep its kernel at the cost of incredible efforts. In some circumstances, the rebirth of the monarchy in Russia might be beneficial for the British. Not the rebirth of the huge empire as before, just Russia's rebirth in a reduced shape, headed by a dependent and not self-maintained person. That's why it's necessary to have in stock some people who could in case of certain scenarios take the vacant Russian throne: some Romanovs should stay alive. When you decide who to choose, the main criteria will be the predictability and the facile nature of the person. Along with such Romanovs the members of their families and their relatives, who happened to be nearby, were saved, too. There might have been some other reasons for saving exactly these representatives of the Romanov dynasty. By the way, the fate of Nicholas II was decided in these days, too. The former Russian Emperor and his innocent children had no chances to survive. The British intelligence services were preparing for them barrels with sulphuric acid and a godforsaken ditch instead of a gravestone...

The operation on saving the Romanovs was successful, because Lenin was covering it up first from the Smolny, and then from the Kremlin. Without any doubt, he knew why the British had become guardians for some of the members of Romanov's family, but he was not afraid of that. The history has confirmed that Lenin was right: the saved grand princes were of no use for the "allies." It was decided not to restore the monarchy in Russia. And Ilyich has once again demonstrated his flexibility to the orchestrators of the Russian revolution: one can do business with him in very special and incredible situations. He is needed. Now let's turn to the dates again — the honest Bolshevik Zadorozhny met the Germans in **Dulber in April 1918**. At the same time, Lenin writes in his works a lot about the bloodless victory of the revolution in Russia.

But from the point of view of the British, Vladimir Ilyich has done his job. And in **May 1918** the mutiny of the Czechoslovak legion takes place, and the Civil War starts. Then in the middle of **July** the Tsar's family will be shot dead. And in **August 1918** the first serious assassination attempt on Lenin himself will take place.

To have a full picture we have to get a clear understanding of the role of the never-to-be forgotten Alexander Kerensky, who was playing into the hands of the "allies" in the affair of saving the needed part of the Romanovs. Grand Prince Alexander Mikhailovitch met the February Revolution in Kiev, because he had been appointed the commander-in-chief of the Russian aviation at the Southern Front in 1916. The headquarters of the Southern Front was located in Kiev. From the very beginning, the revolution didn't seem to be frightful, but then as if at the word of command the tone of the press sharply changed. The campaign on discrediting the Russian State by spattering dirty words on its centuries-long backbone, the ruling dynasty, started. In the press the Romanovs were called "people's enemies." It appears that these words, as well as the word "commissar," have been invented not by Bolsheviks, but by their "democratic" predecessors.

In the meantime, the dark clouds were slowly thickening above the heads of the members of the House of Romanov: first, the Petrograd Soviet demanded that all the members of the Russian Imperial House were arrested, no exceptions, and the dowager empress among them. However, the Provisional Government didn't arrest Maria Feodorovna, but her freedom of movement was limited. The wife of the gone Tsar Alexander III was Danish. That's why the Danish King's court and Scavenius, the Danish envoy in Russia, petitioned for her, and their efforts were successful: on September 10 (23), 1917, the government of Kerensky (almost at the end of its existence) gave a permit for the dowager empress to leave Russia for Denmark. But this matter didn't develop beyond empty words, and after the October there was nobody to contact with regard to her departure. Thus, Maria Feodorovna got stuck in her empire that was lost in havoc.

For those who wanted to survive in these hard times it was high time to start thinking about their future actions. The grand prince writes in his diary, "Having returned from the General Headquarters, I was trying to figure out what to do with my family, which at that time consisted of the dowager empress, my wife — Grand Princess Xenia Alexandrovna, my sister-in-law — Grand Princess Olga Alexandrovna, my six sons, and Olga's husband Kulikovsky. My daughter Irina and her husband Prince Yusupov, who had been exiled to his estate not far from Kursk for having participated in Rasputin's murder, joined us in the Crimea a bit later..."[1]

In the revolutionary chaos, the place of sojourn plays a decisive role. One should be in the right place at the right time to survive. Or the fortune can direct you to the place of your upcoming timeless death. Grand Prince Alexander Mikhailovitch chooses faultlessly the *only* heaven-sent direction. More precisely — *he* was directed. "Uncle Sandro" humbly calls those whose advice would save him his life "my former subordinates."[2]

What a great number of pilots there was in Russia at that time! In the nearest future the Black Sea Soviets will be overcrowded by the aviators, but for the time being they have tightly occupied the headquarters of the Imperial Army. These "pilots," they are just everywhere, and they always happen to be at all the key points of the grand prince's life.

They are always ready to help at the cost of their own lives, and they always give a *right* advice. They can see everything from a bird's perspective.

"My former subordinates visited me every morning and asked me to go to our estate in the Crimea while it was still possible to get a permit for that from the Provisional Government. There were rumours that Emperor Nicholas II and the Tsar's family would be exiled to Siberia, even though in March he was given guarantees that he would be able to choose between England and the Crimea,"[1] Alexander Mikhailovitch writes in his diary.

---

[1] Romanov A. Memoirs. Moscow: AST, 2008. P. 321.

[2] Ib. P. 326.

Do you remember how Kerensky motivated moving Nicholas' family to Tobolsk, how he explained to the former Tsar the reasons why he was not allowed to go to the Crimea? Due to security reasons alone. And "the former subordinates" of the grand prince know for sure that the overthrown monarch was the only one whom Kerensky rejected going to the warm sea, and that Alexander Mikhailovitch Romanov was given a permission to go there. It was important to ask him at that moment, to do it immediately. "Uncle Sandro" will ask for the permission and go with his family to the safe Crimea, and Nicholas II, asking for the same permission, will be exiled with his family to Siberia. Again a crossroads of destiny: some of the Romanovs will go abroad, some of the them will go to the eternity.

And again, we see more "miracles" here: the Soviets, which according to Kerensky were so eager to arrest the former monarch and were so much against his departure, in the case with the "the people's enemy" Alexander Mikhailovitch Romanov have no objections. The Provisional Government via its commissar gives an order for Alexander Mikhailovitch to immediately go to the Crimea together with his family. The local Soviet approves this decision, because "the people's enemies being so close to the frontline jeopardize the revolutionary Russia." It cannot be denied that the Soviet is right: all the Romanovs are extremely dangerous, that's why they should be sent far away from the frontline: some are sent to the Crimea, the others are sent to Siberia...

Talking about the miraculous saving of Grand Prince Alexander Mikhailovitch, we can't help remembering his three brothers. His elder brother — Nikolay Nikolayevich, an acrimonious man, identified himself as a republican and a democrat. Here is the description of him given by Felix Yusupov, "He was a man of a contradictory temper. A scientist, a historian, a person of superior intelligence, and independent thinking... He was a very liberal person with regard to his political views. He scathingly criticized the status quo of that time and was suffering for his views having been exiled to his estate Grushevka in Kherson province."[1]

---

[1] Romanov A. Memoirs. Moscow: AST, 2008. P. 326.

Having an access to the family archives of the House of Romanov, this crown-bearing extremist has published some works about the times of Alexander I, thus having made himself a name of a professional historian. After the February Revolution, having no idea of what was going on, he shamelessly offered Kerensky to pay his own money for the monument to the Decembrists. Grand Prince Nikolay Nikolayevich Romanov despite his affection for history apparently forgot that the Decembrists had been planning to exterminate the Romanov's dynasty. He might remember this a bit later, though. When one early morning in January 1919 the new Decembrists — the Bolsheviks — will take him and his brother George Mikhailovitch, a well-known coin-collector, for execution.

Oh, yes, you are right: it was this poor historian that Maxim Gorky came to defend in front of Lenin. This family was really odd: Lenin is saving one brother, and two other brothers of our memoir-writer are shot dead in the Peter and Paul Fortress. And one more brother, Grand Prince Sergei Mikhailovitch, is thrown down a mine in Alapayevsk after being shot in his head. He was also a republican, and after the February Revolution he was not happy with the security of the abdicated Emperor's family, which he found to be not reliable enough. Oh, well, Bolsheviks have safeguarded him perfectly well...

It's a shame that the proletarian historians didn't tell us about the different fates of two brothers — Alexander Mikhailovitch and Nikolay Mikhailovitch. This is another evidence of Ilyich's unbelievable fantastic flexibility. If the Messers, who can be useful for the revolution, ask him to save and safeguard the members of the tyrant' family, he is ready to do this; when it's not necessary any more, he will not have mercy on the brothers of the person saved by such enormous efforts. No dogmas, no morals — just pure expediency. It's exactly with such attitude of mind that the wars are won, and the revolutions are made...

---

[1] Yusupov F. Memoirs (http//www.hrono.info./dokum/191_dok/yusup_rasput4.html)

But all this will happen later. All the sufferings of the Dulber prisoners came to an end, when the Crimea got occupied by the Germans. After a half of a year the German troops would leave the Crimea, because their motherland would lose the war. On November 24, 1918, the British military vessels appeared in the Sevastopol harbours. Once again the British demonstrated their "great-heartedness": they were not going to save all the prisoners of the Crimean estates, but only those who had been safeguarded by Zadorozhny, namely Dowager Empress Maria Feodorovna and her family members. The elderly empress conducted herself with great honour and refused to flee in secret at night from her former empire. She demanded that all her friends, servants, and kith, with whom she had shared all the hardships, were evacuated with her. Reluctantly, the British agreed, but due to some reasons it took five months to get ready for the departure.

The dowager empress was warmly met by her sister, Queen Anna, and her son, the British monarch George V, on May 8, 1919, in London. The British monarch generously showered his aunt with courtesies, paid her bills, and, of course, he didn't say a word about his refusal to provide an asylum for his cousin's family, thus leaving her children and grandchildren to die. And his courtesies were not altruistic, as well as the whole plan for destroying the mighty Russia. It's all about the jewellery box, where the former Russian Tsarina kept one of the best jewellery collections in the world.

The British knew that Maria Feodorovna had managed to take the box with her when leaving Russia. Being Danish, the former Russian empress settled down in Copenhagen. Right after her death on October 13, 1928, a special envoy from London, Pyotr Bark, who was the last finance minister of the tsarist Russia, was sent to Copenhagen. He managed to persuade the daughters of the empress to hand the jewellery over to him for Great Britain to keep it safe.

Hardly have they managed to bury Maria Feodorovna, when her jewellery box was already on its way to London. Even today these jewels can been seen on the members of the British Royal Family on festive occasions. It's an oval shaped diamond brooch with a diamond pin, owned today by the princess of Kent, a V-shaped diamond tiara with a unique sapphire in the middle, owned by Queen Elizabeth II, and many other valuables. There are about several dozens of them. Don't imagine anything bad: the valuables were not stolen or appropriated — the British monarchs bought them from the Tsarina's successors. The only question is what price they were bought at, and whether this price was adequate to their value...

The Romanovs and the Yusupovs were leaving a country struck by the Civil War, where its first Emperor Peter I had once correctly understood the mechanism and the idea of the imperial might. The first "stone" in the foundation of the future might of the Russian State was Peter's small boat. Really soon after that the mighty Russian Navy was able to defend the sea borders of the country. It's not enough to provoke a new time of troubles in Russia and to kill her monarchs. In order to destroy the Russian Empire the British definitely needed to destroy the basis of the power of every country — its Navy.

The hunt for the Russian water craft has started...

CHAPTER 7

Why Lenin and Trotsky Sent the Russian Navy to the Bottom

> Russia has only two allies: its army and its navy. Everyone else will turn against us at the first possible opportunity.
>
> *Emperor Alexander III*

It's terrible to see the agony of a ship. Like a wounded human being, it's bending of pain, it's convulsing, it's breaking in two, and it's going down, raising horrible deep-chested cries. It's twice as terrible if your own ship is perishing. And it's intolerable if it's you who is sending it to the bottom!

The torpedo-boat destroyer Fidonisi was floating in the beams of the sun going down. It was impossible to miss at the distance of four cables. A torpedo slid into the water — one second — and the torpedo-boat broke in two, as if an unknown horrible force had torn it from the inside. Its stern and stem rose above the water separated from each other and having turned to the right broadside, they disappeared in the water.

Destroying Fidonisi was a signal for destruction of the other ships. They were being sunk in a proper way! It was not enough to just open the flood valves. A ship which is sunk in this simple way can be easily weighed up, water can be pumped off, and the ship can be put into operation again. If the ship stays at the bottom of the sea for a short period of time, the damage of the ship is minimal! The approach to the task was very serious in this case. Special teams installed blasting cartridges in the engine space, they opened the flood valves and flat valves, and even undogged the portholes. They were doing it with tears in their eyes and lumps in their throats. Having done what they had to do, they jumped in the rowboats and rowed further away, and kept watching…

One after another the ships, destroyed by the Russian sailors, were going to the bottom of the Tsemes Bay: torpedo-boats of Novik type

Khadjibey, Kaliakria, Pronzitelny, Leitenant Shestakov, and Kapitan Leitenant Baranov. Torpedo-boats Smetlivy and Stremitelny went down the sea. Twelve ships in total.

Now the most important task could be performed. A colossus of the battleship Svobodnaya Rossiya was still dominating in the waters of the Tsemes Bay. The torpedo-boat destroyer Kerch approached the battleship and fired two salvos. Its commander, Senior Lieutenant Vladimir Kukel saw the torpedoes damaging the beauty and the pride of the Russian Black Sea Navy. The first torpedo exploded under the ship, the second one passed by. For such a giant one hit didn't matter at all. The ship dominated over the waters as before. Only a column of black smoke rose above its conning tower. The third torpedo was sent, but even after that the ship was still afloat and didn't even heel over. The fourth torpedo exploded, but the battleship Svobodnaya Rossiya was built with such a great skill that even after that it managed to remain afloat!

Kukel couldn't believe his eyes — the ship didn't want to go to the bottom and was fighting its chance to live by all the possible means. The next, fifth, torpedo, aimed at the midpoint of its hull, turned all of a sudden, retracing its course and sped back to the torpedo-boat itself! Alas, the battleship was doomed, and everything finished with the sixth torpedo... There was a terrible explosion. A column of the white and black smoke rose above the masts, covering almost the whole ship. The sailors saw a terrible picture after the smoke shredded away. The armour from both broadsides of the ship had fallen off, and there was a huge through opening. Two minutes more have passed, and the battleship started to heel over on its right broadside.

Several minutes later, the ship turned upside down with its backbone up. And it was moaning as if it was a drowning person. The huge turrets with three 12-inch guns on each of them, which broke off their resting places, were rolling from the deck of Svobodnaya Rossiya into the water, smashing everything on their way and creating high water heads and fountains of splashes. In half an hour, the hull of the battleship was already under water.

Now it was the turn of the torpedo-boat destroyer Kerch itself. On June 18, 1918 about ten o'clock in the evening the last radiogram was sent on the air, "To all. The torpedo-boat destroyer Kerch sank, having destroyed some of the ships of the Black Sea Navy, whose captains had preferred sinking the ships instead of disgracefully giving them up to the Germans."

The Russian Black Sea Navy ceased to exist. Svobodnaya Rossiya went to the bottom...

Each state has two footholds. One of the footholds is the army, which protects the land, and another one, the navy, protects the seas and oceans. These footholds are not equal. The overland army, being totally defeated, gets restored rather quickly. New generations, not battle-tested, are coming, and it's only necessary to give them uniform and equip them with weapons. This is a cost-based process, but all the countries that pretend to be super states could always afford such expenses. The race of armaments for the navy can't be compared to the race of armaments for the overland army according to the respective values. None of the super states are able to up and build a new navy. That's why the destruction of the overland army is considered to be a defeat, while the destruction of the navy is considered to be a CATASTROPHE.

After the Russian power had lost its legitimacy, and the main pretenders to the throne had been eliminated, the next task for the British was to destroy the Russian Navy. Only then the liquidation of the Russian Empire, the rival of the British State, could be considered successful. All the possible means were used to reach the goal: pressure on the Bolshevik government, military destruction, "cooperation" with the White Guard.

Let's be fair: the "allies" have persistently been pursuing their goal during all the new Russian time of troubles. And they have brought their plan into life. Russia appeared to have practically no navy if compared to the pre-war time. After the terrible years of collectivization and the dreadful years of World War 2 the Soviet Union would manage to build a mighty ocean navy. Only to be again reduced to nothing, for the second time, in the same century, by the sly political intriguers. The almost finished built aircraft carrier would be recycled as junk metal, and the submarines of the newest series would be sawn into pieces during the *Perestroika* and the following chaos of Yeltsin's reign. Are you surprised? You shouldn't be. All this already happened in the history of Russia in 1918. We have just forgotten about it...

After the defeat in the Russo-Japanese War of 1905–1906, when the best ships of the Russian Navy had been lost, the government of Nicholas II worked out an extensive shipbuilding program. This

Russian program coincided with the new race of armaments for the navy in the world. The last word in the naval science was the upgraded type of a battleship, which was called a dreadnought. They have received this name, which became an appellative, from Dreadnought, the name of the pilot British ship built in 1905–1906. These ships were built at a state-of-the-art level in both science and engineering, and were more uncrushable and unsinkable than their predecessors. These huge, but not very high ships equipped with major calibre guns, have become a weighty argument in the upcoming global encounter. All the rival empires started to build their dreadnoughts at outperforming speeds. Both the cost of the ships and the quantity of the armour used for these "monsters" were breathtaking. These were exactly the dreadnoughts that embodied the might of the state and its weight on the international arena. The armour plated costly giants, "the devourers of the budgets," were the proof of the financial well-being, the prosperity, the high level of science, engineering, and industry.

Moreover, the development of these armour plated monsters went so quickly that in five years they started considering the production of "super dreadnoughts," which were twice as powerful as the previous generation of dreadnoughts…

No dreadnoughts were in commission early in World War 1 because Russia started to build them later than other countries. However, there were *twelve* ships at different stages of construction.[1] The last dreadnoughts should have come into commission in 1917. However, the destiny had other plans. *At the end of the Civil War Russia had only four dreadnoughts, and only three of them were in really pitiable, but still battle-ready condition.* Let's take our hats off, remember the perished ships and ask ourselves a reasonable question: what pest has hit them? Has the Russian Navy been defeated in the decisive naval battle like it was in the main battle of Tsushima during the Russo-Japanese War? No, the Russian Navy didn't take part in any significant sea battles during World War 1. Why were the losses so tremendous then?

---

[1] Sevastopol, Poltava, Petropavlovsk, Gangut, Izmail, Kinburn, Borodino, Navarin, Empress Maria, Imperatritsa Ekaterina Velikaya, Imperator Alexander III, Imperator Nikolay II.

None of the Russian giant ships "died in the battle," as it should be with every military ship. All these ships became victims of the new Russian time of troubles. The newest and most powerful dreadnoughts Izmail, Kinburn, Borodino, and Navarin have never been "born," because they have been liquidated in the "womb" of the shipyard. What excellent ships they could have been! It was planned to equip them with the most state-of-the-art artillery and antiaircraft armament. But it has never happened. We should not blame Bolsheviks alone for the loss of the ships. It was the Provisional Government that started to liquidate the navy. In summer 1916, the Naval Ministry expected to commission the first ship of this series, Izmail, by autumn 1917. But as soon as the monarchy in Russia had fallen, the government of the "new free Russia" *immediately postponed* the completion of Izmail turrets till the end of 1919, and the completion of the other ships' turrets was postponed until 1920. Then the government of Kerensky completely stopped to finance the ship building. Bolsheviks needed the battleships even less than the Provisional Government. In accordance with the act dated July 19, 1922, the "behemoths" which had not been completed were delisted and, in accordance with the Act of the State Planning Committee dated May 1923, it was permitted to sell the ships abroad. The German company Alfred Kubatz purchased the whole ships to cut into pieces in its docks...

The other Russian dreadnoughts were liquidated by with the most diverse methods: treason, bribes, lies, blackmail — all of them were in the short story about the destruction of our ships. But we should also remember the heroes of this short epic who sacrificed their lives for the Russian Navy!

But let's take it step by step. Before World War 1, the main navy forces were concentrated in the Baltic and the Black Seas. At the first stage of the war, the Baltic Sea Navy was assigned a task of defending the Gulf of Riga and the Gulf of Bothnia from the enemy invasion. The Germans were not active, and the losses on both sides were minimal. In 1915, the Russian Navy got the new dreadnoughts

Sevastopol, Poltava, Petropavlovsk, and Gangut and could be more aggressive, but it was blocked in the local waters by the Germans. However, the actions of the navy became more intense in connection with the German offensive: the ships started to support the land forces. In 1916, seven new Russian submarines of Bars class appeared in the routes of the enemy along with the British submarines sent by the British "allies." In autumn, the German ships tried to break through into the Gulf of Finland and lost seven (!) newest torpedo-boats on our mine barrier. Our losses were two squadron torpedo-boats and one submarine. As we can see, the Russian Navy had not suffered any catastrophic defeats before the new Russian time of troubles began. It was performing its tasks, and the losses of the Germans at that were even higher.

The year of 1917 should have been the year of the Russian offensive at the World War fronts. But the revolutions of this year made the events change the direction. The general decay of the armed forces touched the "organism" of the navy to a high extent. The discipline and the fighting capacity of the ships left much to be desired. Under the governing of Kerensky and Co. the sailors turned from the combatant forces into lumpens, who didn't want to risk their hide in a real battle. They preferred to slaughter their own officers to heroic deaths. The decay was so abysmal that in October 1917, after the Germans had occupied the Moonsund Archipelago, the crews were afraid to put out to sea. The crew of the minelayer Pripyat refused to put the mine barrier in the Soela Strait. The ship committee didn't approve this operation, because the mine barrier should have been put at a distance, which could be reached by the naval guns of the Germans, that's why the operation was considered to be "too dangerous." Other revolutionary ships shamefully fled from the enemy or refused to put out to sea under the funny pretext that "they are shooting there."

And still, the Russian Navy was "snapping": when occupying the Moonsund Archipelago, the Germans lost their torpedo-boats S64, T54, T56, T66, the patrol vessels Altair, Dolphin, Gutheil, Gluckstadt and the minesweeper M31. The Russian Navy lost the armour plated ship Slava and the torpedo-boat destroyer Grom. Here we again see an interesting picture: even despite the lack of discipline and fighting capacity, the Russian Navy was able to inflict tangible losses to the enemy.

Bolsheviks continued to destroy the navy having taken up the baton from the Provisional Government. On January 29, 1918, the Sovnarkom issued a decree on disbanding the tsarist navy and establishing the new Socialist navy. Quite fairly, Lenin started the creation of the "new" navy with total destruction of the "old" one. In the ground forces this would mean a total demobilization, while in the navy Lenin's order resulted in the mass dismissal of career officers, who were admitted to be counterrevolutionaries.

The role of the officer in the navy is indeed more important than in the ground forces. If the "old" army forces, put on edge due to the Bolsheviks' propaganda, were somehow substituted by the Red Army units, which were more or less capable of keeping the frontline, the situation at sea was much worse. The navy without officers was absolutely not battle-ready, and it could not be substituted by some "Red" navy. It wasn't that there were no more officers to command the yelling sailory; it was that professional knowledge and good education were essential to effect the gunnery of the super dreadnoughts. One can't fire a gun at a distance of dozen kilometres if the distance is estimated by eye. After the experts had left, the ships turned into sailing barracks and stopped to be military units. The officers were leaving the navy en masse. Having dismissed all the officers, Bolsheviks immediately put the Baltic Navy out of the game and had them moored at the piers. It was at this moment that very odd things started to happen in the Baltic Sea Navy. Lenin and Trotsky have ordered... to destroy the Baltic Sea Navy...

It happened in the following way. The signing of the Peace Treaty of Brest-Litovsk has become yet another tragedy for the Russian Navy. Article V of the one-sided agreement reads, "Russia will without delay carry out the full demobilization of its army inclusive of those units recently established by the present Government. Furthermore, Russia will either bring her warships into Russian ports and there detain them until the day of the conclusion of a general peace, or disarm them forthwith. Warships of the States which continue in the state of war with the Powers of the Quadruple Alliance, in so far as they are within Russian sovereignty, will be treated as Russian warships."[1]

All this doesn't look terrible, does it? The Russian Navy should be brought to the Russian ports — we would do that, why not? So, the situation doesn't look bad at first, but in fact, the special nature of the navy changes the situation completely. Firstly, the ships are intended to be mostly at sea, secondly, the ships can be moored at the places strictly designed for this purpose, i.e., in the ports, and the number of ports is limited. Not each port is suitable for mooring of the whole navy, which includes huge super dreadnoughts. As a result, when signing the Peace Treaty, nobody paid attention to this issue, and nobody found time to check the ports which the Russian Navy should have been relocated to.

Properly speaking, the ports of the Baltic Sea, where the Russian Navy could have been moored, were very few: Revel (Tallinn), Helsingfors (Helsinki), and Kronstadt. There were no other places with the required infrastructure and with the waters deep enough to moor the ships. Having signed the Peace Treaty of Brest-Litovsk, Russia recognized the independence of Finland and waived its rights for the Baltic territories occupied by Germany, Estonia among them. Therefore, Russia had only one port to relocate its ships to — the port of Kronstadt. The wanderings of the Russian ships started. Firstly, the Germans occupied Revel. A part of the Russian Navy, which was moored there, was relocated to Helsingfors by the means of icebreaking. But staying in the Finnish capital didn't solve the matter — it only left the matter in abeyance for a couple of weeks. Finland has got its independence, as well, and exactly at this moment the Germans approved the request of the "White" Finnish government to support its struggle against the "Red" Finns. On March 5, 1918, the Germans made a landing in Finland and started to move inland. The situation became very unfortunate for the Russian Navy. The "White" Finns and the Germans, having quelled the resistance of the Finnish "Red Guard," were approaching the Helsingfors port. The commander-in-chief of the German squadron made an ultimatum: all the Russian ships moored in Helsingfors should have been disposed to Germany by March 31. It was not surprising that the ultimatum of Berlin was so impudent. After the Peace Treaty had been concluded, the Germans kept blackmailing Bolsheviks all the time, laying down more and more demands. We can understand the way of the Germans — feeling that Bolsheviks were totally helpless military wise, they hurried to get as much as possible from Russia.

---

[1] Shatsillo V. World War 1 1914 — 1918. Facts and Documents. M.: Olma-Press, 2003. P. 385.

But the German government, rushing for the tangible profit, is leaving out one important detail: the crisis situation, which has been provoked by the Germans themselves, makes it impossible to quickly move the German troops from the Eastern Front to the Western Front. It devaluates the benefits Germany got by means of the agreements with Bolsheviks. This is what the "allies" counted on, when they signed a "gentleman's agreement" with the Germans regarding the delivery of Lenin's group to Russia.

In accordance with the agreement made with Germany, the Russian Navy should be immediately relocated to the Russian port of Kronstadt. But it was not possible due to the complicated ice situation. This was the point of the Bolshevik top command. Several days before some Russian ships had successfully managed to move from Revel to Helsingfors by means of icebreaking, thus having proved that such relocation was possible. But the Bolshevik government doesn't order the navy that has recently forged through the ice and ice ridges from Helsingfors to Kronstadt to relocate the ships. Why? It is because Lenin and Trotsky are not worried about saving the ships. Germany demands that the ships should be left in Helsingfors, obviously planning to take them. At the same time, the representatives of the Entente demand that Germans shouldn't seize the ships. The Bolsheviks have to carry out two orders, which cancel each other, and this is what the fate of the proletarian revolution depends on. *Thus, Lenin and Trotsky are looking for a solution that would satisfy the demands of the "allied" Scylla and the German Charybdis, but not for a solution that could SAVE the Russian Navy!*

Soviet and foreign historians have equivocated a lot in order to cover up the real causes of the Bolsheviks' zeal to send their own navy to the bottom. The impenetrable darkness of the lies and falsehood are seldom penetrated by the weak sunbeams of truth, concerning the horrible fate of the Russian ships. The Baltic sailor, Officer Harald Graf writes about the odd position of the Bolshevik government, "The instructions from Moscow were dubious and confusing: now they instruct us to move the ships to Kronstadt, now they order us to let them stay in Helsingfors, now they tell us to prepare the ships for destruction. It made us think that the Soviet government was under pressure."[1]

The Baltic Navy had no commander-in-chief after the officers had been dismissed, and the navy was under the command of the collective body — Tsentrobalt. However, the outlaw roaring sailors can't be used to perform a delicate task. For this a specific performer is needed, who could be blamed for the failure in the worst case. It was Trotsky who found such a person. The instructions of the Centre will be performed by the urgently appointed Alexei Schastny. He is a navy officer, a commander of a ship. His new position corresponds to the rank of admiral, but since Bolsheviks have abolished all the military grades, his title at the moment of his appointment is Namorsi.[2] We can state with confidence that he was the saver of the Baltic Navy. Thanks to him, Russia will preserve its Baltic Sea Navy, and the Nazis will be met at the approaches to Leningrad by the mighty guns of the Russian battleships 23 years later.

Having taken the command of the ships moored in Helsingfors, the new commander found himself in the most difficult situation. Trotsky's plan was that having little time and being under pressure from Moscow, Alexei Schastny would humbly perform all the instructions of the Bolshevik leader and send the ships to the bottom instead of trying to save them. The British intelligence services were not indifferent in this case, either. In order to force Schastny to explode the ships, the British intelligence services forward to him some photocopies of the telegrams from the German command to the Soviet government. We don't know for sure whether they were forged or not, but they should have given Schastny the impression that Lenin and Trotsky acted in accordance with the German instructions and that they were traitors. The "allies" camouflaged their main interest — the total destruction of the Russian Navy — in order to make it look as their concern with regard to the reinforcement of the Entente's enemy. "The marine agent Captain Cromie went to Helsingfors several times to force the Captain of the 1st rank Schastny to sink the navy,"[1] H. Graf writes in his memoirs.

---

[1] Graf H. On Board of Novik. The Baltic Navy During the War and the Revolution. St. Pb.: Gangut, 1997. P. 432.

[2] Translator's note: The Commander of Sea Forces.

Cromie is the very resident of the British intelligence services that will be shot dead by chekists half a year later in the British Embassy in Petrograd. To make Schastny not to be ambivalent about the destruction of the Baltic Navy, the British give him an example of the "selfless service for the motherland." A few kilometres from Helsingfors, at the Russian Navy base in Hanko, there was a layup for the British submarines, which had been sent to the Baltic in 1916. The British submarines E-1, E-8, E-9, C-19, C-26, C-27, C-35, their base Amsterdam, and three steamers were *exploded* by the order of the British command. In some books about these events one can find the references regarding the fact that the British submarines were allegedly exploded because it was not possible to relocate them to the Russian port. This is nonsense, which can be easily cleared up by a simple fact: all the Russian submarines, which had been lying in the same ice, were safely relocated from Helsingfors to Kronstadt. Had the British wanted to save their submarines, they would have easily done that. The British submarines were sent to the bottom not because the Russian sailors busy with their own problems didn't want to save the "allied" ships.

The plan of the "allies" was more cunning. Playing chess, one uses to sacrifice pawns to win. Thus, for the British, the sinking of their own submarines is a blue on blue incident. At the same time, this is a very clear and simple example for the Russian sailors. We,

---

[1] Graf H. On Board of Novik. The Baltic Navy During the War and the Revolution. St. Pb.: Gangut, 1997. P. 432.

British, are exploding *seven* submarines. And you, Russians, explode *all your navy*. In order not to give it to the Germans. The British submarines were exploded under the command of our old friend, Captain Francis Cromie.

A professional British spy is exploding the submarines, and due to this fact, many historians, researching the mentioned period, consider him a submarine officer. But in fact, the brave Captain Cromie served in a different "department." At the same time, to be on the safe side, he conducted the negotiations with a secret organization of the Russian naval officers. The idea which the British spy wanted Schastny and other officers to believe in was very simple: Lenin and Trotsky are performing the task for their German patrons, and that's why they order to leave the damaged ships in the Finnish capital. What should real Russian patriots do in this case?

Pay attention to this point: the British are not suggesting that the squadron should be saved by relocating it to another port. *They cannot advise anything better than to send the ships to the bottom.* This is quite clear — what they need is the total destruction of the Baltic Navy.

Here we will stop for a while and speculate a bit. Germany knows that Lenin mostly fears that the German offensive will be continued. The offensive will destroy the Soviet power, it will destroy everything. Nobody knows, when there is the second chance to conduct the experiment on building the socialist society. Most likely, this chance will never come. This is why Germany can press upon Lenin and blackmail him by the Peace Treaty. "...The one who is against the immediate peace, even though the tremendously painful one, is killing the Soviet power," Lenin writes these days. He needs peace as air. How can the peace be preserved? It is very simple: the Soviet government has to keep the Peace Treaty of Brest-Litovsk and don't give Germany a handle to break it. This is the best way to preserve the peace, which is so much needed by Lenin. The Peace Treaty stipulates that Bolsheviks have only two opportunities. The alternative is very simple: either the ships are relocated to Kronstadt, or they are left disarmed in Finland, which means they are given to Germany. Well, Lenin has two options. The historians also give two estimations of Lenin's and

Trotsky's conduct. The first estimation is that Lenin and Trotsky were German spies, and they acted in the interests of Germany, thus paying back for the money Germany had given them earlier. The second estimation is that Bolsheviks were Red internationalists, but they acted in the interests of their own people.

Let's estimate Lenin's further actions, keeping the previous estimations in mind.

What should a German spy do in this situation?

Under any circumstances, he has to block the Gulf of Bothnia and prevent the Russian Navy from leaving the Finnish capital, as well as to turn over the navy to his German patrons.

What should a patriot of his country do in this situation?

He has to do his utmost to keep the navy, to get it out of a sudden trap and relocate it to Kronstadt.

What does the Bolshevik government do?

The Soviet government does neither the first, nor the second thing: the official order is to meet the demand of the Germans, but to bring the ships into an inoperable condition first.

It means that Lenin chose some third way. Who is interested in bringing the Russian Navy in an inoperable condition? The Germans? No, the Russian Navy is not dangerous for Germany, the Peace Treaty of Brest-Litovsk has already been concluded, and Russian guns are not shooting at Germans any more. Germany need the navy intact with the German crews onboard, in order to use it in the military actions. From the German point of view, scuttling or damaging the ships by Bolsheviks is equal to disobedience. This cannot be the *German spies* supporting their German patrons. But Lenin doesn't want not quarrel with the Germans. Because they don't know themselves what to do with Russia yet.

Had Bolsheviks followed the German will, they would have tried to turn over the navy intact. This is obvious. By the way, very often in different books one can find the following information: the navy should have been blown up in order for it not to be turned over to Germany intact. According to the authors, the ardent revolutionaries with a crystal clear conscience, who had no financial contacts with the German intelligence services, should have acted like this. Suppose that this was so, but in this case it is absolutely inexplicable why it was possible to give Germany half the country and impossible to give it three hundred ships.

Why was it possible to sacrifice Ukraine, Lithuania, Latvia, Poland, Estonia, and Georgia in order to save the revolution, but the navy couldn't have been given to the Germans? If comrades Bolsheviks are so scrupulous when it comes to selling their motherland, they should not have signed any Peace Treaty with the Kaiser at all. Once you let it drop, don't stop. Otherwise, there is no logic — first, we do everything what the Germans demand, and then we enter into a conflict with the Germans because of the navy.

And speaking in general, which interests of the working people required destroying and sinking the Russian Navy? *It was in the interests of the world revolution to keep the only one "Red Navy" in the world, not to damage or destroy it.* On top of everything else, the battleships and dreadnoughts are very expensive, and if due to some unknown reason the new Socialist Russia doesn't need any navy, they could sell it. Later Bolsheviks will sell Russian cultural assets, won't they? Why not sell the ships at once, as well? For the money received they could buy provisions and feed the starving workers in Petrograd, their wives, and children.

So, Lenin's order on the navy destruction doesn't serve the interests of either Germany or Russia, or of all the working people on the planet. Who then was moving Ilyich's pen, when he was writing such a serious order? Who is the mighty Russian Navy a nightmare for? It's for the British, for the nation of shipbuilders and seafarers that the mighty navy of another nation is a nightmare. Exactly due to this, the British sank the French Navy at Aboukir and Trafalgar and tried to avoid battles with Napoleon on land in every possible way.[1] For them the destruction of the Russian Navy is a task of the "top priority," as Ilyich would put it.

---

[1] Before Waterloo, the British had not fought any serious battles, which could be remotely compared to Borodino, Leipzig or Austerlitz, against Napoleon. As usually, they "did honour" to the other members of the coalition. You still don't understand why the landing in Normandy took place in summer 1944 and not in autumn 1941, do you?

The persistent wish of the British to send the Russian Navy to the bottom cannot be explained by their anxiety with regard to the reinforcement of the German Navy in case the Russian ships are captured by them. "In particular, if the German Navy was three times smaller than the British Navy, the Russian Navy was five times weaker than the German one, — the Captain of the 2nd rank H. Graf writes in his book. — Four state-of-the-art battleships were of real importance among the other ships of the Baltic Navy, and their capture by the Germans wouldn't make it possible for the German Navy to compete with the British Navy. Obviously, the British were not afraid of that, and they had their own reasons..."[1]

Bruce Lockhart and Jacques Sadoul permanently hold consultations with Lenin and Trotsky in Moscow. Ilyich is trying to manoeuvre, the British and French spies are pressing. They make an offer to the Bolshevik leader that can't be rejected. The plan of the "allies" is the same as it was in the case with the Romanovs. If these fanatics — Bolsheviks who had taken the power — didn't want to disappear right after the All-Russian Constituent Assembly had been dispersed, and the legitimacy of the Russian power had been broken, they would have to do **all** the dirty work themselves. This is what Lenin and Co had to do very quickly from May to June:

- to destroy the country;
- to liquidate the main pretenders to the throne;
- to send the navy to the bottom;
- to totally disorganize the army, the state governance, and the industry.

After that, the flood of the people's indignation arranged for the money of the British and French, will sweep the loathed Bolsheviks away. And nobody will be responsible for that...

It was a smart plan of the British intelligence services, and the Baltic Navy would have been at the bottom of the Baltic Sea if it was not for Alexei Schastny.

---

[1] Graf H. On Board of Novik. The Baltic Navy During the War and the Revolution. St. Pb.: Gangut, 1997. P. 432.

He disrupted an excellent plan and paid his life for that. The Namorsy makes his decision, which is the only advantageous option for Russia. He will follow his own plan that nobody has offered him: neither by Trotsky, nor by the British agents. The Russian patriot, the sea officer has decided to save the navy! "All Cromie's efforts were in vain. A. Schastny clearly stated that he would relocate the navy to Kronstadt at whatever cost."[1]

It was an unprecedented act of courage. The first detachment of the ships escorted by the icebreakers leaves Helsingfors on March 12, 1918. This raid, which was called the Ice Cruise of the Baltic Navy, was performed in very complicated conditions not only due to the ice and ice ridges. Saving the ships was at risk, because the ships were understaffed with regard to the officers and even the sailors. The Bolshevik policy caused the dismissal of the officers and the desertion of the sailors. There were simply no officers to command the ships. The problem was partly solved by the deployment of the soldiers of Suomenlinna garrison on board. The Finnish squadron, located on the Lavansaari Island, was trying to hinder the movement of the ships by its fire. The squadron stopped the fire after having been threatened by huge guns of the dreadnoughts. Five days later, on March 17, 1918, the Russian ships safely arrived in Kronstadt. The second group of ships departed for Kronstadt after them, and the last ships of the Baltic Navy left Helsingfors at nine a.m. on April 12, three hours before the German squadron arrived in Helsingfors. The Ice Cruise that had been considered to be impossible was realized. Out of 350 military ships of the Baltic Navy, 236 military ships were saved, including all the four dreadnoughts.

However, it was too early to rejoice and rest. The British intelligence services were not at all happy with the saving of the Baltic Navy. They had to press Ilyich even more. If the navy has not been sent to the bottom, Bolsheviks will have to yield to them on another important issue.

When did Schastny save the Baltic Navy?

---

[1] Graf H. On Board of Novik. The Baltic Navy During the War and the Revolution. St. Pb.: Gangut, 1997. P. 432.

On March 17, 1918.

Were there any other important events this month?

You are right — Michael Romanov and other members of the dynasty were arrested **in the second half of March**. The family of Nicholas Romanov was announced the penitentiary regime **on March 30, 1918**. The lives of the Romanovs are exchanged for the saving of the Bolshevik power. As the latter haven't managed to sink the ships, they had to distinguish themselves in another important task. It was in these days that the relaxed Lenin was writing his policy work "Next Tasks of the Soviet Power," where the Civil War was described as a war that has been won and finished. Lenin is not worried about his future, because he again has managed to make an agreement with the "allies." He and Trotsky have to take upon themselves the responsibility not only for blood of Nicholas II's children, but for the loss of the Russian Navy, too...

Let's return to the command bridge of the Baltic battleship after having looked behind the curtain of the world politics. The Namorsy Schastny and rank-and-file sailors considered their task fulfilled, and they believed the ships have been saved. A new unexpected instruction has arrived from Moscow at that very moment.

Only 12 days after the Ice Cruise, *Narkomvoyenmor*[1] Trotsky sent a secret order to Kronstadt — the Navy should be prepared for the explosion.

The astonishment and indignation of Schastny, who had received this message on May 3, 1918, knew no bounds. The Baltic Navy, saving which required so much work, was supposed to be sunk in the delta of the Neva River in order to avoid being captured by the Germans, whose offensive the Bolshevik leaders considered possible. *Not trusting the consciousness of the sailors, in the same message Trotsky ordered to open special bank accounts for those who would be carrying out the explosion.*

Being a patriot, Schastny brought these secret messages out to the "marine public," which immediately aroused the navy. Even the revolutionary sailors after having read the interesting orders of comrade Trotsky smelled a rat.

---

[1] Translator's note: The People's Commissar on the Navy.

The crews were especially indignant with the fact that the explosion of the saved ships would be paid for. The case smelled of the trivial bribery so much that the crews demanded the case to be explained. "At the same time, there are rumours in the Navy that the Soviet power has allegedly promised the Germans to destroy our Navy in accordance with a special secret article of the Peace Treaty,"[1] Lev Trotsky, being himself the author of the flagrant rumours, says. The words of the great fighter for freedom are full of astonishment. You must admit that there can't be any room for such thoughts among the sailors. There is no reason to suspect the Bolshevik leader of having such a maniacal wish to send own ships to the bottom.

On May 11, 1918, the crews of the torpedo division, which was moored at the Neva River in the centre of the city, decided upon the following, "The Petrograd commune should be dissolved due to its total failure and inability to undertake any measures for the saving of their motherland and Petrograd."[2] In order to save the navy the sailors demanded that all the power should be passed to the dictatorship of the Baltic Navy. And on May 22, at the 3rd Congress of the Baltic Navy Deputies, the sailors declared that they were going to fight for the ships till the bitter end and would let the ships be exploded by no means. Thus, Schastny managed to disrupt the plans of the British intelligence services for the second time by having disclosed to the public the secret order on the navy explosion and the fact that "such services" would be paid. It is quite easy to estimate his actions: he is a hero. But this is a modern point of view. Trotsky estimates the actions of the Namorsy in a different way, "His task was obviously different: to make the information about the bank accounts public among the sailors, to arouse the suspicion among the sailors that someone was to be bribed behind the back of the sailors for performing some actions, which are not announced publicly and openly.

---

[1] Trotsky L. The First Treason (The testimony at the Highest Revolutionary Tribunal). (http://www.pseudology.org/trotsky/trotl676.htm)

[2] http://rosflot.ru/old/date/02/17.shtml

It is absolutely clear that by doing so Schastny made the navy explosion impossible in the right moment, because he himself was making the sailors believe **that the explosion was allegedly to be carried out** not in order to save the revolution and the country, but due to some outside interests and needs, which were adverse with regard to the revolution and the people."[1]

However, we are interested in only two things here:

- Why do Lenin and Trotsky with such a maniacal obstinacy try to send the saved ships to the bottom?
- How did the power of the workers and peasants get the odd idea to pay the sailors for the destruction of own ships?

Both before and after these events Bolsheviks were always fighting for the idea, for the better tomorrow, for the world revolution. I have never heard that the Reds made an attack for money or for the increased bank interest. We have never been told about Budyonny's cavalry attacking for a control stock or for a wage increase. A little over twenty years later the German troops will be again at the walls of Petrograd-Leningrad. It has never occurred to anybody to pay those enrolled in the people's volunteer army. Leningraders would be starving, but they would not surrender, and they would not need any bonuses or incentives. Because they would be fighting for their motherland, for the idea, and all that money and the bank accounts would be from another world, the world of bourgeois. And here we have the revolution, the year of 1918, the Red sailors and... bank deposits! The story doesn't hold water. Whose idea was it to pay the revolutionary sailors?

"He (Schastny — *N. S.*) says directly that the Soviet power wants to "bribe" the sailors to make them destroy their own navy. After that, the rumours about the plan of the Soviet power to pay German gold for the destruction of the Russian ships started to circulate in the Baltic Navy. In fact, *the truth was different: it were the British*

---

[1] Trotsky L. The First Treason (The testimony at the Highest Revolutionary Tribunal). (http://www.pseudology.org/trotsky/trotl676.htm)

that offered their gold to the Russians, as it was about the matter of not giving the navy to the Germans."

Everything is getting clearer thanks to a little slip of pen of Lev Trotsky. **The gold was offered by the British!** These are the British who believe in the all the might of the golden calf, these are the British who have given Trotsky advice to bribe the sailors by opening bank accounts for them. The "allies" need to destroy the ships to totally liquidate Russia as a great state. They overpress Lenin and Trotsky and promise, as Churchill says, "not to interfere in the internal affairs of the country," meaning they will let the Soviet power survive. The price of this neutrality is high: the heads of the Romanovs and the Russian ships, sent to the bottom by Bolsheviks. But Trotsky would not have been Trotsky if he had not tried to show himself in the best light in this ugly story. That's why Trotsky explained everything to the revolutionary tribunal (which would judge Schastny later) in details (sorry for the long citation):

"...When discussing the question regarding the preparatory measures for the destruction of the navy, in case it's needed, the attention was paid to the case of a sudden attack of the German ships, which, with the assistance of the counterrevolutionary commanders of our navy, could create such a disarrangement and chaos on our ships that would make the real explosion of the ships absolutely impossible; in order to secure ourselves against such a situation, we have decided to establish on each ship a group of absolutely reliable sailors, loyal to the cause of revolution, who, under any circumstances would be ready and capable to explode the ship at the cost of their lives... When these shock groups were being established, *a prominent British sea officer* visited one of the members of the Marine College and declared that Britain was so much interested in not giving the ships to the Germans that it was ready to generously pay the sailors, who would undertake to explode the ships in the fateful minute; I immediately ordered to stop all the negotiations with this mister. But I have to admit that this proposal made us consider the issue, which we had overseen in all this hassle: namely, the financial security of the families of those sailors, who would be severely jeopardized. I ordered to inform Schastny over the direct line that the government would debit the sailors' accounts with a certain amount."[1]

You see, when you die defending your wife and your children, your motherland and your father's home, you don't need to be offered money. You fully understand why you are sitting in the trench or standing at the ship gun. The money is needed in order to suppress the qualms of conscience. When you are sitting in a wrong trench or are fighting on the wrong side of the barricades...

Who was that British gentleman who was offering money for the destruction of our navy? Fortunately, there was a little footnote in the notes to Lev Trotsky's speech. The surname of that fine fellow has been mentioned. This information will make the picture play out in fresh colours.

You have, of course, guessed already, what the surname of that "prominent British sea officer" was, right? Of course, it was Captain Cromie![2] The story is getting more interesting. It is not without a reason that this British has been mentioned in our story so many times. And he always appears in it under very "shady" circumstances. Those who are trying to convince us that he is a common and honest submarine officer should first read Trotsky's memoirs and ask themselves a question why he would offer money to the Russian sailors for the destruction of the Russian ships. Is it possible that the British submarine sailors from those seven submarines, which had been exploded, passed round the hat? They are SO much worried that the *"ships could be taken by the Germans"* that they are ready to sacrifice their last hard-earned pounds for this?!

Of course, not! Always and everywhere these functions are performed by the people from other departments, and to cover the real situation they may have any uniform or position. The killers of Rasputin, for example — they were "British engineers." At the moment the engineers had nothing to do in Russia, but the submarine officers could easily stay near the British submarines. Let's not be naive, let's not be faked out by the shoulder boards and the service jacket: if a Russo-British military hospital ad been there in the city, the British resident would have been a doctor; if a British tank regiment had been located nearby Petrograd, Captain Francis Cromie would have been a tank man. At the same time, the reason of his "heroic" death at the hands of those people, who the British resident was actually negotiating behind-the-scenes with, is getting clearer. Here again we have a miraculous coincidence — the *only* foreigner, who perished during the liquidation of "The Plot of Ambassadors," was not only a British resident, but the person who had participated in the backstage negotiations. He, who knew all the truth about the connections of the British intelligence with the Bolshevik leader, was an undesired witness both for Bolsheviks and the British intelligence services. Who knows, there might have been no resistance in the British Embassy at all, and the chekists could have simply used the situation to liquidate Captain Cromie.

---

[1] Trotsky L. The First Treason (The testimony at the Highest Revolutionary Tribunal). (http://www.pseudology.org/trotsky/trotl676.htm)

[2] Commander Cromie.

However, we are not talking about the life of British spies here, definitely full of adventures and danger, though. Let's return to the stuffy berthing spaces of the sailors. The crews of the Baltic ships were full of indignation, and it was not any longer possible to bribe them and to make them explode the ships. The ships remained intact, and they even were of great use for Lenin and Trotsky later, when they defended Petrograd from the White Guard. And the award for the real hero Schastny from the grateful Soviet government was not long in coming. Three days later after the resolute announcement of the sailors that they would explode the ships only after the battle, Schastny was asked to come to Moscow on May 25, 1918. The pretext was ludicrous: Schastny allegedly hadn't immediately discharged two sailors suspected of counterrevolutionary activities. Right upon his arrival, after a short conversation with his direct superior, Trotsky, the Namorsy was arrested directly in his office on May 27, 1918.

However, the things even odder started to happen later. The investigation had been carried out with lightning speed, the material on this case was collected in ten (!) days and was forwarded to the Revolutionary Tribunal, which was set especially (!) for this purpose. Krylenko was appointed the state prosecutor, Kingisepp was appointed the court chairman. Trotsky himself... was the only prosecuting witness and the only witness, in general.

The closed hearing started on June 20, 1918. Schastny was convicted "for preparing the counterrevolutionary overthrow and the treason against the state" and was shot dead the next day, despite the fact that the Soviet government had officially eliminated the death penalty! Who was after his head? In reality, Schastny didn't participate in any plot, and on the contrary, he saved the navy twice and deserved to have a monument ante mortem. But instead he was shot dead. The answer is very simple: Lenin and Trotsky have to present something to their partners in the secret agreements, they have to find a scapegoat. Schastny, who was the commander of the Baltic Navy for only a month, saved it from destruction, having broken the behind-the-scenes agreements, and he had to pay the highest price for that. The case was so dark and mysterious that when the historians started to investigate it after Perestroika, it appeared that the materials of this tribunal had not even been registered in the Soviet archives. The main information centre of the Ministry of Internal Affairs of the USSR didn't have any information about these materials, either...

We are well aware of how steadily the "allies" were pursuing their goals. After the vain attempts to arrange the explosion of the navy on the top-level, they decided to engage the persons of a lower rank in their plan. After Captain Cromie failed one more character, who we already know too well, gets involved in the plan. He is Cromie's colleague. General Mikhail Bonch-Bruyevich, who commanded the defence of Petrograd in this time, calls him in his memoirs so, "a professional British spy Sidney Reilly, who would be exposed later, used to visit me under the guise of the lieutenant of the Royal engineer battalion, attached to the British Embassy."[1] The fate of the Russian Navy couldn't leave the British cold, that's why Sidney Reilly came to General Bonch-Bruyevich to give him a piece of advice.[1] The ships, which had been saved by Namorsy Schastny, were located in Neva's mouth. This was very dangerous. According to Reilly's point of view (as well as the opinion of the British intelligence), the ships should have been arranged in proper order, "Having handed me a thoroughly made plan, where the locations of the battleships and other ships were indicated, — Bonch-Bruyevich writes in his memoirs, — he started to assure me that this relocation of the great part of our squadron would guarantee the best location for the navy in case the Germans really tried to attack us from the Gulf of Finland."[2]

---

[1] Bonch-Bruyevich M. All Power to the Soviets. M.: Voyenizdat, 1958 (http://militera.lib.ru/memo/Russian/bonch-bruyevich_md/20.html)

General Bonch-Bruyevich is a man of experience, and this touching concern seems suspicious to him. Having checked the plan, he understood the purpose of Sidney Reilly's visit, "His goal was to put the battleships and cruisers, which had cost several million rubles, under the fire of the German submarines."[3]

Having suggested that the ships should be saved from the attack, he puts them directly under the fire. Had the general followed the advice of the British spy, the further development would have been easily predicted. One dark night, an unknown submarine (a German one, of course!) would have attacked the Russian battleships and sent them to the bottom. Having figured out the plan of the British intelligence services, Bonch-Bruyevich concluded, "Having reported on all this information to the Highest Military Soviet, I gave an order to move some of the ships of the Baltic Navy into Neva and moor them in the harbour, and in the Neva River behind the Nikolayevsky Bridge, *i.e., absolutely not the way Reilly had advised*, thus making them inaccessible for the submarines, which could not use the Morskoy Canal."[1]

---

[1] Exactly at this time the British spy moves freely, having a checkist ID in the name of comrade Relinsky. He has papers for all situations, as we can see. When visiting General Bonch-Bruyevich, he is not "a comrade", but a British "Mister". He is a real psychologist, isn't he?

[2] Bonch-Bruyevich M. All Power to the Soviets. M.: Voyenizdat, 1958 (http://militera.lib.ru/memo/Russian/bonch-bruyevich_md/20.html)

[3] Ib.

Now let's move from the hazy St. Petersburg to the sunny Sevastopol. The military actions in Sevastopol started in October 1914, when the German sailors, disguised as Turks, fezzes on their heads, fired with shells at Odessa and other ports at the Black Sea from the ill-fated Turkish-German cruiser Yavuz Sultan Selim (Goben) and its partner Midilli (Breslau). At the beginning, Russia had only the obsolete battleships in the Black Sea, but after the Russian dreadnoughts Imperatritsa Mariya and Imperatritsa Ekaterina Velikaya had been put in operation, the co-relation of forces changed drastically in favour of Russia. Furthermore, Kolchak became the commander of the Black Sea Navy at the end of June 1916. It was due to Kolchak that the Russian sailors and ships got the combat superiority. Kolchak was appointed the commander of the Black Sea Navy to prepare the landing operation in order to seize the sacred Dardanelles. He developed the large-scale activities to lay mines in the enemy's water zone and thus managed to practically block the Turkish Navy in their own ports. The situation didn't change even when the dreadnought Imperatritsa Mariya tragically perished on October 7 (20), 1916.[2] Now, when Russia reigned on the sea, the navy was ready to carry out the landing operation to seize the Dardanelles. The landing operation is scheduled to take place at the same time as the land offensive. The landing shall start early in spring 1917. The plan was to take Turkey out of the war after having inflicted two crashing blows, resulting in collapse of the Austro-Hungarian Empire and Bulgaria, thus leading to a quick and guaranteed defeat of Germany.

Everything was ready for the landing operation: for the first time in history, a transportation fleet was created, which was the formation of the specially equipped means of transport, which were specially designed for receiving troops and military equipment. These are the means for putting the people ashore, the skiffs, the self-propelled barges that can land the troops even on the shore unprepared for this purpose. The cooperation with land forces has been thoroughly practiced. The British could not linger any longer. If they wait for two months more, the Russian Imperial Navy and Army will inflict the enemy a crashing blow and seize the strategically important straits. It will not be possible to crush Russia after that. During the diplomatic negotiations, the "allies" agree, as the matter of fact, to Russia's seizure of the Bosphorus and the Dardanelles. And their agents in St. Petersburg start taking resolute actions. The unrest take place in the capital of the Empire: the February is coming. The building of ships goes much slower. As a result, the dreadnought Imperator Alexander III was finally put in commission in October 1917 under the new name Volya, given to it by the Provisional Government. The new sonorous name Demokratiya didn't help its co-brother — the battleship Imperator Nikolay I. It will be never put in action and will be sold in 1927 as waste metal.

---

[1] Bonch-Bruyevich M. All Power to the Soviets. M.: Voyenizdat, 1958 (http:// (htpp://militera.lib.ru/memo/Russian/bonch-bruyevich_md/20.html)

[2] There appears more and more information that the loss of our dreadnought Imperatritsa Mariya definitely was a subversive action. It's a question whether this subversive action was a German one.

It must be said that the new power and then Bolsheviks have renamed all the ships, which were more or less related to the tsarist regime they loathed. And these new names didn't bring any luck to the ships. There was no hero in the Black Sea that could equal Namorsi Schastny, and the acts of the "allies" made much more damage to the Black Sea fleet. The British intelligence services had to make enormous efforts to destroy the imposing battleships of the Black Sea Navy and the other ships of the Russian Navy. The prologue of the tragedy was again the Peace Treaty of Brest-Litovsk. Its article VI reads as "Russia obligates herself to conclude peace at once with the Ukrainian People's Republic ... The Ukrainian territory will, without delay, be cleared of Russian troops and the Russian Red Guard."[1]

---

[1] Shatsillo V. World War 1 1914 — 1918. Facts and Documents. M.: Olma-Press, 2003. P. 385.

Germany needed Ukraine as a guaranteed food supplier to get bacon, milk, and eggs from it. Bolsheviks reluctantly recognized Ukraine's independence, as well. According to the treaty, the territory of Ukraine should have been cleared of the Russian troops, and the navy should have been moved to the Russian ports. Everything is simple and clear, but only at first sight. There were no doubts as to which Baltic port was Russian: it was Kronstadt. However, the situation at the Black Sea is not clear: not in anyone's wildest dreams would the fraternal peoples be separated.[1] That's why there is no border between the countries. One can interpret this definition in any way. And the Germans, whose pointed helmets stick out behind the back of the government of the independent Ukraine, interpret it in their own way, too. From the perspective of the Germans and the Ukrainians, Sevastopol is not a Russian port anymore and consequently, in accordance with article V of the Treaty of Brest-Litovsk, the ships should be disarmed. Because Novorossiysk, where the ships could be relocated, is also the Ukrainian port.

There is no Kronstadt in the Black Sea, and the navy has nowhere to go. The historians would say that one should think first and then sign the treaty. One little correction and everything could be different. But we know how and why Lenin agreed to sign that treaty. The Germans know it, too. And the "allies" know it, as well. It could not have been different. The German command, as we have seen on many occasions, doesn't trust the loyalty of their "successful" spies led by Lenin. Just a moment ago, in March, Lenin and Co moved the Baltic Navy away from Helsingfors right from under the Kaiser's very nose. The Germans don't know and they would never believe that this was done by a brave patriot Schastny upon his own initiative and against the order.

When they see that "the German spies" in the actions take their lead from the Entente "allies" and not from their German "patrons," the German command makes enormous efforts to at least seize the ships of the Black Sea Navy. Luckily for them, the Bolshevik diplomats have themselves created the legal prerequisite for it, having signed the respective version of the Peace Treaty. In Berlin they understand that Lenin, being under the pressure of his "allied" curators, will have to send the navy to the bottom, even though there is no reason in doing so for Russia. On April 22, 1918, the German troops occupy Simferopol and Yevpatoria. The surprising mission of Lenin's excellent envoy, sailor Zadorozhny, who devotedly defended the members of the Romanov family, is coming to an end. The Germans are in the Crimea — the occupation of Sevastopol is the inevitable perspective of the coming days.

---

[1] Properly speaking, they are not two different nations, but ONE! great Slavic nation. Great Russia. Little Russia. There is nothing disparaging in the name "Little Russia", because we mean our small motherland, which is the ancestral home, the Slavic cradle.

The Germans address the command of the navy, Tsentrobalt, directly. The German command proposes to hoist the yellow-blue flags of the independent Ukraine on the Russian ships and promises not to touch the ships, which would swear allegiance to Ukraine and thus would be considered to be the navy of the allied state. The sailors confront a complicated dilemma. To break their oath to Russia, to become "Ukrainian" and save the ships, or to keep loyalty to their oath to the "Red" motherland, to move the ships, and to lose them anyway.

God forbid there should be such a choice! It's difficult to blame either of the parties. Some of the sailors decided not to go to Novorossiysk, they decided to stay and hoist the Ukrainian flags on the ships. The others, remaining pro-Bolshevik, raised their anchors and left Sevastopol. Among them is the mine torpedo-boat destroyer Kerch, which had proudly raised a Red flag. Next night two most powerful dreadnoughts Svobodnaya Rossiya (Imperatritsa Ekaterina Velikaya), and Volya (Imperator Alexander III), a support cruiser, five torpedo-boats, submarines, guard motor boats, and commercial ships put out to sea.

As soon as the ships approach the boom defence, the bay gets illuminated by rockets. The German have managed to place an artillery battery at the bay shore. It opens a warning fire at the Russian ships.

It's funny, because it's a suicide. One salvo of the Russian dreadnoughts is enough to mix the German artillerists with the Crimean red soil. Even if we take into consideration the loose discipline of the crew and the lack of the officers, three to five salvos would be enough. But comrade Joffe, the authorized representative of the Soviet Republic in Berlin, sends warning telegrams to the Sovnarkom, "Any provocative act, even an insignificant one, from our side, will be immediately used from the military aspect; it's necessary not to let it happen under any circumstances."[1]

One shot of a 305 mm gun from a dreadnought results not in a "little provocation," it creates a huge multi-meter shell crater full of fragments of the artillerists' bodies and pieces of fire damaged guns. That's why it is forbidden to shoot, that's why the Germans are not afraid to open the fire for effect. The torpedo-boat Gnevny gets a shot hole and runs ashore in the Ushakov Ravine. The crew leaves the ship, having exploded the machines. Small ships, submarines, and motor boats, fearing the fire, return back to the piers. The dreadnoughts calmly put out to sea — the German artillerists don't dare to shoot at them. Thus, two battleships, ten squadron torpedo-boats of Novik type, six coal torpedo-boats and ten guard motor boats have left for Novorossiysk.

But this was only the beginning of the tragedy and not its end. In fact, there was no reason to rejoice. The German command presents the Leninists an ultimatum regarding the surrender of the Black Sea Navy to the Germans.[2] The Bolsheviks agree to it, but the problem seems unsolvable. They may not fight with the Germans — this will provoke the final break and strangling of the "Country of Soviets" by the Germans. To give up the navy to Germany is also impossible — then the western intelligence will not be able to sink the Russian ships...[3]

---

[1] http://vneshpol.ru/263/

[2] "About the passage of the navy from Novorossiysk to Sevastopol till June 19" for internment till the end of war.

[3] Very often one can read that the British wanted to sink our navy in order not to give it to the Germans and not to let it be used against the British Navy. In fact, this is "fog", or lip-service, which was used by the British to cover their yearning to destroy all the Russian Navy and thus

The Germans take Sevastopol on May 1, 1918. On May 3, Trotsky sends his remarkable orders about the navy explosion and the bank accounts for sailors to the Baltic Sea Navy. Thus, Bolsheviks may not oppose either the Germans or the "allies." What can they do? Lenin's fantastic flexibility helps to find the way out of the deadlock. The Germans demand that Lenin signed a peace agreement with Ukraine and surrendered the ships — okay, let's start the negotiations. We, Bolsheviks, are eager to have good neighbour relations with Ukraine, but there are many issues to discuss: the borders, visas, and separation of the debts remaining since the tsarist times... The "allies" demand that the navy is sent to the bottom — okay, let's send a reliable person to Novorossiysk in order to control the situation and stage the sinking of the ships...

The events, which took place later, are still shrouded in mystery. The Soviet historians paint a picture of total helplessness, when Lenin, not being able to withstand the Germans, finally decided to sink the navy. If you really try to find more information, you will discover some other facts about the sailors, who were getting ready to defend Novorossiysk, and about the diplomatic relationship with Germany, which has changed drastically in a short period of time. Germany has agreed to recognize Russia's right to the Black Sea Navy and undertook the commitment to return all the ships after the end of the World War.

It was only for the British intelligence services that this scenario was not suitable. It is impossible to explain Lenin's logic if

---

to finish the history of Russia as of a naval nation. The "allies" understand that there is no peril in regards of the participation of the Russian dreadnoughts in the war — Germany will simply have no time for that. Before the Germans figure out the situation with the new ships, before they bring their new crews on the ships, before they master the new technique — the war will already be over. There are less than five months left before the collapse of the Kaiser Germany. It will fall due to the revolution, due to a fantastic and dishonourable treason, which the Nazis will later call "a treacherous backstab" (for more information about the German revolution see: N. Starikov. Who Forced Hitler to Attack Stalin? St. Pb.: Piter. 2009).

we don't take into consideration the heavy pressure of the British intelligence on the Soviet government leader. The ships, which are lying at the bottom of the sea, are forever lost for the revolution and Russia. This fact is much worse than the possibility (even a dim one) to get the ships back from the Germans after the World War. Lenin was not concerned about the fate of the country when he made this decision, he was thinking about the survival of his pet project — the Bolshevik Revolution. H. Graf expressed the same thought in his book "On Board of Novik. The Baltic Sea Navy during the Revolution and the Civil War" in 1924. Due to this, the book has been kept in a special repository. "*It was clear that it was not for Bolsheviks that the destruction of the Black Sea Navy mattered.* If the navy should have been confiscated, it would have been very risky to breach the conditions of the peace treaty; but since the navy stayed in the hands of Bolsheviks, there was no reason to sink the navy at all. *And even if they did send the navy to the bottom, they only did it under the pressure of the "allies," put on them in a very difficult moment.*"[1]

On June 6 (May 24), 1918, Lenin's envoy arrives at the Black Sea. He is a sailor and a member of the Marine College. His surname is Vakhrameyev. He has a report of the head of the General Marine Headquarters with Lenin's laconic resolution on it, "Due to a no-win situation, which has been proved by the highest navy authorities, the navy should be destroyed immediately." The task of the special emissary Vakhrameyev is to do it. In order not to have any obstacles in performing the task, the obstinate Commander of the Navy Mikhail Sablin has been called to Moscow in advance. What a surprising coincidence: the invitation from Trotsky actually arrives at the same time as the order demanding that Namorsy Schastny should come to Moscow. We should not doubt that Sablin would have shared the fate of Schastny if he had come. But he guessed why this "invitation" had been sent, and on the way to Moscow he fled and soon after that joined the "Whites."

---

[1] Graf H. On Board of Novik. The Baltic Navy During the War and the Revolution. St. Pb.: Gangut, 1997. P. 427.

Tikhmenyov, the new commander of the navy, the captain of the 1st rank, the commander of the dreadnought Volya acts in exactly the same way as his colleague Namorsy Schastny. He tries to save the ships. He cables to Moscow, "Since no German offensive from Rostov or the Kerch Strait actually endangers Novorossiysk, it's too early to destroy the ships." Had such an order been given to the sailors, they would have considered it to be an act of evident treason.

Lenin's envoy Vakhrameyev is confused, too. Now, when he can see the actual situation, he doesn't understand why the ships should be sunk so urgently. To say that the situation got tangled means to say nothing. And as always, Lenin demonstrates a superhuman flexibility in a crisis situation. The Bolshevik delegation in Kiev continues to discuss with the Germans the conditions for the takeover of the ships. At the same time, the orders to destroy the ships are sent to Sevastopol. The ardent Bolshevik, Commander of the torpedo-boat Kerch, Lieutenant Kukel in his memoirs quotes the texts of Lenin's telegrams from his memory, "On June 13 or 14 (I don't remember the exact date) an open radiogram was received from the central government. It read, 'Germany has presented an ultimatum and demands that we should move the navy to Sevastopol not later than on June 19, and has guaranteed to return the navy to Russia after the war ends; in case of non-fulfilment of the ultimatum, Germany threatens to start offensives at all the fronts. In order not to subject the country to the new countless sufferings, the navy is ordered to be moved to Sevastopol to arrive there not later than on June 19. All the frenetics, who oppose the power, which has been elected by the millions of the working people, will be considered outlaws. № 141.'"[1] At the same time, an enciphered telegram with the following content, which I do not remember word-by-word, arrived, "The experience has shown that Germany's guarantees on paper carry no value and can't be trusted, and, due to this, the navy will not be returned to Russia. I order to sink the navy before the term of the ultimatum expires. Radiogram №141 should be ignored. № 142."[1]

---

[1] The Notes of the Commander of the Squadron Torpedo-boat Kerch Vladimir Kukel (1918). The Civil War in Russia: the Black Sea Navy. — M.: AST, 2002. P. 33.

Machiavelli has rolled over in his grave! The one who wants to become a politician has to learn from Vladimir Lenin. *Two orders* **cancelling each other** *have reference numbers 141 and 142. One order follows another.* It's really interesting.

But Lenin was a real genius, and the commander of the navy receives yet another enciphered telegram, the third one, "You will receive an open telegram regarding the moving of the navy to Sevastopol in accordance with the ultimatum, but you are obliged not to perform this order and destroy the navy in accordance with the order, which has been brought to you by I. Vakhrameyev."[2]

Pretending that he is ready to follow the ultimatum, Lenin sends a radio telegram with unenciphered text, ordering the ships to go to Sevastopol in order to be taken over by the Germans and the Ukrainians. And at the same time, he sends an enciphered telegram, ordering to sink the navy. And to prevent anyone's doubts with regard to which order is right, he sends one more enciphered telegram plus comrade Vakhrameyev with a secret order "to destroy all the navy ships and all the commercial ships in Novorossiysk." Two orders cancelling each other, which are sent at the same time, are Lenin's alibi in the eyes of the "allies" and the Germans. But it's obvious that it's not Germany, whose spy the historians of today still tend to call Lenin, that the Bolshevik leader fears most.

Lenin's general line at this moment is the destruction of the ships in accordance with the order of the British and the French, not their takeover by Germany. Lenin always knew how to find an agreement with the "allies." It was with his own revolutionary sailors and officers that he started having problems here.

---

[1] The Notes of the Commander of the Squadron Torpedo-boat Kerch Vladimir Kukel (1918). The Civil War in Russia: the Black Sea Navy. M.: AST, 2002. P. 33.

[2] Graf H. On Board of Novik. The Baltic Navy During the War and the Revolution. St. Pb.: Gangut, 1997. P. 410.

Captain Tikhmenyov has decided to make Lenin's secret orders public. In order to do this he calls a common meeting of the commanders, the chairmen of the ship soviets and the crew representatives. Lenin's emissary Vakhrameyev and Navy Commissar Glebov-Avilov attend the meeting, too. By the way, the commissar of the Black Sea Navy is an interesting person. He is not just some "rank and file" comrade. Nikolay Avilov (party code name Gleb, Glebov) is a veteran Bolshevik and one of the leaders of the Lenin's party. He was the member of the first (!) Sovnarkom and was the narkom of post and telegraph. There were only fourteen (!) members in the first body of the Sovnarkom, and one of these apostles of the Revolution is sent exactly to the Black Sea Navy and specifically in May, when the sinking of the ships is being staged. It can't be a coincidence.

Let's return to the deck of the dreadnought Volya, where the meeting takes place. The commander of the navy announces that he has received the papers of the highest importance from Moscow, and he asks to listen to him in most seriously and attentively. He asks the commissars to read the telegrams aloud in the order of their arrival. They tried to refuse, but Tikhmenyov insisted, and finally Glebov-Avilov started to read them.[1]

Read the telegram № 141 and then — telegram № 142. Quite impressive. They have also impressed the Black Sea sailors, that's why reading them was followed by indignant shouts. But Lenin's emissary didn't have heart to read the **third** secret telegram aloud. Then the commander of the navy told the sailors that the commissar had not read one more telegram, which he believed to be the most important one. Feeling abashed, Glebov-Avilov babbled something about the secret character of the third telegram and that it was not the right time to announce it to the sailors. In return, Tikhmenyov took Lenin's third telegram and read it aloud to the audience.[2]

It has produced a bombshell effect. It appeared that even the revolutionary sailors, who have been drowning their officers alive, have ... conscience. A Russian sailor's conscience. There was an odour of pure treason in this case. It was obvious that Lenin, having ordered to sink the navy, disembarrassed himself of responsibility, and that he could have even declared the sailors "outside the law," if he had wished to. Vakhrameyev can't suppress their indignation. Now it's practically impossible to force the sailors to sink the ships. On the contrary, a significant part of the crews, as it was in the Baltic Sea Navy, is ready to offer battle and destroy their ships only after it, as it befits Russian sailors, as the heroes of Tsushima and the sailors of Varyag have done.

---

[1] Graf H. On Board of Novik. The Baltic Navy During the War and the Revolution. St. Pb.: Gangut, 1997. P. 411.

[2] Ib.

For Lenin this decision is equal to death. The next day another meeting is held. This time, in addition to the sailors, the head of the Kuban-Black Sea Republic Rubin and the representatives of the military units attend the meeting. Something unbelievable takes place! **Not only the local head of the Soviet government and the soldiers' deputies fail to support the policy of the Bolshevik centre, but they also dare to threaten the sailors in case the latter sink the ships!** Senior Lieutenant Kukel describes it this way, "In his long and quite talented speech the chairman tried to convince the sailors not to take any measures with regard to the navy, because the military situation of the republic is excellent... The representative of the military units gave an optimistic description of the combat readiness of the military units and of the strategic situation. At the end of his speech he warmly and firmly declared and *warned the sailors that in case the navy would be sent to the bottom, the front of 47,000 soldiers would turn the bayonets against Novorossiysk and raise the sailors on them.* The front was still as long as the navy was able to defend, even if morally only, the rear, but as soon as there would be no navy, the front would be in despair."[1]

This is the difference between the head of the Kuban-Black Sea Republic, who is not aware about the obligations of his leaders in Moscow, and Lenin and Trotsky, who keep permanent contact with

---

[1] The Notes of the Commander of the Squadron Torpedo-boat Kerch Vladimir Kukel (1918). The Civil War in Russia: the Black Sea Navy. — M.: AST, 2002. P. 33.

Sadoul, Reilly, and Lockhart. An regular Bolshevik can't understand the behind-the-scenes deal, that is why he may speak plainly and act according to his conscience. Lenin is obliged to keep the agreements with the "allies." and that's why he keeps squirming. The telegraph receives Lenin's irate telegrams, "The orders sent to the navy in Novorossiysk should be indisputably fulfilled. It has to be announced that in case the sailors fail to carry out the order, they will be declared 'outside the law.' This crazy adventure should be impeded..."[1]

If Vakhrameyev can't cope with the task, the "heavy artillery" should be used. By Lenin's personal order, Feodor Raskolnikov is sent to Novorossiysk. He has received special authority and only one order — to sink the navy at whatever cost. But it takes time to get from Moscow to Novorossiysk, and time goes by. Those who want to save the Russian ships are not wasting their time; those who wish to destroy them are not wasting their time, either. The British and the French military missions have their officers in Sevastopol. The "allied" spies, using this "cover-up" as they did it at the Baltic Sea, are desperately trying to perform the task of their patrons. "There were some suspicious persons sneaking among the sailors of the mine detachment, offering things, promising something, making some agreements. It was not difficult to guess the nationally of some of them,"[2] the Captain of the 1st rank H. Graf writes in his memoirs.

They are French. Since all the issues of the "revolutionary democracy" are now solved during the meetings, it is possible to get the required result by influencing the point of view of the most active sailors. The means of influence are as old as the sea, they are tampering and bribing.

The French agents dish out the money for the sailors and don't forget Lenin's envoys, either.

"By the way, Glebov-Avilov and Vakhrameyev were seen with two unknown persons, — H. Graf continues, — apparently, they were foreigners, too. One could hear that one of the commissars was meaningfully promising something to them, 'Please, don't worry. Everything will be performed, at least partly'."[1]

---

[1] http://nauka.relis.ru/10/9710/10710056.htm

[2] Graf H. On Board of Novik. The Baltic Navy During the War and the Revolution. St. Pb.: Gangut, 1997. P. 428.

The patriots are not wasting any time, either, and are trying to save the ships. The Russian officers can't use the methods of conviction of the "allied" intelligence services, they can't bribe anybody. There is no discipline in the navy anymore: Commander Tikhmenyov can't order, he can only try to convince. To appeal for reason and conscience. The sailors, who have completely lost the track in the political intricacies, get split again: on June 17, 1918, Tikhmenyov virtually persuades the dreadnought Volya, the support cruiser Traian, and seven torpedo-boats to go to Sevastopol. After the departure of the ships a flag-signal is hoisted on the Bolshevik torpedo-boat Kerch, "To the ships, going to Sevastopol: Shame on the traitors of Russia."

All that sounds rather nice, but the commander of this torpedo-boat, Senior Lieutenant Kukel is often seen with a group of officers from the French mission, and only five (!) months before that, on January 13, 1918, it was under his command that the officers had been drowned alive with the weight tied to their feet. That's why talking about the sinking of the Black Sea Navy by Bolsheviks, we must remember not only the human portraits of those who gave this order, but also the human portraits of those who carried this order out...

One can deceive somebody sometimes, but nobody has ever managed to deceive everyone always. The truth will always come out. Even from the dusty special repositories of the USSR. The word is given to H. Graf again. He personally talked to the participants of these events. "The officers of the French mission in Yekaterinodar have spilled the beans about the adventures of a certain Lieutenant Beynaud and Corporal Guillaume, the agents of the French intelligence services, who, by the highest command, were given the task to destroy the Black Sea Navy, having no scruples about the means and ways. Lieutenant Beynaud didn't deny then that he had participated in this operation and on the contrary, was very kind to share some details..."[1]

---

[1] Graf H. On Board of Novik. The Baltic Navy During the War and the Revolution. St. Pb.: Gangut, 1997. P. 428.

That was the way of the French intelligence services to prepare the "arrival" of Lenin's new emissary. The German ultimatum expires on June 19. A few hours are left: comrade Raskolnikov arrives in Novorossiysk at 5 a.m. on June 18. Those who wanted to save the ships had already left for Sevastopol. The crews of the ships that stayed have been well manipulated. Raskolnikov quickly and resolutely stages the sinking of the rest of the navy. One after another, fourteen battleships are sent to the bottom, among them the dreadnought Svobodnaya Rossiya. Later, 25 commercial ships were sunk, as well. And in Moscow they receive a short report from Raskolnikov — a telegram about the executed work, "Having arrived in Novorossiysk... have exploded at the outer harbour... all the ships which were staying there on my arrival."[2]

Now Raskolnikov's career will be on the rise. Almost at the same time, A. Schastny was sentenced to death by the Revolutionary Tribunal under VTsIK. This is justice, a bit adjusted by "the behind-the-scenes" world politics. The saver of the Russian ships has deserved a bullet, the destroyer of the navy has honorary posts in and a successful career ahead...

The French and the British spies can also present a good job to their patrons: a significant part of the navy of the Russian Empire has been destroyed. But it's not enough for the "allies": it's necessary to send the whole navy to the bottom and to extirpate the possibility for its later revival. That's why the tragedy of the Russian Navy has not ended. On the contrary — it was at the very beginning. The Russian Navy should have been liquidated at whatever cost. As well as the Russian Empire and the White movement. Now it's time to have a closer look at the assistance, which the brave "allies" rendered to the fighters for Russia's rebirth. A lot of unpleasant surprises await us...

---

[1] Graf H. On Board of Novik. The Baltic Navy During the War and the Revolution. St. Pb.: Gangut, 1997. P. 427.

[2] http://nauka.relis.ru/10/9710/10710056.htm

CHAPTER 8

How The "Allies" Helped the "Whites"

> "...The allies provided help only to some degree: on the one hand, they took measures in order not to let the Bolsheviks win a victory, on the other hand, in order not to make it possible for the Whites to overthrow the Bolsheviks."
>
> *H. Graf*

"Russia is not for sale" — these are the well-known words of Denikin. At the same time, this is an answer to the question regarding the causes of the White movement. When reading the memoirs of the White Guard officer, one can't help marvelling the big hearts of these people. They are patriots, they are the Russian people to the marrow of their bones. Risking their lives, they do their utmost to save their motherland. The generals regard the fight against the Bolshevism as their duty, as their service to the motherland, which has made their hair grey and decorated their chests with orders. The leaders of the White movement (all of them without any exception) make the same mistake, which will be the reason of their defeat. They consider the "allies" of Russia to be as gentle as they are themselves and ascribe the Messers from London and Paris the qualities, which there have never been any trace of in them.

If Generals Krasnov, Denikin, and Wrangel had had the slightest idea of the instigators of Russia's destruction, they would have never expected any assistance in Russia's revival from them. If the leaders of the White movement had known about the Entente's behind-the-scenes agreements with Bolsheviks, if they had peeped into the dark rooms of the western representations in Moscow, if they had only known which money had been used to make the Bolshevik and SR parties stronger!

All those ifs...

"For the United, Great, and Indivisible Russia," this was the toast proposed by the Whites, who were fighting Bolsheviks. They didn't think that for the last hundred years the goals of the British foreign policy had been totally different, "For the Weak, Split, and Divided Russia!" How could the Anglo-Saxons, their objectives polar opposite, help the Russian White Guard? In fact, they were indeed "helping" by holding to their own interests. And the leaders of the White movement didn't want to notice it, didn't want to consider the treacherous conduct of their day-old "brothers in arms." Instead of gradual fulfilment of the Russia's liquidation plan, Denikin, Wrangel, and Kolchak could see only the inexplicable things and the odd behaviour of the Entente representatives.

Now it's time to remember the myths of the Civil War, which have arisen during the last decades. The west, which was trying to cover the things up, and Bolsheviks, who had miraculously managed to keep the power, were interested in creation of certain myths. The first ones had to cover up their assistance to Lenin in seizing and further keeping the power. The second ones had to conceal that the overthrow was of the foreign origin, and to exaggerate their own credits in the won victory. Which myths are we talking about? In accordance with the time of their origin, the myths can be divided into two groups: the "old" Soviet ones and the new "anti-Soviet" ones.

We have inherited a bunch of cliches about our Entente "allies" from the Soviet historiography:

- Myth №1 — an international intervention has been carried out in order to overthrow the Soviet power;
- Myth №2 — the "allied" governments supported the Whites in the Civil War, and their assistance was huge.

The modern "anti-Soviet" presentation of the facts is slightly different:

- Myth №3 — the "allies" supported the "good" Whites;
- Myth №4 — the Germans supported the "bad" Reds.

Both the old and the new myths are very far from the real facts. Let's take, for example, the thesis about the support Germany provided to Bolsheviks, which is very much accentuated today. If we bluntly take this thesis at face value, the scheme will be as follows: the Germans are bad, and the British and French, who didn't support the Reds, are good. It's very simple and clear. Actually, all the lies about the Civil War were stacked up for this not too complicated conclusion to be made. Some insignificant details make the difference between the Soviet scenario and the up-to-date one. Open any textbook on history, published before 1985, and you will read that the Germans, as well as the "allies," during the Civil War supported the "bad" Whites, while the "good" Reds managed to crush them all under the guidance of the wise Communist Party, simply following the Marxist ideology. Let's try to sort it out.

Let's start with myth №1: a foreign intervention with the aim to overthrow the Soviet power was carried out. To make the situation clearer let's use the authentic sources, "In three years there were three armies: the British Army, the French Army, and the Japanese Army on the Russian territory. There are no doubts that the most insignificant efforts of these states would have been enough to defeat us within only a few months or even a few weeks."[1]

This is Lenin's wording. It's difficult to argue with Ilyich — he is 100% right. The British and the French could have strangled the revolution in a couple of weeks. But then the great Russia would appear on the world maps again. Then there would not have been any Civil War. The factories would not have been ruined, thousands kilometres of railways and bridges would not have been destroyed. Millions of Russians would have stayed alive, millions of babies would have been born, and up to this day, the people of the great country would have stayed united and indivisible. The goal of the British intelligence services was polar opposite...

---

[1] http://kadet.ru/library/public/Nazarov/MN1_2.htm

This is difficult to believe but the official historians assure us that the foreign intervention, which Russia experienced, had started on the call of Lev Trotsky and with his assistance. Our northern ports were the first ones to have the honour to accept the British soldiers. In fact, the port of Murmansk and the Murmansk railway were built in 1916 to deliver the ammunition and military stuff to Russia from Great Britain and France. By the moment when Russia dropped out the war with Germany, millions tons of military cargoes had accumulated in the ports of Murmansk and Arkhangelsk. It was exactly the presence of this military ammunition that gave the "allies" an official pretext to get involved in Russia's internal affairs.

Lenin, manoeuvring between the Entente and the Germans, chooses the second option, the cooperation. For the sake of decency, the Bolshevik government prepared the appearance of the "allied" troops in the Russian land as a sort of a show. The respective agreements had already been made during the behind-the-scenes negotiations, but the interventionists could not be invited on behalf of Petrograd — that was not good enough. The head of the Soviet, which ruled at that time in Murmansk, was a former dockside worker Alexei Yuriev. After Marshall Mannerheim, supported by the Germans, had crushed the Finnish Bolsheviks, there appeared a theoretical threat of the German and Finnish attack on Murmansk. On March 1, 1918, Yuriev cabled to Petrograd, describing the current situation, and informed that the British Admiral Kemp had offered any support, including the military forces, to defend the port in case of the German offensive. This is quite a different situation — the local-level comrades ask for support. In return, comrade Trotsky orders "to accept any assistance of the 'allied' missions."

Several British ships: a battleship, a cruiser, and six minesweepers had been in the Murmansk harbours since 1915 because they escorted the steamers with military ammunition delivered to Russia. To carry out a landing was not a problem — as a matter of fact, the British had just to step from the deck to the pier.

In other words, the minister of the Soviet government, Lenin's right hand, the only person except Ilyich who was aware of all the secret agreements, has given a go-ahead for the British landing. We get an interesting picture here — some true Theatre of the Absurd: the Entente soldiers are coming to defend "the German spies" Lenin and Trotsky from the Germans...

The world politics, pro forma frowning, was mercifully following the destruction of the Russian Empire by a bunch of resolute Bolsheviks. To understand this, one has to take a look at one interesting document. The Bolshevik newspaper "Izvestiya" along with all the other newspapers in the world publishes "The Fourteen Points" of the U.S. President Woodrow Wilson. This is his proposal to Germany and its partners to conclude peace. They were published early in January 1918, exactly at the midpoint of the negotiations in Brest.

Let's agree that peace proposals are always a value. They give hope, even though a small one, that millions of men will return to their wives and children, and that millions of women won't have to wear black widow scarves anymore. This call of a peacemaker is very noble, but it is important to understand what the U.S. President proposed. Earlier, his appeals to Germany looked like empty declarations. His "Fourteen points" are more specific and detailed. Let's turn to the document and try to render its essence. We give the translation in the brackets (we'll translate from the diplomatic language to the human one). So, fourteen points of Wilson which Bolsheviks were so much impressed by.[1]

1. *Open covenants of peace* (the conditions of Germany and its allies' surrender should be considered. They are given below).

2. *Absolute freedom of navigation* (the German submarines have to raise the blockade of Britain and stop sinking the "allied" ships. The blockade of Germany itself may continue).

3. *Freedom of trade* (the U.S. economy manufactures a lot of products, which should be delivered to the ruined Europe, but the German submarines prevent from doing it).

---

[1] http//www.hrono.info./dokum/191_dok/19180108.html

4. *Reduction of national armaments to the lowest point consistent with domestic safety* (the Entente's enemies should disarm).

5. *Fair adjustment of all colonial claims* (to avoid any disputes in the future, Germany will be deprived of its colonies in favour of the winners).

7. *Belgium must be evacuated and restored* (at the expense of Germany, naturally).

8. *All French territory should be freed* (Germany has to give Alsace and Lorraine to France).

9. *The frontiers of Italy should be readjusted* (i.e., Italy should get some of the Austrian lands, which the Serbs, who had provoked the war, expected to get).

10. *The peoples of Austria-Hungary should be accorded the freest opportunity to autonomous development* (i.e., the Austro-Hungarian Empire should break up and, in fact, stop to exist).

11. *Rumania, Serbia and Montenegro, occupied by the Germans and Austrians, should be evacuated. Serbia should be accorded free and secure access to the sea* (once again, at the expense of the poor Austrians).

12. *The Turkish portion of the present Ottoman Empire should be assured a secure sovereignty, as well as the other nationalities (it means the end of the Ottoman Empire and its breaking up), the Dardanelles should be permanently opened as a free passage to the ships and commerce of all nations* (total control of the straits by the "allies")

13. *An independent Polish state should be erected, which should be assured a free and secure access to the sea* (this can be done using the parts of the German and Russian territories. Poland will get the port of Danzig (Gdynia), thus the East Prussia gets cut off from the rest of Germany).

14. *A general association of nations must be formed* (the future League of Nations, the United Nations today).

Everything is clear and understandable. But where is Russia? Point № 6 refers to Russia. We have omitted it deliberately. This is about us. But it's better to read this point last, in the very end. For better understanding and comprehension.

6. *The evacuation of all Russian territory and such a settlement of all questions affecting Russia as will secure the best and freest cooperation of the other nations of the world in obtaining for her an unhampered and unembarrassed opportunity for the independent determination of her own political development and national policy and assure her of a sincere welcome into the society of free nations under institutions of her own choosing; and, more than a welcome, assistance also of every kind that she may need and may herself desire.*

Have you got it? Do you understand what is written in these several lines? Read them one more time. You haven't understood it again, have you? You can give it one more go. It's useless. There is no sense in these letters and words, it's incomprehensible. But there is a clear thought that frees the hands of the "allies." It's really funny: Belgium should be restored, Romania should be evacuated, Poland should be erected, Serbia should get access to the sea, and what about Russia? Russia should get "*the best and freest cooperation of the other nations of the world in obtaining for her an unhampered and unembarrassed opportunity for the independent determination,*" which means Russia gets nothing! Nothing except these mere words, which oblige nobody to nothing.

Wilson's declaration with regard to Russia in the best possible way illustrates the Entente's resolute wish to destroy the statesmanship in our country. It's not permitted to support any of the fighting parties involved in the Civil War, — Russia shouldn't be limited in its independent determination. The Reds have a lot of weapons — the war material is piling in the warehouses from the tsarist times, all the military factories producing arms are located in their lands. To give weapons and machine guns to the Whites would be regarded as intervention. The fighters for the indivisible Russia should not get any money, either — this would be regarded as violation of the "independent determination." Lenin has practically all the treasures of the State Bank.

In this situation, the outcome of the fight between the Reds and the Whites can be easily predicted. Virtually, the Civil War has not started in earnest yet, when the fighters for the revival of the Russian statesmanship had been already betrayed.[1] The Soviet newspapers publish President Wilson's appeal not without a reason, and Bolsheviks are so happy, because no support will be given to the Whites. This declaration frees the hands of Bolsheviks for *any* actions with regard to Russia. One can explain anything he wishes: we have tried, but… and further as the text of the "Fourteen points" goes, there is a stream of the choicest mere words.

The U.S. President Woodrow Wilson writes about **all** the war participants, about **all** those downtrodden in the war, about Poland and Belgium, Serbia and Romania — directly and in details. But it's only about Russia that he writes very abstractly and utterly vaguely. Why? Because to write essentially one should get something like: the Russian territories must be evacuated, the usurpers of power must be banished, and the new free elections should be carried out supervised by an international commission, or maybe the previous All-Russian Constituent Assembly should be called again. Let it decide how Russia should live further. There is no place for Lenin and the others in **such** a Russia, and no other government will recognize the separation of the national borderlands, Ukraine and the South Caucasus. Russia will again be Great, United, and Indivisible. And then, Russia will require its part of the reparation payments and contributions, which are due to the winners in the World War. The revival of Russia will cancel all the efforts and expenses taken to destroy it. So, the U.S. President can't write about Russia in specific terms. If so, the colloquiums and scholastic debates on the interpretation of Wilson's unclear point № 6 about Russia can be arranged. Come on, who has got an idea of what *"and assure her of a sincere welcome into the society of free nations under institutions of her own choosing … that she may need and may herself desire"* means?

Quite different facts were worrying the "allies." In order to destroy the Russian economy, to ruin the country a civil war is needed, and somebody had to start it. However, the courageous withstand of the Cossacks of the Don Republic and the noble intentions of the first volunteers could not last for too long. Even though the Cossacks were so brave, they could not withstand the whole Russia. There was a disaffection towards the Bolshevik government, but it didn't materialize into any open armed fight against it in the Russian regions. If Bolsheviks crash the Cossacks, if they defeat the little volunteer army of Kornilov, everything will be over. There will be no Civil War, a devastating and ruthless one. And then Lenin's words from the article "The next Tasks of the Soviet Government," "The tasks to crush down the opposition of the exploiters has been, in general, performed" will sound as the death-bells for the plan of the "allies."

---

[1] When the Anglo-Saxons methodically destroyed the White movement, they could not expect that the Reds after a while would become real advocates of a strong state. The irony of fate is that Lenin, who had ruined Russia, saved it in plain view of the astonished gentlemen.

There is little use in the fact that the experimenters and extremists have been brought to power by the British and the French intelligence services. A simple logic of the state governing will very quickly force Lenin and his companions-in-arms to create instead of destructing. Can you imagine how much earlier Russia (even a Red one) would have regained its strength if the Civil War had finished without actually having been started? Or if there had been no Civil War at all...

These were exactly the "allies" who have added fuel to the fire of the Civil War. Our Slavonic brothers — the Czechs and the Slovaks — played the role of a spark for a tinderbox. Today they are citizens of two different states, and at that time, they were the subjects of the Austro-Hungarian Empire. During the war, the officers and soldiers of Slavonic origin felt sympathy for Russia and preferred to be taken prisoners instead of fighting for "the Kaiser and the monarchy." The fact that exactly the Czech soldiers were yielding themselves prisoners of war was quite common. Once over 2,000 officers and soldiers of the 28th Prague regiment came over to the Russian side, bringing along all the weapons and ammunition. It was exactly of those war dogs that the Czechoslovak Legion had been formed, which like a petrol can cast into the smouldering fire caused the explosion and put a start to a full-scale war on the territory of Russia.

After the October Russia has been written off the world political map, nobody is going to reckon with it. The Slavonic brothers are also changing their political orientation. The head of the Czechoslovaks petitioned the French government and President Poincare to consider all the Czech military units to be a part of the French Army. They have received an approval and from December 1917, the Czechoslovak Legion has been pro forma subjected to the French command.[1] The Bolsheviks had nothing against it: so what if two divisions, perfectly armed, trained, and equipped at the expense of the *Russian* Treasury, are declared to be an integral part of the *French* Army! (In fact, these were the French, and not the Czechoslovak troops, which were surprisingly slowly approaching Yekaterinburg, where the family of Nicholas II was awaiting its horrible fate. If so, their slowness can be explained and understood.)

Then the intrigues started. It was announced that the Czechs would be sent to the Western Front and, due to some reasons, not via Murmansk, as it had been planned earlier, but via Vladivostok, i.e., they had to go the longest way. Due to such a long distance, the troop trains with Czechoslovaks were stretching out on the big territory from Volga to the Ural and Siberia. Why did they decide to get involved in the Russian strife and started to mutiny instead of leaving Russia as soon as possible? The answer is very simple — they had been bribed by the "allied" representatives. Of course, the money was not given to every rank and file soldier, but to the commanders of the Legion. On March 3, 1918, the Czech organization "National Council" received the first payment of 1 million rubles from the French Consul. On March 7, the treasury of the Czech divisions got increased by 3 million rubles, on March 9 — by 2 million rubles, on March 25 — by 1 million rubles, and on March 26 — by 1 million rubles, as well. In total, the French Consul handed over to the Czechs 8 million rubles in less than a month. There were some other payments, too.

The Prukopnik Svobody Newspaper has informed about the total amount of 11 million 118 thousand rubles. This was the sum from the grateful France, the British have also paid 80 thousand pounds.

---

[1] http//www.rusk.ru/vst.php?idar=321442

In order to make a heavy cart crash in the abyss you have to push it. The mutiny of the Czechoslovaks started in Chelyabinsk — some of the officers were arrested by the local chekists for the relations with the "counterrevolutionary elements." In return, the Czechs seized the railway station and demanded that their fellow landsmen should be released. On May 25, Trotsky signed an order on the disarmament of the Czech troops, who had to turn in the weapons, but it was too late. The disciplined troops of the Czechoslovak Legion of 40 thousand officers and soldiers quickly occupied a vast territory. The national anti-Bolshevik forces will concentrate around them. Properly speaking, a wide-scale war of the mutual elimination of the Russians started with the Czechoslovak mutiny. *The credit of the Czechs and Slovaks will not be forgotten — the grateful Entente will cut out for them a territory for the independent Czechoslovakia on the map of Europe.*

The fire of the Russian strife has been started. The most important thing for the "allies" is to keep it burning. The Whites are needed to weaken the Red Army to the maximum. That's why they should be encouraged and supported. To make the war last as long as possible, to make Russia as weak as possible...

By understanding the logic of the British and French conduct, we can easily see the absurdity of the second myth: the "allied" governments supported the Whites during the Civil War and provided them significant assistance. In order not to be substantive, let's sort it out thoroughly. At first, let's sort out the terms. What does the word "assistance" mean?

"Assistance means help, support," the vocabulary reads. Let's see whether the White Guard has really received any help, whether they were actually supported.

Let's start with the diplomatic and governmental assistance. This issue is extremely interesting. There is a certain mess in the heads of common men regarding this issue.

Since the historians call Bolsheviks "usurpers" and "intruders," an unsophisticated reader might get the impression that the Reds have seized the power from the legitimate government. Consequently, they were mutineers. Actually, the process of the power takeover by Bolsheviks was so well prepared by Kerensky that the Whites, not the Reds, had to seize the country and fight it back. It was them who were the mutineers against the central authority of Lenin. In this situation, the legitimation of the actions of the fighters against Bolsheviks was extremely important. It was necessary to show that those were exactly the Whites who personified the legitimate power, and the Leninists, who had seized the power, were invaders and criminals. In this situation, only the international acknowledgement of the White government could give it the "legal" status.

It was exactly due to this that the "allies" wouldn't recognize any of the White regimes almost until the end of the Civil War. They didn't recognize the Reds, either. And that was giving a full freedom of manoeuvres to London and Paris.[1] All the territories, which had broken away from the Russian Empire, were recognized by Great Britain and France within days.

The Head of the British government Lloyd George was also very straight, "The expedience of the assistance to Admiral Kolchak or General Denikin is all the more a question of a controversial matter, because they fight for the united Russia. It's not up to me to point out, whether this motto corresponds to the policy of Great Britain. One of our great people, Lord Beaconsfield, saw in the huge, great and mighty Russia, which was rushing like an ice-hill in the direction of Persia, Afghanistan, and India, the greatest peril for the British Empire."

And the White leaders were waiting when the conscience of the western world would make them publicly announce which government was the lawful one in Russia.

It was extremely important, because the international recognition had many consequences:

---

[1] After the October Revolution, the French confiscated all the Russian real estate on the territory of France. As long as there is no lawful government, which is recognized by the west, this real estate is nobody's. One can manage it as well as a significant part of the Russian active assets abroad. Here is one more reason for not recognizing the White power.

- the Whites would be able to use the funds left in the west that were owned by the tsarist government and the Provisional Government;
- the embassies, which had been established in the Russian territory, occupied by Bolsheviks, should be closed down;
- any contacts of the consuls' "deputies" with Lenin and Trotsky could not be carried on officially;
- Russian population would get a clear message about which power in Russia was favoured by the empires who had won the war (even the blatant Communists could not hope to win the real fight with the whole world).

All this was creating favourable conditions for the victory of the Whites and the defeat of the Reds. And exactly this development of the events had to be avoided. Especially, when it became clear that the Russian generals were demonstrating persistence in many regards and were unwilling to sell the interests of their country. The creation of the "sanitary cordon" between Russia and Germany was one of the essential goals of the British policy. It was exactly for this purpose that the new states: Latvia, Lithuania, Estonia, Ukraine, Poland, and Finland had been established. Some other nice bits needed to be cut off Russia, as well: Azerbaijan, Georgia, Armenia, and Central Asia. If Supreme Governor of Russia Kolchak had recognized the separation from Russia of all those regions, which the British had wanted to separate, he would have become for them much dearer than Lenin, who often demonstrated a dangerous talent of a good orchestrator.

So, we have assured ourselves that the White movement didn't receive any political assistance. It was even worse with the military assistance. At the beginning of June 1918, Trotsky told one of the employees of the German diplomatic mission, "We are, as a matter of fact, the decedents, now the matter depends on the coffin maker."[1]

Bolsheviks could be defeated with a quickly established army. One must hurry — Trotsky and his assistants by either persuading or threatening with shooting down are already recruiting the officer corps of the Red Army. The undisciplined gangs threaten to become a well disciplined force. While there is no Army, the march on Moscow looks to be easy. The Red Guards will surrender and go over to the White Guards. The most important issue is to show that the Entente supports the White movement; if the Entente gives some arms and money, the victory is yours! So, Krasnov and Denikin are waiting for assistance. But there is no assistance, a thousand times no! Because the "allies" are not interested in the quick end of the Civil War. They don't wish the White Guard to have an easy victory, either. An ideal outcome for them is a long painful fight, in the vortex of which the Navy, the economy, and the Tsar's family would disappear. As well as Russia itself ...

---

[1] Bothmer K. With Baron Mirbach in Moscow. M., 2004 (http//lib.misto.kiev.ua/HISTORY/FELSHTINSKY/bothmer.txt)

During almost nine months, the most difficult first months, the White movement was left by the "allies" in the dust. At the moment, while Lenin and Trotsky didn't have a real fighting force yet, the "allies" gave the White Guard neither their troops, nor arms, nor money. General Denikin's comment is, "The main sources of supply till February 1919 were the reserves of Bolsheviks we had seized."[1] Baron Wrangel says the same, "The supply of the army was not regular, mainly effected at the expense of the enemy."[2] And the Soviet troops, which are badly organized so far, have everything in abundance. To compare the equipment of the Reds and the Whites at the beginning of the Civil War, we have to realize that the Reds had the equipment of the *whole* multimillion tsarist army, while the Whites had only whatever they had managed to seize from the Reds! "The shortage of the bullets was sometimes catastrophic, — Denikin writes, — the uniforms were real cast-offs.

There were no sanitary supplies. There were no medicines, bandages, or bed-linen. There were only the doctors, who were unable to fight against diseases."[1] Here is the White Army: lousy, barefoot, and without bullets. Only after the Red Army had grown on the other side of the barricades, the "allies" started to supply the White Army with ammunition and other military goods. Otherwise, the Reds would have quickly crashed the Whites...

---

[1] Thus, almost a year! (Denikin A. The Sketches on the Russian Time of Troubles/The White Movement/M.: Vagrius, 2006. P. 125).

[2] Wrangel P. Notes. Book 1. Chapter 2 (http://militera.lib.ru/memo/russian/vrangel1/02.html)

Could the British and the French have given money instead of weapons to the fighters for Russia? OK, they could not have sent any troops, but they could at least give some money, couldn't they?! General Denikin dispels the myth, "Despite the established opinion, we have not received a kopeck from the 'allies.'"

Further on in his memoirs Denikin describes a very sad picture — in addition to the ration, a soldier of the Volunteer Army received a money allowance, which was 30 rubles per month in 1918, the officers from a sub-officer to a commander-in-chief received from 270 to 1,000 per month.[2] A living wage of a worker at that time was from 660 to 780 rubles! And the officers and soldiers had their families, wives, and children. They were going to lead a miserable hungry existence. And not a kopeck from the British or French...

Let's return to the Russian North. After the Red Guards and the British soldiers had fought together against the White Finns, the situation changed a bit. The White Guards arranged an overthrow in Arkhangelsk, and the new government was established, headed by Tchaikovsky, the former member of "Narodnaya Volya."[3] Very soon the power was taken by the military dictatorship of General Miller. But it doesn't change the core of the subject. All the power in the Russian North belongs to the British, not to the Russians. The British are not in a hurry to attack Red

---

[1] Denikin A. The Sketches on the Russian Time of Troubles/The White Movement/M.: Vagrius, 2006. P. 195).

[2] Ib.

[3] Translator's note: Narodnaya Volya ("People Freedom" or "People's Will") — a revolutionary political organization in the Russian Empire in the 19 century, which advocated an indigenous socialism based upon the massive Russian peasantry, a movement known as "Populism."

Petrograd. They have different tasks. The most important one is to keep watching over the liquidation of Russia according to the prepared plan. All the other current actions are subject to the fulfilment of the main task.

By August 1918, there were more than ten thousand Entente soldiers in the north. They were moving towards Petrograd. At least, this is what the textbooks on history tell us. Our surprise will know no limits, when we read in these textbooks that wishing "to strangle" the young Soviet Republic the British troops managed to build up an unbelievable speed: they advanced forty kilometres deep into the Russian territory in two months! They were moving at a snail's pace, despite the absence of any withstand from the Red Guards. Then they stopped entirely. General Marushevsky, the last chief of the staff of the Russian Army during the time of the Provisional Government, one of the leaders of the White Guard in the north, explained the situation as follows, "The Russian military command didn't have any independence and carried out all the orders of the "allied" headquarters. My instructions regarding the necessary offensive on Dvina and Murmansk Fronts were rejected by the "allies," because the number of the troops was not enough and the locals, which had their sympathies with Bolsheviks, were insecure."[1]

The facts, which we are interested in, can be easily found in the book "Civil War 1918–1921," "After a lull in fighting, the enemy (the British) tried to move along Arkhangelsk railway." And further, "The slow actions of the British command at the beginning made it possible for the Soviet command to gather forces to defend the Soviet theatre of war in the north."[2] Slowly trying to see how the land lies, the "allies" were moving forward, but they stopped as soon as they met a minimum resistance from the Red Army. The motivation of such a slow "speed" of the British is rather interesting.

---

[1] The Civil War in Russia: the War in the North. M.: AST; Transitkniga; St. Pb.: Terra Fantastica, 2004 . P. 323.

[2] Kakurin N., Vatsetis I. The Civil War of 1918–1921. St. Pb.: Poligon, 2002. P. 94.

It appears that the British Commander General Poole needed at least five battalions more for a successful offensive. Please, compare these values:

- five battalions (several thousands of soldiers),
- the salvation of Russia.

If General Poole is given these five battalions, he will take Petrograd, Bolsheviks will be crashed, the new Russian time of troubles will be over, and the tormented Russia will catch a break… The above values can't be compared. You won't be surprised, though, to learn that neither the British, nor the French command have given the required troops. The Soviet military leaders, who have written the book "Civil War 1918–1921," tell us in detail about the British "march" to Petrograd, but their story very soon starts to look like an anecdote:

"They addressed the highest commander of the "allies" Marshal Foch. The latter found it expedient to send the U.S. troops directly from America to Arkhangelsk. *However, the government of the USA has rejected this request.* Thus, the matter of five battalions, which should have been sent to Arkhangelsk, has grown into an international event… Poole was standing there waiting."[1]

The behind-the-scenes agreements of the "allies" with Bolsheviks create surprising difficulties. Neither the British, nor the French have five spare battalions. There are several million officers and soldiers in their armies, it's November 1918. World War 1 is over, but the Entente doesn't have any spare forces. To send five battalions to Russia or not to send them — this question is decided by no less than the U.S. President Wilson himself.

- The very president who in December 1913 signed the "Federal Reserve Act,"
- The very president who established the Federal Reserve System that consequently created the world monopoly for the dollar.[2]

---

[1] Kakurin N., Vatsetis I. The Civil War of 1918–1921. St. Pb.: Poligon, 2002. P. 95.

[2] About the Federal Reserve System and Its Way to The World Power. Starikov N. Crisis. How It Is Done. St. Pb.: Piter, 2009.

The Federal Reserve System, which was impossible to establish as long as the gold Russian Ruble and the gold Deutsche Mark remained...

Will President Wilson give his permit to send the troops to crash the very Bolsheviks who are helping to liquidate a huge continental empire and the Russian Ruble secured by gold? The Bolsheviks fighting for the world revolution are liquidating the competitors of the Anglo-Saxons. It's not difficult to guess the answer of the U.S. President: Wilson refuses to send the troops. There are no five spare battalions. Bolsheviks needn't worry about their Northern Front...

One more year has passed. Late in September 1918, the "allies" quickly evacuate their troops from the Russian North. What do you think the British will do with all the military goods accumulated on the piers of the northern ports, for the sake of which they allegedly had carried out the landing? Knowing the real goals of the British, you will easily guess it.

Before their departure from Murmansk and Arkhangelsk, the "allies" had sunk all the military supplies instead of handing them over to the Russians. "Cars, airplanes, shells, bullets, fuel, and a big amount of equipment, which is literally everything that the Russian troops needed so much, had been burnt and thrown into the sea."[1]

A witness writes, "All this was done in the daytime, in full view of many people, making it look like a funeral."[2] After the departure of the British, the Russian troops were literally "supplied" from the bottom of the sea. Recently, there was a report from Arkhangelsk in the TV program Vremya. They started to take up and liquidate the shells and ammunition, which had been lying for years on the bottom of the gulf. Risking their lives, deep divers are taking all the rusty stuff up. These are the reserves that were sunk by the British in autumn 1919, and not the echo of the Great Patriotic War.

---

[1] Graf H. On Board of Novik. The Baltic Navy During the War And the Revolution. St. Pb.: Gangut, 1997. P. 438.

[2] The Civil War in Russia: The War in the North. M.: AST; Transitkniga; St. Pb.: Terra Fantastica, 2004 . P. 330.

What was the help of the western democracies to the White Guard then? What was the assistance which the leaders of Great Britain, France, and the USA were talking about all the time, the assistance the modern historians speak of even today? When reading the memoirs of the White generals, we see the contrary: the Anglo-Saxons didn't help at all. World War 1 is over. A lot of ammunition and equipment of the "allies" that were supposed to be used in military actions has been left. General Denikin asks to give him this military supplies, which were not to be used in any war action. The reply is negative. "The French didn't want to give us huge reserves that belonged to them and the Americans, which were left after the war, even though this stuff could not cover the expenses for its storage and had to be quickly liquidated anyway."[1]

No money was given, no weapons were sent free-of-charge. What are the textbooks on history talking about? Did the "allies" help the Whites with anything at all? The answer is as simple as a sentencing decision: **with nothing.** "Either we lacked a certain logic or the French were too inactive, but we could not get the economic relations with France going... *This was not help, but the exchange of goods and regular trade,*" General Denikin notices.

All the help of the "allies" is not help in a general sense. It's ACQUISITION. All the supplies are paid up with money or exchanged for raw materials which Russia is so rich in. The White Guard has even got some gold: in summer 1918, in Kazan, the White Guards seized a half of Russia's gold reserves. The gold was then sent to Kolchak — hundreds tons of gold, platinum, silver, and jewels at the fantastic amount of 1 billion and 300 million gold rubles (in accordance with the prices of 1914). But even for this money it was extremely difficult to buy something from the "allies."

The main problem was that buying the weapons from the "allies" was, actually, the only option for Kolchak and Denikin. The trade was not mutually beneficial. One side was always deceiving another. We are not talking about the artificial overvaluation and the bad quality of goods here. We are talking about the system, about the direct treachery, when one side was inflicting damage to the other by its action planned in advance. Just one example: after having sent one or two transports with a small amount of military supplies, the French government ultimately declared (as Denikin describes it) that "it would have to stop the delivery of military supplies" unless "we obliged to supply wheat for the respective amount."[1] It takes place in the fervour of the military actions. You don't get any bullets until you pay for them. This is the way the French government speaks with the Russians. This is pure treachery. But the delicate General Denikin will put it very mildly in his memoirs, when writing about France, "As a result, we have not received any real help from France: neither a firm diplomatic support, nor a credit aid, nor supplies."[2]

---

[1] Denikin A. The Sketches on the Russian Time of Troubles. Paris. 1921 (http://militera.lib.ru/memo/russian/denikin_ai2/5_06.html)

It seems that we have mentioned all the means of help and support. But still, we have forgotten one thing. The "allies" could help the White Guard with the ideas and concepts. The Civil War is a battle of ideas in their pure form. The one with better propaganda can demoralize the enemy much quicker, and those in two minds and full of doubts will follow him. To understand the causes of the White Guard's defeat, one needs to read their documents, find out more about their slogans and ideology, which was leading the Russian White Guards in the battles. What was being offered to the Russian people instead of Bolshevism? Let's read some documents. Here is the first political appeal of the Volunteer Army to the Russian people, written by Denikin himself:

"The goal of the Volunteer Army is to save Russia by the means of creating a strong, patriotic, and disciplined army and of ruthless fight against the Bolshevism, supported by all the social groups who think in the terms of the state. The leaders of the army (Generals Kornilov and Alexeyev) didn't predetermine the future forms of the state government, making it dependent on the decision of the

---

[1] Denikin A. The Sketches on the Russian Time of Troubles. Paris. 1921 (http://militera.lib.ru/memo/russian/denikin_ai2/5_06.html)

[2] Ib.

All-Russian Constituent Assembly, which will be called upon installing the legal order in the country."[1]

Let's fight against Bolsheviks, let's risk our lives. What for? It's unclear. After the military dictatorship of Admiral Kolchak, who had declared himself the supreme governor of Russia, was installed in Omsk, he chased away the local "babblers that adhered the Constituent Assembly," and right after having taken the power, in November 1918, he issued a manifest:

"The All-Russian Provisional Government has collapsed. The Council of Ministers has taken over the full power and handed it to me, Alexander Kolchak. Having taken over the cross of power in the extremely difficult setting of the Civil War and the total disturbance of the state functions, I declare that I will neither take the track of the reaction, nor the perilous track of the party affiliation. My main objective will be the creation of a battle-ready army, the victory over Bolshevism, and the establishment of the lawfulness and the system of justice in order to make it possible for the Russian people to choose the form of government according to their wish, and thus realize the great ideas of freedom, which are now being proclaimed all over the world."[2]

What do we see here? The same again — go on dying for "the great ideas of freedom, which are now being proclaimed all over the world"[2] in order to make it possible "for the Russian people to choose the form of government according to their wish." "Somebody somewhere sometimes,"[3] this line from the Soviet song about the militia characterizes the manifests of *every* White leader in the best way. They seem to be afraid to say the burning words, which will make the hearts of the patriots and the eyes of the tired and demoralized people shine. As if something prevents them from doing this. Or may it be that somebody prevents them?

---

[1] Denikin A. The Sketches on the Russian Time of Troubles. Paris. 1921 (http://militera.lib.ru/memo/russian/denikin_ai2/5_06.html)

[2] http//www.hrono.info./sobyt/1900sob/19181118.kolchak.html

[3] Translator's note: This is a line from the song "Invisible Battle" composed by Mark Minkov.

"The Socialist Motherland is in danger!" Bolsheviks say, raising the workers to fight Denikin, Kolchak, and Yudenich. "For the great ideas of freedom!" Kolchak answers.

What is he talking about? When have the Russian people breathed deeply this air of freedom, which they should die for now? Was it in February, when the policemen and gendarmes were lying with their skulls broken in the streets of Petersburg? Was it during Kerensky's reign, when chaos and anarchy were slopped over the streets? There has never been any air of freedom in Russia. The Russians have never breathed the air of freedom, that's why the slogans of the Whites were good for the USA or France, but didn't suit Russia. It was exactly due to this reason that the "allies" kept enforcing them. That's why there was no "triumphant march" of the Whites in the country, but there was a "triumphant march" of the Soviet power instead!

"If the White Guard had put forth an idea of a peasant tsar, we would have not stood more than a week," Trotsky will say later. Here is the main idea of the policy followed by the "allies" — to take on leadership in the struggle of the Russian people against Bolsheviks. Their help to the Whites stipulated the absence of the monarchical slogans, prevention of the ideas concerning the revival of monarchy in Russia, and at the same time, the "allies" didn't provide any tangible support. They wanted to take charge of the struggle of the Russian patriots to direct it as it was favourable for them; to take charge of the struggle in order to liquidate it.

As a result, a certain perplexity shows through in the memoirs of many White Guards: the educated officers are at a loss to answer the simple questions of the peasants: what are they fighting for, what will the White power give a common man? Because nobody knows the answer. All the Whites are *against* Bolsheviks. This is clear. But nobody knows *what* they advocate for...

The historians used to explain the political situation of those years by quoting the words of a well-known song, "The White Army and 'Black baron' are preparing the tsarist throne."[1] They were lying!

---

[1] Translator's note: A song known as the "Red Army March" composed by Samuel Pokrass and Pavel Gorinstein during the Civil War.

None of the White Armies had the revival of the monarchy as their official objective.

Had they had such a goal, they would have received nothing from the "allies." The western newspapers would raise a hue and cry at the slightest suspicion of the reactionary (i.e., monarchical) spirit, and the leaders of the "democratic" opposition would resent in tune with them. The same people, who had quickly and efficiently managed to destroy the country within a half of a year under the revelry of Kerensky's democracy, represented the Russian fighters with the Bolshevism abroad.

One of the prominent figures in this cohort is Boris Bakhmeteff. He is a KD[1] and a professor in the St. Petersburg Polytechnic University. The corpse of Rasputin has been burned in the crematorium of this university. During the rule of the Provisional Government, he was a deputy minister of trade and industry; from April 1917, he is the extraordinary and plenipotentiary ambassador of Russia to the USA. Due to the fact that the USA hadn't recognized either the Bolshevik or any other White government in Russia, a curious diplomatic situation occurred. Mr. Bakhmeteff was representing Russia and the government which did not exist anymore and would never exist. He was not just representing but was **single-handedly (!)** managing the active assets of the Provisional Government, which had been earlier sent to the USA for purchasing weapons. He had quite a considerable amount of about 50 million US dollars. To perceive the size of the amount, one can compare it with the Spanish gold reserves, which were removed from Spain and brought over to the USSR by NKVD[2] during the Civil War in Spain: they were 500 million US dollars.

The modest Mr. Bakhmeteff managed some huge money. He did it for the benefit of his motherland, of course. He used this amount to:

- pay the interest on the Russian loans in the American banks,
- to support the White governments.

---

[1] Translator's note: KD — Member of the Constitutional Democratic Party.

[2] Translator's note: The People's Commissariat for Internal Affairs, abbreviated NKVD, was the leading Soviet secret police organization from 1934 to 1946.

The most interesting detail is that Bakhmeteff financed the American Expeditionary Force in Russia. Thus, the American soldiers, who did very little in the struggle against Bolsheviks and helped a lot to export the Russian treasures abroad correctly, were staying in Russia at the expense of Russia! The US President Wilson was very grateful to Bakhmeteff for such care, and the subsequent leaders of the country awarded Bakhmeteff with the American citizenship. The "provisional" ambassador became rich in his second motherland at a great pace.

He became so rich that the most interesting archive is still being financed with the interests on his funds.

Its full name is the Archive of Bakhmeteff on the Russian, East European history and culture. As the matter of fact, this is an archive of the White movement. There are over 200 boxes with documents that concern Wrangel, almost 500 boxes with documents that concern the Russian Embassy in Washington. It includes the private archives of Denikin, Yudenich, and Miller. There is all the history of the struggle for the restoration and salvation of our country there. All these treasures are kept *only for the interests on the founder's capital.* Just like Alfred Nobel's Nobel prizes. How did Bakhmeteff earn this huge money if he was an ordinary professor at the Columbia University?

Let's not suspect the respected ambassador of some dirty business. Without any doubt, he didn't pocket a cent of those 50 million US dollars, which he could distribute *at his sole discretion.* When SRs Avksentiev and Chernov ruled in Siberia, KD Bakhmeteff gave money to them. When Kolchak came to power, he stopped financing them. Denikin, who was deadly fighting against Bolsheviks, didn't get anything, either. In return, Baron Wrangel, who followed Denikin, received help, when the White Army was being evacuated from the Crimea. Bakhmeteff didn't give any money for the war, but gave money to make it end. He built a little modest match factory for himself, which made him a millionaire. Where did he get money to build a factory? Most likely, he got a loan. A non-interest and non-repayable one...

The contemporary myths about the Civil War are even farther from reality than their "Soviet" co-brothers. Let's recall these unsophisticated fictions:

- the "allies" supported the good Whites in the Civil War;
- the Germans supported the bad Reds.

While several thick volumes have been written to unmask the first thesis, we have made only a passing mention of the second matter. Germany didn't practically provide Bolsheviks with any military aid or weapons. That's true — the German officers have no sympathy for the Reds. Colonel Drozdovsky, one of the prominent figures of the White movement, early in 1918, in the fervour of the peace negotiations with the Germans in Brest, formed a detachment and headed to General Kornilov to Don. They had to move almost in parallel with the German troops and sometimes through the territories occupied by the Germans. "The relationship with the Germans is really strange: as if we are the acknowledged allies. A certain strict ethics is followed, in the clashes with the Ukrainians the Germans are always on our side, an absolute respect is shown, — Drozdovsky will write in his diary. — We are paying back with a strict ethics, too."

Gradually the sympathies of the common officers grow into a policy. The Germans support the anti-Bolshevik Ukraine and Georgia. They start to build up the relationship with the revolting Cossacks of Krasnov. These are the "allies" who didn't give the hetman a single rifle or bullet. Germany proceeds in a different way. Let's give word to Hetman Krasnov himself, "The Don Republic was in total desolation and breakdown. The palace of the hetman was left by Bolsheviks in such a state that one could not move in before having done some major repair. The churches were desecrated, many Cossack villages were destroyed."[1]

Bolsheviks go over to the offensive against the Cossack villages, the German troops move southwards, too. The state of affairs in the Don Republic is so bad that the Russians would describe it in the foul words only. A Red wave is going to overwhelm the Cossack villages. Something should be done urgently. And Hetman Krasnov makes an unprecedented move: right after he had been elected as the hetman on May 5, 1918, he writes a letter to... Kaiser Wilhelm! The hetman decides to come in contact with the head of the enemy's empire. A remarkably bold act for that time!

---

[1] Krasnov P. The Great Don Republic.//APP.V.5. Berlin, 1922. (http://militera.lib.ru/memo/russian/krasnov_pn2/01.html)

Pay attention to the date, please. The Peace Treaty of Brest-Litovsk was signed long ago. And now Krasnov suggests that the Germans united against the Soviet power, which is advantageous for Germany. The answer of the Germans was quick as lightning. And it was positive: three days later, on May 8, in the evening, a German delegation came to the hetman. The Germans announced that they didn't have any aggressive goals and were only interested in the soonest establishment of the proper order in the Don Republic. During one of the meetings with the Cossacks, Krasnov said directly, "The external enemies of yesterday, the Austro-Hungarians, have entered the territory of the Don Republic to fight in alliance with us the gangs of the Red Guards and to establish the proper order at Don. Being aware of the strict discipline of the Germans, I'm sure that we'll manage to keep good relations with them as long as they need to stay here to secure the order until we establish our own army, which will be able to guarantee the personal security and inviolability of every citizen without any aid of the foreign troops."[1]

So, whose "allies" were the Germans after all: were they the allies of the Reds or the Whites? On June 5, 1918, the Germans declared that the hetman of the Don Republic had been recognized as a state power representative. **Pay attention, please: until 1920 (which was for almost three years!) the "allies" did not recognize any of the White governments.** *Whereas Germany did it after one month!*

Then "the relations between the states" began. Germany doesn't plunder the Cossacks, doesn't rob them blind, and uses the right moment to start the right trade relations. "To start with, we have sorted out the question regarding the currency exchange rates.

---

[1] http://fstanitsa.ru/2/41_5.shtml

A German mark costs seventy five 'Don' kopecks,"[1] Hetman Krasnov writes in his diary. A combined Don-Germany export committee, which managed the trade issues, was established in Rostov, which had been liberated from Bolsheviks. The Don Republic started to receive sugar from Ukraine and later was to receive other goods in short supply directly from Germany.

The head of the Don Republic followed Lenin's tactics and made an agreement with Germany. Being protected by the Germany's broad back, he managed to build up his Cossack Army and to arm it. They purchased weapons and other kinds of ammunition in Germany, as well.

In Ukraine occupied by the Germans, there were truly inexhaustible supplies of the Russian arms. The Germans were selling those arms or rather exchanging them at a fixed price: a Russian rifle with 30 bullets was exchanged for sixteen kilograms of wheat or rye. The "trade" was not limited to the light weapons, Krasnov concluded a contract on delivery of airplanes, guns, and shells. During the first month and a half, the Germans handed over 11,651 Mosin Nagants (3-line rifle M1891), 46 guns, 88 machine guns, 109,104 artillery shells, and 11,594,721 rifle bullets to the Don Republic, Kuban, and the Volunteer Army. The Don Republic even received heavy weapons, which the Germans had refused to supply them with before. In addition to this, Krasnov's arsenals got increased by 100 machine guns, 9 airplanes, 500,000 rifle bullets, and 10,000 shells.

Up until now, I have not seen any information about the joint military actions of Germans and Bolsheviks against the White Guards anywhere. However, it has been reliably ascertained that during the battles under Bataysk German troops, Don Cossacks, and the Battalion of the Volunteer Army fought together against the Red Guards. However, the Germans also fought the Red Guards on their own. Krasnov writes, "The Germans with significant losses managed to stop the crazy Bolshevik attempt of landing at the Taganrog Bay and taking over Taganrog. The Germans were reluctant to fight with Bolsheviks, but when the combat situation demanded, they acted resolutely, and the Don Army did not need to worry about the zone that was occupied by the Germans. The whole western border with Ukraine from Kantemirovka to the Sea of Azov, about fifty versts long, was absolutely safe, and the Don Republic government didn't hold a single soldier there."[1]

---

[1] Krasnov P. The Great Don Republic // APP. V. 5. Berlin, 1922. (http://militera.lib.ru/memo/russian/krasnov_pn2/01.html)

But can we say then that Germans supported Bolsheviks? The facts make us recognize that the Germans were not the allies of Lenin and his comrades, but were the allies of Lenin's opponents — the Cossacks.

Where were the French, the British, and the Americans at this time? The rumours of their landing were circulating continuously. These were not only the White officers and the Cossacks, but also the Red Guards, who talked about it. Krasnov writes, "Of course, Bolsheviks were aware of the events in the west and immediately started with their propaganda with regard to Denikin and the Don hetman, who would never be supported by the "allies," because the western democracies are at one with Bolsheviks and would not let their soldiers fight against Bolsheviks."[2]

The Germans helped the Cossacks mostly. Only because the Cossacks didn't oppose to get help and didn't show any hostility towards the Germans. The Volunteer Army of Denikin would have received support, as well, if Denikin himself had not opposed and refused to accept it. Cossack Colonel Polyakov, who was fighting in the ranks of the Don Army, estimates the lost opportunities as follows, "As well as today, at that time I did not have any doubts that in case the leaders of the Volunteer Army had taken another course with regard to the Germans, with the help of the Germans we would have used the richest military reserves in Ukraine and at the Romanian Front, and within a very short time would have established the real armies, which if moved in the depths of Russia, would have easily coped with Bolsheviks, who at that time, as it's well-known, didn't have any organized reliable forces."[1]

---

[1] Krasnov P. The Great Don Republic // APP. V.5. Berlin, 1922. (http://militera.lib.ru/memo/russian/krasnov_pn2/01.html)

[2] Ib.

But the leaders of the anti-Bolshevik forces, who determined the policy of the Whites, helpless as blind kittens stood by the "allies" and patiently waited for their assistance. They were really good people, but too poor at politics. There was a chance to save Russia, but to use this chance they needed Lenin's flexibility. They should have understood that those were exactly Russia's "allies" who were interested in the liquidation of Russia, and that its "enemy," Germany, could really give a helping hand. But they failed to understand it...

Then November 1918 came, and Germany collapsed. Starting from this moment, the weapons and other support could be received only from the Entente. Here the "allies" showed their true face. They are watching the balance of forces and looking after the Whites, who should not become stronger than the Reds. The behaviour of the French and the British is unpredictable: now they sell the weapons, now they stop doing it. They control the narrow stream of delivery.

If Kolchak is on the offensive, Denikin will receive help. When Denikin is smothered, Kolchak will be supported. The help of the "allies" will not go wherever it's needed at the certain moment. Pyotr Wrangel witnesses, "A wide assistance, promised by the foreigners, has already started to produce effect. The ships, loaded with artillery armament and engineer material, military uniforms and medications, were continuously arriving to Novorossiysk. The arrival of a great number of airplanes and tanks was expected in the nearest future."[2] It was exactly at the time when the Kolchak Army was retreating due to the shortage of ammunition. Because all the munitions had were delivered Denikin, and not to Kolchak!

The supplies started, but "the stream was shallow." "The ammunition was delivered in the quantities that were not sufficient for our armies, though, but this was the main vital source of their subsistence,"[1] this is Denikin's comment about the same period, the second half of 1919, when the British generously supplied him instead of supporting the perishing Kolchak. Regulating the deliveries was not a challenging task. If they needed to shorten the supplies, the negotiations were dragged out, and objective difficulties were mentioned. If they had to speed up the delivery, no difficulties existed, and the required weapons were on the way. Several dozens tons of gold were sent abroad by Kolchak, but the return supplies were delayed.

---

[1] Polyakov I. The Don Cossacks in the Struggle Against the Bolsheviks. (http://allbooks.com.ua/read_book.php?page=58&file_path/16/book07549.gz)

[2] http//www.hrono.info./libris/lib_we/vran12.html

Already in 1919, he said, "In my opinion they are not interested in creating a strong Russia. They do not need it." But he still addressed the same scoundrels — the "allies," asking them for weapons and ammunitions. He had no other suppliers...

Can you try to plan a large offensive operation without having a fixed schedule of the weapon deliveries in your head? The ships of the "allies" might deliver the weapons in September or in October — you never know. Maybe, they will not deliver any weapons at all. Or the weapons might be delivered not to you, but to Denikin. which was not to SIBERIA, but to the VOLGA region. They will smile in return to your perplexity and say something about "a total mess on the Transsiberian Railway." But your soldiers still have to shoot. The wounded ones need to be bandaged, and the old weapons should be replaced with the new ones. On the other side of the trenches there are the Reds. All the ammo warehouses of the tsarist army are on their territory. They have enough weapons, the Bolshevik food groups have expropriated the food from the peasants, and the peasants themselves got driven into the trenches. Even though their provisions are modest, the Reds are not hungry, and they have their uniforms on. The number of the Red Guards is big, much bigger than that of the White Guards. To make them fight successfully, there are commissars in all the military units. The one who tries to flee is shot dead on-site. Can you try to crush such an enemy without military supplies delivered on the regular basis, inspired by enthusiasm alone?

---

[1] Denikin A. The Sketches on the Russian Time of Troubles. Paris. 1921 (http://militera.lib.ru/memo/russian/denikin_ai2/5_06.html)

And what is more, the Reds had gold, too. The Gold reserve was divided almost fifty-fifty between the Reds and the Whites. And Bolsheviks also receive some military supplies. But they were secret and were carried out in accordance with the behind-the-scenes agreements. It's difficult to find direct evidence, but there is a lot of indirect once. Professor Sutton writes, "there are State Department records that show guns and ammunition were shipped to Bolsheviks. And in 1919, while Trotsky was making anti-American speeches in public, he was also asking Ambassador Francis for American military inspection teams to train the new Soviet Army."

It was not without a reason that Ilyich appointed Trotsky the head of the army. It looks like he is a magician and an illusionist. In the middle of 1919, the Red Army numbered 1,5 million soldiers, and by the end of 1918, it was less than 400,000. The hungry and devastated country within eight months managed to provide uniforms, footwear, weapons, and provisions to more than ONE MILLION of NEW SOLDIERS.

Where has all this ammunition come from? It was bought and delivered to Russia by the British, the Americans, and the French. It was impossible to get it anywhere else: there were no more countries, where the ammunition could have been taken away from or expropriated, it was only possible to buy it from the countries that had won the World War.

At first sight, the life is getting better for the Whites, too. "From the beginning of 1919, the British have supplied us with 558 guns, 12 tanks, 1,685,522 shells, and 160,000,000 bullets,"[1] Denikin writes. 250,000 sets of uniforms arrived by sea from Great Britain. Is this a lot or a little? It is difficult to say at once. We have to make a comparison.

Let's open the memoirs of the commander of the Drozdovsky division, Major General Turkul, "A very heavy combat in the environs of Heidelberg (a German colony in the Crimea — N. S.) made us remember the combats during the Great War. We have shot *about 5,000 shells*; the Reds, as I suppose, have shot twice as much."[1]

---

[1] Denikin A. The Sketches on the Russian Time of Troubles. Paris. 1921 (http://militera.lib.ru/memo/russian/denikin_ai2/5_06.html)

The White artillery is delivering a storm fire: 5,000 shots in one day. Let's make a calculation: if that much shells were consumed per day, the British supplies (1,685,522) will hold out for 337 combat days. Let the combat take place not every day, but once in three days. It means that the ammunition brought by the "allies" is enough for three years. We shall thank them, bow from our waists — they have provided Denikin's Army really well. Its artillery can shoot non-stop for three years. *On one condition, though*... if the White Army consisted of *the Drozdovsky division alone!*

All the shells were delivered to the frontline, nothing was left in the depots, nothing was lost, nothing was captured by the Reds or by the troops of Makhno, which were fighting in the rear areas. This is the way to dispel the magic of numbers: millions of shells have been delivered, and there are no shells to shoot with if the British supplies are divided by the number of all the *White Guards*...

Because Her Majesty's government needs the victory of the Reds, and not of the Whites. However, there was one more option.

Which one? Put yourself in the place of the Russian catastrophe's orchestrators. Put aside your conscience, your honesty, and your love for the mankind, all the moral values, which make you sink like a stone in the real political world. And you will see that the only acceptable alternative to the Bolshevik victory for the western governments was a draw, when both enemies were near death.

And indeed, the "allies" tried to create two Russias. To make two small and weak countries instead of one big and mighty one. The British suggested that a peace conference should be held on the Prince Islands (in the Sea of Marmara not far from Constantinople). The Reds and the Whites were supposed to sit down at the negotiation table and divide Russia in two, and at the same time to recognize the separation of the borderlands. To sign a peace agreement which would mean the legitimate recognition of the separation of their motherland. The British didn't address either the Reds or the Whites directly in order not to give the impression of the acknowledging of the Reds or the Whites de facto by London. The invitation to the peace conference was published and radiocasted on January 23, 1919. The Reds quickly agreed. Lenin perfectly knows *what* the "allies" really want, that's why Bolsheviks say that they are "ready to make advances with regard to the wishes of the allied states." Lev Trotsky mentions the proposals in his book "On the Social Democratic Criticism," "1) recognizing Russia's debt obligations, 2) pawning of Russia's raw materials to guarantee the payment of the loan and interests, 3) granting concessions — at the choice of the parties, 4) the territorial acquiescence in the form of the military occupation of some of the Russian regions by the Entente's armed forces or by its Russian agents. We have offered all this to the capitalist world in the radiogram broadcasted on February 4, 1919, to make it leave us in peace."[1]

---

[1] http//www.rusk.ru/vst.php?idar=321705

That is to say, Bolsheviks are ready to do anything to keep their power. They are ready to sign a new Peace Treaty of Brest. The Whites are definitely against it. General Denikin sends his personal protest to Marshal Foch.

Admiral Kolchak told the British officer that he was unable to sleep after having heard about the Prince Islands. The Whites are deeply indignant: they are insulted by the very proposal regarding the negotiations with the tormentors of Russia. Their obstinacy spoils a good idea. There could have been two Russias: the Russia of Lenin and the Russia of Kolchak.[2] The "allies" would sell weapons to both, make them attack each other, and plunder the riches of the country, artificially divided in two. The British intelligence services have already reached their goals: all the national borderlands have seceded from Russia, the economy of the country is destroyed, the transport system is ruined, a significant part of the Navy has been sunk. All pretenders to the throne are already killed. One can finish the war in order to start cashing on rebuilding the country and robbing Russia of its natural resources.

---

[1] Trotsky L. The Problems of the International Proletarian Revolution. The Main Questions of the Proletarian Revolution. On the Social Democratic Criticism. (http:// society.polbu.ru/Trotsky_revolution/ch52_all.html)

[2] After the "allies" had failed to hold the peace conference on the Prince Islands, they made another attempt to break down the territory of our country. The American emissary William Bullitt arrived in Moscow in March 1919. He is the member of the American delegation at the peace conference in Paris, where the Entente empires were dividing the dividends of their victory in World War 1. Russia, who had sacrificed several millions of lives for this victory, was not represented at this conference

The liquidation of the White movement by the "allies" is a historic fact. Many volumes would be needed to describe all the secrets and progress of the liquidation process. That's why from the huge volume of information we select only the most clear and undeniable facts to prove that the British and the French betrayed those who were trying to save Russia from Bolsheviks. But even a little bit of information will be more than enough to realize who the Whites owe their defeat in the Civil War to.

---

at all. Bullitt, the future first American ambassador to the USSR, has come to an agreement with Bolsheviks regarding the end of the war and regarding the preservation of the Russian governments within the borders of the conquered territories. Bullitt failed with his mission, and this mission was turned down by those who had sent him. The U.S. President Wilson forbade to publish the draft of the agreement, which Bullitt had brought to Paris, and Lloyd George, making his speech in the Parliament, denied his partaking in the staging the negotiations with the Soviet government. Why? They decided that they would have it easy to manipulate this State formation due to the presence in the Soviet government of Trotsky and other "ardent revolutionaries", who had been dealing with the British Intelligence Services since long ago. They were not aware that Stalin's would soon emerge out of the shade of the history...

CHAPTER 9

The Liquidation of Denikin

> The Volunteer Army...
>
> The members of the Russian intelligentsia... The officers...
>
> Next to the banner of the "united and indivisible" Russia they have built up an altar of being unalterably loyal to the "allies" at any cost. Such loyalty to the "allies" has killed Emperor Nicholas II, as well as Denikin and his Volunteer Army.
>
> *P. Krasnov.*

Drozdovsky's division is retreating. Moscow seemed to be so near — at no distance. One more effort — and the Red capital would fall and again turn into a Russian town with gold cupolas. It would meet its saviours with chimes, bread, and salt. And with tears in the eyes! The saviours will be met with the bitter salty tears of those whose relatives and friends have passed in the chekist torture chambers, who have risked every minute of being taken hostage, who have lived in the atmosphere of endless horror over long months. They have already seen all that. It has been so in Kharkov, it has been so in Kursk, where people, deliriously happy, were throwing flowers to Drozdovsky's division, and young girls and women were kissing and embracing the exhausted fighters. And the fatigue disappeared. All their sufferings were worth the joy of seeing these common Russian faces beaming with joy and hope.

Colonel Turkul gave his horse a touch of the spurs. An elderly lady in Kharkov pressed herself to his dusty high boot and kept kissing it ecstatically until the soldiers pulled her away.

Where is she now? Kharkov has surrendered, Kursk, Sevsk, Dmitriev, and Lgov have been left behind. Everything has been left behind. The retreating division explodes the bridges, water supply stations, and armour plated trains it has to abandon. They have to disengage from the advancing Reds, at least a little, otherwise they risk being totally enveloped.

He was not scared, but his heart hurt. Neither the colonel himself, nor Drozdovsky's soldiers in crimson cloth caps could understand why they had to retreat. Why were they moving back?

— At my command, — the commander orders — the March of the Chasseurs!

The military orchestra reformed in the middle of the regiment, and the march blared forth. Everybody could hear the music, they took off their cloth caps, blessing themselves. Their faces were pale and determined. The musicians did their best to encourage them and lift their spirits. So, to the music the Drozdovtsy retreat to the Cossack village Slavyanskaya, following the high road along the railway.

And the death is not far from here, it's waiting for them in the wet field. This is the cavalry under the command of Budyonny going the same way. Thus, they are moving in the same direction for hours and hours. A little reconnaissance group has detached from the cavalry. Having stopped at full speed, they are waving their hats.

— Comrades, what is your regiment, comrades?

The Drozdovtsy are silent, they do not answer. The Reds are shouting to them but they are afraid to come closer. It's an odd unit marching in this morning freeze, close-lipped but with music.

The Reds could not take it any longer. Some of the squadrons have turned and are riding towards them. They ask again:

— Why don't you answer, comrades? What regiment is it?

It's a common call off during the Civil War. The Drozdovtsy are still silent.

The Red cavalry has stopped and opened fire. The Drozdovtsy have given several salvos in return. The cavalry soldiers have turned back and ridden away, leaving two horses and their riders in the darkened field. And all the hell broke loose!

The cavalry attacks — one after another. Budyonny's artillery fires non-stop. Drozdovsky's artillery isn't slow, either. The cavalry attacks in waves, and the Whites fights back. Not stopping their retreat, they fight in turns. One battalion is fighting the attack off, another one is moving further.

When Budyonnovtsy return, the Drozdovtsy, having repelled the attack, move to the head of the column. After a twenty-minute break they fire again and give one salvo after another…

> The corpses of the Red cavalry soldiers tower in the field. They will not get through, their sabres will never touch the crimson cloth caps. The new waves of cavalry are rolling in like a horrible tsunami. Soon there will be no bullets or shells left…
>
> The tunes of the familiar music strike the ear despite the crash and fire.
>
> The orchestra is playing the March of the Chasseurs…

During the whole year of 1918, the White Guards, weak and practically unarmed, were fighting for their country. As we understand, there was, in fact, no assistance from the "allies." In the middle of November the armada of the Entente ships entered the Black Sea. The historians are unable to explain what happened after that and prefer to pass over these events in silence.

"…When the 'allies' came to Sevastopol, they hoisted their flags on the Russian ships and placed their crews on them,"[1] Denikin notices in his book "The Sketches on the Russian Time of Troubles." What does it mean? It means that the British and the French forced the Whites to haul down the Russian St. Andrew's flags on the Russian battleships and simply captured them. It has never been explained why it was done. We shall not trouble the reader by reciting the names of the captured ships. But the facts are as follows: the foreign flags were hoisted on *all* the ships that were in good order. It was done in such a speedy manner that we might think that the crews for the Russian ships had been drafted and brought in advance. Consequently, the capture of the ships was not an incident, and the armada of the "allies" had arrived in Sevastopol with a clearly stated objective: to capture the rest of the Navy despite the protests of the White Guards. A reasonable question arises: what was it done for? The answer is simple: in order to prevent the ships from being used and to destroy them later.

It's funny to read the historical researches about the White Guard and the Civil War. Take any book, and you will see the most interesting thing: the historians credit the White Navy with the might which it has never actually had. The reason is that the total majority of the researches is in the grip of a standard cliche, believing that the "allies" supported the Whites and fought against the Reds. Using this formula, the historians analyze the eventual actions of the British and the French, not taking into consideration the real events, and speculating the assumed acts of the "allies"! Based on the positive logic, we can suppose that in case the "allies" indeed fought against the Bolsheviks and wanted to help the Whites, they should have given all the ships to Denikin. And not just have given them, but also have helped to put them in action as soon as possible so that the might of the ship guns would compensate the numerical advantage of the Reds. But what do we actually have?

---

[1] Denikin A. The Sketches on the Russian Time of Troubles. Paris. 1921. (http://militera.lib.ru/memo/russian/denikin_ai2/4_10.html)

"...Soon the combats started on the coasts of the Black Sea and the Azov Sea, and the support of the navy became absolutely necessary. Just as in the first days of the Volunteer Army, when we had used wooded armoured trains and stolen guns, young officers fitted up the old steamers and barges with slow-speed and wrong machines, they installed guns on them and sailed along the coasts, engaging into combats with Bolsheviks and every minute taking risks of becoming victims of the sea or falling into the enemy's hands. Meanwhile, our battleships languished in captivity of the allies..."[1]

It's not me who has written this. It's again a quote from General Denikin's memoirs.

While our ships "languished in captivity," he fights like a lion for the right to own the Russian battleships. They reached the first result after two months of quarrels and cross talks. In December 1919, a group of eight naval officers travelled from Novorossiysk to Sevastopol, hoping to get at least one battleship for the Volunteer Army. They hoped in vain! They didn't get anything. In order to have at least some kind of a ship they had to equip an ice-breaking tug-boat Polezny with two 75 mm guns.

---

[1] Denikin A. The Sketches on the Russian Time of Troubles. Paris. 1921. (http://militera.lib.ru/memo/russian/denikin_ai2/4_10.html)

This was the *first* ship of the Volunteer Army.[1] It's the same if one armours a Russian ZAZ car and starts calling it a land tank. The real battleships, which had not been sunk by Lenin's order, were not given to the Whites.

Nobody will be able to answer the many questions regarding the oddities of the British and the French policies until one perceives a simple and horrible truth: their goal was to destroy Russia. If one looks at the situation from this standpoint, they will find an iron logic in the actions of the "allies." There are so many examples of the "odd" behaviour of the "allies" that there would be enough of them for a whole book. We shall only mention the key ones. Right after the appearance of the Entente ships and the capture of the Russian ships in Sevastopol, the French made a landing in Odessa. The naive White generals believed it was the start of some real assistance. The reality has shattered their hopes. Denikin's emissary, General Sannikov, who arrived to Odessa, describes his impressions as follows, "Recognizing [in word] the Volunteer Army as one of the most important factors in the struggle against the Bolshevism, the French command didn't provide any support, but only made our actions slow..."

The "allies" ban (!) the Whites from carrying out the mobilization in Odessa district under the pretext that the mobilization might cause unrest and discontent of the locals. They don't give the Whites a bullet or a shell from their own reserves. There are huge ammo warehouses with the military equipment and ammunition of the tsarist army next to the place of the French landing in Tiraspol, in Nikolayev, and on the Berezan Island. If the warehouses are captured and the contents is taken away, the Whites will have enough shells and bullets for a long time ahead. The problem was not to capture the warehouses. The most complicated thing is to transport the ammunition. The transport and ships are needed. But the French refuse the request of General Sannikov regarding the assistance in transporting the ammunition and military equipment. A team of officers at their own risk transports a little part of the ammunition on a tug-boat to Novorossiysk. The second voyage has never been carried out, because right after their departure the crew of the French cruiser Bruit exploded the warehouses...[1]

---

[1] Varnek P. The Formation of the Navy of the Volunteer Army / Civil War in Russia: the Black Sea Navy. M.: AST, 2002. P. 125.

The "oddities" of the conduct of the French didn't stop after that. In April 1919, the French contingent was unexpectedly evacuated. They evacuated very quickly, leaving the Whites in an extraordinarily complicated situation. There are 35 thousand "allied" soldiers, a big amount of artillery, and the Navy in Odessa. And all this force is fleeing not from the Red Army, but from the 1700-men strong detachment of Chieftain Grigoriev, who had declared himself an "ally" of Bolsheviks. The historians say that the urgent evacuation was the result of the Bolshevik propaganda, which had demoralized the French soldiers. This is nonsense. The evacuation from Odessa would not have been necessary at all if the French had not been keeping the Whites from protecting it.

The White brigade was able to defend Odessa even alone, without any assistance of the "allies." General Timanovsky had 3.5 thousand bayonets, 1.5 thousand sabres, 26 cannons, and 6 armoured cars. If we add the capacity of the "allied" ship cannons, we will clearly understand that there were no military reasons to evacuate the contingent from Odessa. But the evacuation has been carried out. It was not just speedy — it was flash-like. The French command first decided to evacuate the contingent from Odessa in three days, but later this time was cut down to 48 hours. The Whites had no chances to get ready for to it. As Denikin writes, "The French command did not even bother to warn me about the coming evacuation from Odessa."[2] And he complains further, "This was not an evacuation but a pure flight, which made tens of thousands of people suffer hardships and which unwittingly made people think that it was a treason."[3]

---

[1] Varnek P. The Formation of the Navy of the Volunteer Army / Civil War in Russia: the Black Sea Navy. M.: AST, 2002. P. 125.

[2] Denikin A. The Sketches on the Russian Time of Troubles. Paris. 1921 (http://militera.lib.ru/memo/russian/denikin_ai2/4_10.html)

[3] Ib.

Anton Denikin is mistaken, this is not a treason. This is a professionally staged operation on elimination of the White movement, which prevented the "allies" from destroying Russia. Do you remember the Cheka investigator with an odd last name Delafare, who interrogated the arrested French in Lubyanka? The correct spelling of his name is "De Lafare" — because this brave young man is also French. "Delafare was quite an unusual person in the VCheka. The biography book "Dzerzhinsky" by A. Tishkov, which has been published during the never-to-be-forgotten Soviet times, tells us, "He was a Frenchman from an aristocratic family, and a lawyer by profession. He came to the VCheka with a strong belief that counterrevolutionary elements had to be eliminated for the sake of the fastest victory of the world revolution."[1]

Can you imagine: *a French aristocrat came to the Cheka and asked to get employed.* Dzerzhinsky didn't ask him unnecessary questions, and the French marquis was immediately appointed the chairman of the bank department at the Counterrevolution division. Moreover, Delafare was a member of the VCheka Board. The Board was the kernel of the Bolshevik intelligence. The Board was in charge of electing the Cheka chairman, his two deputies, and two secretaries. Why should this Frenchman have such an honour?[2] Dzerzhinsky's actions look extremely foolish and naive until we realize that Bolsheviks don't have any qualified experts on intelligence operation. So, the friendly western intelligence services are eager to help...

---

[1] Tishkov A. Dzerzhinsky. M.: Molodaya Gvardiya, 1985. P. 145.

[2] Lafare Georgy Georgievich (pseudonym: Marquis Georges Delafare, "Charles"). He was French and was born in Sestroretsk in the family of a weapons engineer, who had come to Russia via Austria as a young man in 1873. His mother was a home teacher. His biography is a typical biography of a young man from the pre-revolution time. First, he was trained to be an armourer, as many others at that time. Then he left for Paris, where he lived till 1914. What did he do? He was occupied with literary activities, translations. It is well-known that the professions of a writer and a journalist are two favourite covers for the intelligence services. Because such work requires no visible results, and these jobs don't raise any suspicions. Having returned back to Russia during the World War, he had worked in the French military mission under the command

Now the reasons of an unexpected evacuation of the contingent from Odessa will become clear and understandable. *Georges Delafare is considered to be the first Soviet spy!* In October 1918, he is an investigator in the Cheka, in April 1919, he is in Odessa as an interpreter at the headquarters of the French Command.[1] And the very command is *all of a sudden* evacuating its contingent from Odessa, leaving the Whites on the edge of the catastrophe. Why?

Let's come back. Only few Whites managed to get out of Odessa, the majority of the White Guards and their families were abandoned — because the ships, which could be used to save people, were captured by the French for "*their own needs*." Leaving the port, they don't forget to take almost all the Russian ships with them. If you read Denikin's memoirs, everything will become clear to you, "We had been corresponding and talking regarding the capture of the Black Sea ships by the French for a long time (during the evacuation 22 steamers left Odessa under the French flags, but with great difficulty after serious delay they were... returned)."[2]

After Odessa the French leave Sevastopol, as well. The evacuation from Odessa is a catastrophe for the White movement. Don't forget that the evacuation lasted for only 48 hours. Many people and much money are wasted. Have the "allies" taken any warning by this sad example? They have, indeed! *The evacuation from Sevastopol should be carried out in... 12 hours only!* Further actions of

---

of General Niessel till 1917. This is getting more interesting. And after working in the mission he joined ... the Cheka in December 1917.

[1] Delafare's biography is very blurred. There is information that he has been shot dead. Either by the French, or by Denikin's soldiers. Knowing how cautious the Whites used to be in regards of the "allies", we can doubt this fact. But there is no concrete information available. It is possible that after his heroic death Delafare calmly sailed to France, where he was given new ID and continued to work in the French intelligence services. Almost the same thing that has happened to Sadoul.

[2] Denikin A. The Sketches on the Russian Time of Troubles. Paris. 1921 (http://militera.lib.ru/memo/russian/denikin_ai2/4_10.html)

the French very well show why all the chaos and mess is needed. Only at such background they can without being punished do away with our ships, disguising their sinking as being concerned about the Whites. Their alibi is simple: in order for the ships not to be seized by the Reds.

A series of artificially created crises will several times repeat during the Civil War. And each crisis is marked by either sinking or capturing, or damaging *the Russian ships only.* All the French and the British ships will always be successfully evacuated.

The elimination operation with regard to the Russian ships is carried out in a flash-like manner. Besides the French, the British (because how can we manage without them?) from the battleship Emperor of India participated in this operation, too. The British, using a towing steamer, brought eleven Russian submarines (Orlan, Gagara, Kit, Kashalot, Narval, AG-21, Krab, Skat, Sudak, Losos, and Nalim) to the outer harbour of Sevastopol and sank them at a considerable depth using blasting cartridges. The twelfth submarine, Karp, was sunk in the Severnaya Bay.[1]

Then it was the turn of the "port buildings": the demolition teams of British sailors exploded the cannons of the Sevastopol fortress and burnt down the gunpowder in the fortress cellars, and the military navy supply depot. They have destroyed cylinders of steam engines of the cruiser Pamyat Merkuriya, the squadron torpedo-boats Bystry, Zhutky, and Zavetny, and even of the old torpedo-boats, as well as the trooper Berezan, which was used as the barracks. The battleships Yevstafy, Ioann Zlatoust, and Borets za Svobody were also destroyed.

The White Guard command witnessed this horror. The "allies" sank our best submarines, exploded the machines on the ships to be left in Sevastopol, sank or took away the military reserves in a total panic. It was unspeakably painful to see the expanding death bill of the remains of the Russian Navy, which had escaped their destruction by Germans, Bolsheviks, and Oprichnina[1] sailors..."[2]

---

[1] "The proposal of the Greeks to take the ships out of the bay and preserve them for Russia was firmly refused by the 'allies'." Graf H. On Board of Novik. The Baltic Navy During the War and the Revolution. St. Pb.: Gangut, 1997. P. 432.

There is nothing left to do but be surprised by the patience and blindness of Anton Denikin who wrote these lines, who even after the Sevastopol tragedy saw his British and French partners through rose-tinted glasses. The most interesting thing is that the Entente sailors did not leave Sevastopol after destroying and sinking all that they could have destroyed and sunk. After *the urgent evacuation* of the Russian forces and after the sinking the Russian ships the French and British remained in the town for another twelve days![3] During this time, the Reds patiently waited for the "allies" to get ready to destruct everything they could, and didn't enter the town. Were such urgent evacuation haste really necessary? Yes, they were! It was exactly due to the crisis, caused by this haste, that so many Russian ships were sent to the bottom. If we consider that the Civil War is nothing else than one huge crisis, we can easily get the answer to the question why the "allies" needed all this haste for.

The cataclysm caused by the Russian strife made it possible to send Russia itself "to the bottom" relatively quick, all the decencies served.

One more stroke of a paint-brush to this picture: when Denikin sent a military delegation to France, the French... refused to issue visas for the White officers, who were going to France to discuss the coordination of the common activities! Can you imagine this? This is not an accident. This is a plan. This is a policy.

After several retreats in summer 1919, which we've already described, the Whites against all odd go on the offensive. The Soviet power has never been in such a peril as it was in the summer and autumn of 1919, the Whites have never been so close to the victory as they were in these months. But the future triumph appeared to be a mirage. The fighters for the "United and Indivisible Russia" were defeated so unexpectedly that it's worth talking about this in more detail. The offensive of the White troops ended with a catastrophe.

---

[1] Translator's note: Oprichnina was a security agency established in times of Ivan Grozny, its members, the Oprichniki, known for their violence

[2] Denikin A. The Sketches on the Russian Time of Troubles. Paris. 1921 (http://militera.lib.ru/memo/russian/denikin_ai2/4_10.html)

[3] Varnek P. The Formation of the Navy of the Volunteer Army / Civil War in Russia: the Black Sea Navy. M.: AST, 2002. P. 135.

Under the onsurge of the Reds, who have all of a sudden got much stronger, the White armies started to retreat. This retreat very soon turned into a flight and then into a total breakdown of the front. They write that the Soviet power was at the death's door in autumn of 1919, but then *all of a sudden, in the course of three months only,* Bolsheviks smashed Kolchak and drove off Denikin's Army to the ports in the south, from where they could hardly run away to the Crimea. At the same time, the North-Eastern Army of Yudenich, which had reached Pulkovo Heights near Petrograd, was liquidated, as well as the army of Miller, fighting in the north of Russia. The Soviet power, which everyone believed to be at the death's door at that time, won so many glorious victories during a very short period. The historians explain the causes of this Bolshevik miracle in their usual way: it has just turned out that way.

Let's sort this out. Each enigmatic political occurrence has to have its causes, mundane and obvious. The same concerns the defeat of the Whites. For example, the defeat of Denikin's Army and the following defeat of the White movement in general is caused... by the order Denikin signed, the one to move "towards Moscow." This order contradicts elementary strategic rules: few in numbers troops of the fighters for the united Russia were moving farther and farther from each other in the great spaces of their motherland. The alternative was to unite with Kolchak as soon as possible, so that two main White armies would move towards each other. The Red Army had one important advantage: all the territory under the Bolshevik regime was an integrated space surrounded by the Whites from every side. That's why Lenin and Trotsky could freely relocate the troops from one front to another, smashing the enemies in turns, while the Whites could not do it. Had Denikin got united with Kolchak, they would have manoeuvred in the same way. But Denikin ordered the Whites to move towards Moscow, thus signing the death sentence for the White movement. Why did he do so?

"I still didn't approve of the operation plan adopted by the General Headquarters. I found it absolutely necessary to get united with our armies in Siberia as soon as possible. *This issue was so much obvious that many persons, even not the military ones, pointed it out."*[1]

This is Baron Wrangel's point of view. Apparently, Denikin does not see this obvious fact: his perilous order remains in force. The only thing which the general could do in this situation was to try and bring his point of view to the attention of the commander-in-chief. Wrangel does so and addresses the commander-in-chief with his statement. The main idea of it is as follows:

- the most important and sole direction of the operation movement should be the direction towards Tsaritsyn, which would make it possible to get directly united with the army of Admiral Kolchak;
- due to the advantage of the enemy in numbers, no simultaneous actions in different operational directions are possible.

He did not receive any answer. But the baron still attempted to clarify the situation and prevent the upcoming tragedy. Since Denikin is avoiding to talk to the baron, Wrangel tries to make himself clear with Denikin's retinue, but the result is the same. "All the attempts to talk to General Romanovsky regarding this issue were in vain, he was obviously trying to avoid discussing this issue."

General Romanovsky is the chief of staff of Denikin's Army, and he doesn't want to discuss the most important issue with Wrangel. It looks weird — the baron is one of the most prominent leaders of the White movement, and only a half a year later he will become Denikin's successor as the commander-in-chief. How come that he, Wrangel, knew nothing about the reasons of the decision which will cause the total defeat of the Whites in the Civil War?!

If Denikin and Romanovsky have approved this specific plan of the Moscow offensive, they might have had weighty arguments to do so. Why don't they expound these arguments for Baron Wrangel, the most prominent war-lord after Denikin? He would listen and accept them.

---

[1] Wrangel P. Notes. (http://militera.lib.ru/memo/russian/vrangel1/02.html)

He would understand them if they were sensible and reasonable. But nobody explains anything to Wrangel. It shows that the arguments in favour of the perilous decision are not of military but of political character. That's why they are not discussed aloud, and the commanders have to limit themselves to a short word of command, "Follow!" What were the secret political reasons in summer of 1919 that forced Anton Denikin to make the decision so questionable in the context of the war science?

The consequences were not long in coming. "Having been left alone, Admiral Kolchak, totally devastated, started to retreat eastwards,"[1] General Wrangel wrote in his diary. Because instead of moving towards Kolchak, Denikin's troops were on the offensive in another direction. Having been shot dead, Admiral Kolchak for obvious reasons did not leave any memoirs. Anton Denikin had more luck, and we can read his memoirs and try to understand the logic of his actions. "The order dated June 20, which the military circles called 'Moskovskaya,' later in the days of our misfortunes was criticized for being too optimistic," the author of the order writes. "True, not turning a blind eye on the future hardships, I still was optimistic then."[2]

Why is Denikin so optimistic that he even forgets the elementary rules of conducting a military operation? May his armies have become several times bigger? No, they have not, and almost at the same place in his memoirs, Denikin writes, "The paucity of the troops and the blatant need for ammunition and military equipment resulted in the shortage at all the fronts, in all the armies."[3]

The situation is the same: the lack of people, the lack of the armament. The main way to increase the reserve ammunition is to take it from the Red Army.

---

[1] Wrangel P. Notes. (http://militera.lib.ru/memo/russian/vrangel1/02.html)

[2] Denikin A. The Sketches on the Russian Time of Troubles. Paris. 1921 (http://militera.lib.ru/memo/russian/denikin_ai2/5_03.html)

[3] Ib.

The field personnel is attracted in the same way, "...by virtue of the enemy — partly by the volunteers, but mostly by the captured."[1]

The situation is the same in other White divisions. Here are the typical quotes from the memoirs of that time:

- "We had two machine guns on *tachankas*[2] for covering action. They were seldom used due to the shortage of bullets," Lieutenant S. Mamontov writes in his book "Marches and Horses."
- "The expenditures of bullets and shells were very limited," V. Kravchenko writes in his memoirs "Drozdovtsy from Iasi to Gallipoli."

The best, the most battle-ready White units, which are advanced forces in the offensive, have nothing to shoot with. This is the situation in the infantry, but as we know, the decisive part in the Civil War, which was a war of manoeuvre, belonged to the cavalry. Open any memoirs of any cavalryman of the White movement, and you will see that the situation in the cavalry was even worse. It was in 1954 in the faraway Buenos Aires that an anniversary work "The Hussars from Sumy 1651–1951" was published. The whole history of the brave hussars is described for the grateful descendants. A big part of the book is devoted to the Civil War. The revival and forming of the 1st Hussar Cavalry Regiment in Sumy take place in the early summer of 1919. Exactly on the eve of the days when Anton Denikin gave an order to move towards Moscow. Here we can read, "The supply department didn't exist at all. The sale of the military booty was the only source that made it possible to proceed with establishing the squadrons and bigger units..."[3]

The White troops prepare the offensive at their own cost and expense. If something was captured from the Reds, the booty that was not needed at the moment was sold to buy the necessary military supplies. The White Cavalry will move forward not being fully formed, not being properly armed.

---

[1] Denikin A. The Sketches on the Russian Time of Troubles. Paris. 1921 (http://militera.lib.ru/memo/russian/denikin_ai2/5_03.html)

[2] Translator's note: Tachanka — a machine-gun carrier.

[3] The Hussars From Sumy in the Civil War / The Revived Regiments of the Russian Army in the White Struggle in the Russian South. M.: Tsentrpoligraf, 2002. P. 28.

"There was a shortage of saddles and cold steel arms,"[1] the chroniclers of the hussars write further.

What a good cavalry Denikin has: no sabres, no saddles and no... horses! This is true — Denikin's cavalry was foot-borne. The cavalry regiments are being formed, but they have no horses. Then the horses are bought or captured from the Reds, but the cavalry is not ready again, as there are no saddles. And practically in all the *cavalry* subdivisions there are one or two squadrons which are *foot-borne.* So they fight along with the infantry soldiers until it is their turn to get a horse and ammunition. There were even some more amusing things regarding the White cavalrymen, although, it was not about Denikin's, but about Kolchak's cavalry. When the problems with the ammunition were too severe, the White cavalrymen had to ride into the assault with pillows on their horses' backs instead of saddles...[2]

So, as we see, nothing new has happened to the White Guard: the troops are few, they are poorly equipped and inadequately armed. Shouldn't they have postponed the decisive attack against Moscow? Should they have taken time to properly form the ready army units, to arm them duly? To create the reserves, to put the rear areas in order... It's a necessary truth, isn't it? The question "Why has this not been done?" is lamenting on each page of the memoirs of the White movement's participants. There is a question, but no answer has been given so far either by the memoir writers or by the historians of all kinds. Even when the offensive was withering away, Denikin, as if waiting for a miracle, didn't take any measures to improve the situation. Wrangel arrives at the General Headquarters and sees an odd picture: Anton Denikin, who has always been a person of a sound mind and reason, looks strange and unbalanced.

---

[1] The Hussars From Sumy in the Civil War / The Revived Regiments of the Russian Army in the White Struggle in the Russian South. M.: Tsentrpoligraf, 2002. P. 33

[2] Molchanov V. The Struggle in the Eastern Part of Russia and Siberia / The Eastern Front of Admiral Kolchak. M.: Tsentrpoligraf, 2004. P. 416.

"After lunch General Denikin invited me to his office, where we talked for more than two hours. According to General Denikin, our strategic position was great. The commander-in-chief obviously didn't cast a thought with regard to his military luck, which could turn its back on us, and planned to "take over Moscow" within a couple of months. According to him, the enemy, smashed and demoralized, was not able to offer any serious resistance... Denikin didn't make much account of the revolt of the rascal Makhno, because he reckoned that "we would be able to liquidate all of this very quickly." I was listening to the commander-in-chief with anxiety and bewilderment. The general was indeed not very optimistic with regard to our internal and external policy. *He bitterly complained about the British, who were playing double all the time...*"[1]

Why is it exactly the British who upset the head of the White Guard so much? *Because these were the "allies" and not the state of the Red or the White Army that provoked Denikin and Kolchak to launch the offensive.* But there is a great difference between the British conduct and their commitments. This is why General Denikin is sad...

The plan of the "allies" is as follows: first, by giving a lot of political promises and threatening with the stoppage of military supplies, to demand that Denikin and Kolchak launched the offensive, and then not to provide the resources and assistance promised. And then to organize a total breakdown of the White movement. This is, in short, the combination of the "allies," which has completely derailed the Whites. This is why Denikin is silent, and his chief of the staff is keeping silence, as well. Even Wrangel can't be told about all the secret promises of the British that will never be fulfilled. Was it not easier for the "allies" to stop the military supplies for the Whites and thus let the Bolsheviks destroy the White Guard? No, it wasn't. Firstly, a pretext is needed to stop the supplies, and secondly, this is business. And thirdly, the Whites will not launch any offensive due to the shortage of weapons and ammunition. If the Whites take on the defensive, if they establish new military units and complete the existing ones, if the cavalry gets horses, the Soviet Russia might not get over it.

---

[1] Wrangel P. Notes. (http://militera.lib.ru/memo/russian/vrangel1/02.html)

If the Whites held out, they could win. A huge territory is under their control early in 1919: there is no famine on their territories, while famine is raging in the lands controlled by Bolsheviks.

To make Denikin take the offensive he should be promised a king's ransom, and at the same time he should be informed that soon the new elections would take place in France and Great Britain, and the new cabinet might be less loyal to the White movement than it has been before, that the parliament might not approve the current scope of the military "assistance" and so on, and so forth. Then the leaders of the White Guard will be confronted by a dilemma: either to stay without weapons and assistance, and to liberate its country without any haste, or to try finishing the Civil War late in 1919 or early in 1920, having received the additional military supplies. To make Denikin forget the elementary strategic rules, they promised him:

- a resolute offensive and assistance on the part of Poland,
- Petliura's assistance in the destruction of Bolsheviks in Ukraine,
- a lot of uprisals in the rear of Bolsheviks to be arranged by the intelligence services of the "allies" and SRs.

You will get everything. Now you have to launch the offensive immediately regardless of anything, not going into details. Your march will be a triumphant one, don't worry about such subtle things like Makhno's units in your rear. None of the promises of the "allies" have been fulfilled. Petliura did not just fail to support the Whites, but his troops also actively counteracted the Whites after the offensive had started. Then, the combats stopped, and a truce agreement was concluded. But Petliura concluded a truce agreement with Bolsheviks, as well, and later great numbers of Petliura's soldiers sided with the Red Army.

The uprisings in the rear of the White Guard started, just as promised by the British emissaries. But these were the uprisings in the rear of the Whites, and not of the Reds. It was exactly in the decisive moment of the Moscow offensive that Chechnya and Dagestan rose under the green banner of the struggle against the non-Muslim. Let's not forget how the British used to pay the highlanders for their struggle against Russia in the time of the Russian Conquest of the Caucasus. Let's refresh the memory about the name of one European capital where the "freedom fighters" of today go to ask for asylum.

And in autumn 1919, the uprising in the rear of the Whites that so timely broke out in Chechnya prevented Denikin from relocating any reserves to the front creaking at all the seams.

In addition to this, the rebel army of 20,000 people commanded by "Father" Makhno is moving in the wide open rear of the Whites. Makhno's gangs capture towns, hang the officers. But whereas we can easily trace the influence of London and Paris in the actions of the highlanders, I have to say that initially I believed that "Father" Makhno acted quite independently. However, it was until I have read over a lot of memoirs of the Whites. Sorry — my bad! I have found something. The evidence of the eyewitnesses costs a lot. We have to thank the editors of the wonderful series "The Forgotten and Unknown Russia. The White Movement" for having brought to us through the years the evidence and memoirs of the Civil War participants. Let's open volume 7 of this series and read it. A namesake and a relative of the prominent Russian Prime Minister A. Stolypin in his memoirs describes the punitive expeditions of his cavalry regiment against Makho's troops in August 1919. The rebels are partly defeated, partly captured. The most interesting thing starts here, "The captured followed us at a distance of about ten steps, surrounded by the mounted escort. Wading in the clouds of dust, some of them talked...English!"[1]

Can you imagine this? Some of the members on "Father" Makhno's gang are from the Foggy Albion. Are they anarchists? Are they also fighting for the free Ukraine against the generals, landlords, and communists, for the "anarchy which is the basis of order"? The author of the memoirs, being extremely surprised, turns to them and asks them how they happened to join the troops of Makhno. The answer is amazing, "It appears that they are the workers from Great Britain, who have been sent to Russia before the revolution to work at our weapon factories. They have got to Makhno by chance."[1]

---

[1] Stolypin A. The Volunteer Army / The Revived Regiments of the Russian Army in the White Struggle in the Russian South. M.: Tsentrpoligraf, 2002. P. 222.

Can you imagine the psychological portrait of a person who would go to Russia chasing big money? Will he participate in the Russian fight on the side of the anarchists? He will definitely not. He will go back home at once. Two years have already passed since the October. There are many representatives of the "allies" in the south of Russia, as well as in Ukraine. They can leave freely whenever they wish. Luckily Russians have had a great respect towards foreigners for centuries. Maybe, not towards all the foreigners, but surely towards British and French. And these "workers" are just by chance wandering together with the troops of Makhno. They were captured not in the rear, in some cosy Ukrainian hut where they were eating dumplings, but during Makhno's military unit taking part in a hot battle. What were they doing there? Any guess? They are teaching the anarchists and the uneducated Little Russians to blow up the bridges, to make ambushes. Such "workers" are called military advisers...

The British help Bolsheviks with diplomatic methods, too. In the heat of the battle, when Denikin's Army was with its last bit of strength bursting to Moscow, the Polish Army suddenly stopped its movement, and later Poland even concluded a truce agreement with Lenin. As a consequence, many Red troops suddenly appeared in front of the White ones. Leave alone the Polish Front, as all these forces headed towards Moscow. "The first and the main reason of the retreat of Kornilov's forces from Oryol was an incredible overbalance of the enemy, reaching the following ratio: 42 infantry and cavalry regiments against 3 shock regiments of the Whites. The

---

[1] Stolypin A. The Volunteer Army / The Revived Regiments of the Russian Army in the White Struggle in the Russian South. M.: Tsentrpoligraf, 2002. P. 222.

Reds were able to concentrate so many forces due to the truce agreement with Poland of Pilsudski,"[1] Lieutenant M. Levitov points out in his book "Kornilov's Shock Regiment."

Denikin's offensive didn't work out well. Nobody has helped his army, but many have interfered, even the nature itself. In the late October, the first freeze occurred. We are used to laughing at the soldiers of Hitler's Wehrmacht who were going to fight in Russia without any warm clothes with them.

The shock forces of Denikin's Army, the forces of Kornilov, Markov, and Drozdovsky are fighting without any cold-weather clothing, too. Many fighters get freeze burns: their hands suffer the most, because they have no gloves.[2] Well, the German generals didn't know about the Russian colds, but didn't the Russian generals know that in Russia winter starts late in October? We can't assume that they were unaware of this, but we can imagine that Denikin's optimism was caused by the promises of the "allies," who had assured him that Kornilov's and Drozdovsky's soldiers would be already warm in Moscow apartments before the cold weather came. It didn't happen: the Bolshevik forces relocated from the Polish Front stopped the Whites and then pushed them back. Instead of helping the Whites, Poland helped the Reds. But Poland is not independent in its foreign policy, which means that it was not Warsaw, but London and Paris that had provided the vital assistance for Lenin and Trotsky.

When we study "the support" of the British and the French provided to the Whites, it is easy to become a visionary. With a 100% confidence you can predict the results of the support the "allies" offered to the Russian patriots. The secret is very simple.

If the British or the French had promised something to the White Guards, in 99 cases out of 100 they didn't keep their promises.

This rule is universal, and it works smoothly in all the issues of the big politics, such as: promises of diplomatic recognition, ammunition supplies, support of the British Navy and Army, peripheral Russian lands that have seceded. This rule applies to the small and insignificant (at first sight) events, too. In any (I would like to accentuate this!) memoirs of the White Guards you will find a couple of facts that strongly confirm a purposeful and planned liquidation of the Whites by the "allies." We have quoted a lot from the memoirs of the leaders of the anti-Bolshevik forces, that's why we'll now take some examples from the little-known memoirs of K. Sokolov "The Rule of General Denikin."

---

[1] Levitov M. Kornilov's Shock Regiment / The March Towards Moscow. M.: Tsentrpoligraf, 2004. P. 107.

[2] Ib. P. 113.

Before the revolution, the author was the editor-in-chief of the KD newspaper "Rech"; after the Bolshevik overthrow, he was elected the chairman of the central committee of the party. He was a member of Denikin's government and not by hearsay knew how the White power was being established.

Let's open the memoirs and read, "A new financial challenge was encountered in the south of Russia..."[1] It sounds rather trivial — there is no money. However, it isn't about the absence of funds, it is about the lack of real banknotes — this sounds more serious. Sokolov writes, "It was with great difficulty that we've established our own money production at a number of locations in our territory." But the existing capacities are not enough, and they have to be out in order before they can be started. The solution was obvious: the money should be ordered abroad. And Denikin's government did so at the end of 1918. One who knows the real plans of the "allies" with regard to Russia will easily answer the question how this order has been carried out. "The banknotes started to arrive to Novorossiysk in... January 1920,"[2] Sokolov writes. A little remark here: when the Whites were moving forward, when they needed money to pay the allowance to the military personnel and to their families, in order to get back on the track the economic life on the territories liberated from Bolsheviks, there was no money. They had no banknotes to pay the peasants for the provisions, as well as to pay salaries to civil servants and police officers. As soon as Denikin's Army was smashed and rapidly retreated to Novorossiysk, the ships with the newly printed banknotes started to arrive there. It was in January that the money started to arrive, and early in March Denikin's regime collapsed …

---

[1] Sokolov K. The Rule of General Denikin / The Case of the Whites/The White Affair: In 16 volumes. M.: Golos, 1992. P. 107.

[2] Ib. P. 108.

It's only at first sight that the lack of banknotes might appear as a question of a low-priority. "The money famine itself is one of the most important issues. During the Civil War, where the "psychology" game is played, this fact is of enormous importance,"[1] Sokolov concludes. If the town is taken by the Reds, the salaries of the Red public servants, chekists, and officers are high, because Bolsheviks have money. When the Whites come, they are poorly clothed and almost barefoot, they are short of money and can pay their supporters just a dab of money as the money isn't there.

Here is another example from the same memoirs. The propaganda during the Civil War is the most important issue. Not only the enemy, but the public opinion of the European countries should be brought around. After all, the Whites are not getting any assistance from the "allies." If the Europeans get to know the real face of the Bolshevism, if the truth about the goings-on in Russia appears in the pages of the western newspapers, it will be difficult for the Entente countries to proceed with their policy aimed to destroy Russia completely. "That's why we were very happy to learn that a powerful broadcasting station in Mykolaiv will be broadcasting its radio programs all over the world starting from November 1, 1919,"[2] Sokolov points out. At that time, people didn't have radio-receiving sets at home yet, that's why in order to let the message from the Whites become known to the western audience it was necessary for the radio stations to receive it and transmit it to the mass media. There could be no technical problems with the transmission, because the radio station in Mykolaiv capable of 100 kW was one of the most powerful in the world. Finally, the truth about Russia's tragedy will appear in the newspapers of Paris and London…

---

[1] Sokolov K. The Rule of General Denikin / The Case of the Whites/The White Affair: In 16 volumes. M.: Golos, 1992. P. 107.

[2] Ib. P. 100.

That's what they were thinking in Denikin's government. What were the actual results? I think, you have already guessed. "However, the results were really pathetic," the head of Denikin's propaganda machine Sokolov writes. "No information reached London or Paris or other European cities. It was explained from London that Mykolaiv failed to make the others "listen" to it, edged itself into conversations and only made a mess."[1]

Imagine if some thieves and killers broke into your apartment at night. But you may not shout loudly, "Help! Thieves!" at such an unreasonable time. Your neighbours might wake up to your "they are killing us," "help," and "police!" Imagine you are shouting at the top of your voice and are told that you are "edging yourself into conversation," and you can't make the other people "listen" to you and "are only making a mess"…

The European newspapers continued to publish misinformation, rumours, and blatant lies, which the orchestrators of our fratricidal strife needed so much. If you put a short phrase "From non-official sources" at the beginning of an article, you can publish whatever you want about Russia. The official messages of Denikin's radio station could not have been misquoted to that extent, that's why the "allied" radio operators didn't listen to them and didn't forward them to the newspapers…

Having believed the promises of the "allies," very soon after their triumphant offensive the Whites ended up near Odessa. The horrible evacuation of 1919 was followed by an even more horrible evacuation of 1920. Both evacuations were arranged by the "allies." However, we are much more interested in the "mechanism" of this catastrophe and the fate of the rest of the Russian Navy in Odessa. Nothing will demonstrate more clearly **who** is guilty in the Odessa horrors than the report of General Shilling to Denikin himself. This document is very interesting, and it's mentioned and quoted in many memoirs, in particular, the memories of Denikin. And still, for some reason the most interesting part of this document always remains under the radar.

---

[1] Sokolov K. The Rule of General Denikin / The Case of the Whites/The White Affair: In 16 volumes. M.: Golos, 1992. P. 110.

The troops led by Shilling go back to Odessa. They are actually demoralized and not battle-ready. The best decision in this situation is to relocate the troops to the Crimea, where they will be able to recover and regroup. General Shilling reports to Denikin, "The task of holding Odessa was impossible due to several reasons: the absence of the rear area for our troops, the unrests on the territory occupied by our troops, the inability to relocate our troops from the Kiev region to Odessa.

However, the political situation (persistent requests of the "allies") demand that Odessa is held along with the surrounding territories, which you had informed me about in telegram № 017264 dated December 18..."[1]

Denikin strongly orders to hold Odessa, even though it's above the Whites' strength. The cause of his order are the demands of the "allies." They have placed a lot of demands concerning the finance relations, the acknowledgment of the seceded peripheral Russian lands, the slogans of the White Guard which the "allies" wanted to promote. Then a sudden demand that they should hold Odessa arrived. Since there were no military reasons to hold Odessa, I can see only one motive in the demand of our "allies": they wanted to keep the Whites in Odessa and sabotage the evacuation. This would make a significant number of the Whites, the blatant enemies of the "allies," either perish or surrender to Bolsheviks.

An order is an order. General Shilling writes a letter to the head of the British mission in Odessa and asks the "allies" to do the following (because they insist on the defence of Odessa):

- to provide the "allied" navy to defend the approaches to the town;
- to urgently deliver additional weapons and bullets.

---

[1] The report of Commander of the troops in Novorossiysk Region General N. Shilling to Commander-in-Chief of the armed forces in the Russian South General A. Denikin / Civil War in Russia: The Defence of the Crimea. M.: AST; St. Pb.: Terra Fantastica, 2003. P. 470.

In case of the defence fails, the evacuation should be prepared. The help of the "allies" in this is also very important. General Shilling asks them to assist in the following tasks:

- to evacuate the families of the officers and the civilian personnel;
- to re-build the Bugaz bridge, which leads to Romania;
- to let a part of Odessa garrison enter Bessarabia in case there is not enough space on the ships.[1]

The British give no answer, and the time is running out. Then, General Shilling sends an officer with a letter to the British mission and once again asks for an urgent reply.

The British have written their answer... immediately, sitting at the table.[2] The naval artillery would support the White Guard; ten thousand rifles are already on the way to Odessa; the question regarding the re-building of the Bugaz bridge can't be decided on the spot, and the respective request has been already sent to Paris. At first sight, all this does not look bad: the British even promise to send ships to evacuate the families and other refugees. There is only one problem: the bridge, leading to Romania (or, to be more accurate, to the Russian territory of Bessarabia, which Romania has got hold of), can't be re-built without the permit from Paris. Even though the bridge is needed not for the civilians. **The Whites had to move out their armoured trains.** The only branch railway line, which the Whites could use, had been cut by Makhno, whom Denikin did not consider to be dangerous. The armoured trains could be driven over the re-built bridge and thus saved. A light touch of Romania's independence: in order to re-build a bridge in Romania one needs to ask Paris for a permit.

This light touch will come useful for us in judging the future events. Let's keep it in mind and follow the report of General Shilling further. "On January 8, another letter from the head of the British mission arrived... it pointed out that they could not see any danger for Odessa and that the ships for evacuation of thirty thousand people would not be provided, and if there had been ships available, the refugees would not have been accepted by other countries."[1]

---

[1] The report of Commander of the troops in Novorossiysk Region General N. Shilling to Commander-in-Chief of the armed forces in the Russian South General A. Denikin / Civil War in Russia: The Defence of the Crimea. M.: AST; St. Pb.: Terra Fantastica, 2003. P. 474.

[2] Ib. P. 475.

The situation is rapidly changing. Now it appears that there will be no ships, and even if there were any, they would not have been able to bring the refugees to any country! The "allies" don't want to accept unfortunate children of White officers and their wives, frantic with grief. They would need food. And if they die of starvation or by a Red Guard's sabre, the British and French budgets won't have to spend any money at all. Shilling himself, flabbergasted by the answer, mildly points out that it was "the command of the 'allies' that had insisted on the defence of Odessa," therefore it bears the responsibility for it. And in this connection he would like to know what the "allies" were ready to help with. "But I have not received any answer to my question.

The further correspondence and private talks with the British were carried out in the same manner of evasiveness and uncertainty, which is typical for them,"[2] the White general continues his report.

Two valuable (!) weeks had passed from the beginning of the odd Q&A game with the British, when Shilling finally received the first piece of specific information from them, "On January 18, the head of the British mission informed me confidentially that he could guarantee with high confidence that the Russian troops could pass to Bessarabia."[3] Pay attention, please, nothing has been promised officially. This is not by chance: when it later turned out that all the promises had been one hateful lie, no taint would fall on the British flag. It was explained that Shilling must have simply misunderstood something. He must have been overworked or exhausted.

---

[1] The report of Commander of the troops in Novorossiysk Region General N. Shilling to Commander-in-Chief of the armed forces in the Russian South General A. Denikin / Civil War in Russia: The Defence of the Crimea. M.: AST; St. Pb.: Terra Fantastica, 2003. P. 474.

[2] Ib. P. 475.

[3] Ib. P. 476.

In the meantime, the catastrophe has drawn nearer. Five days were left until Bolsheviks would take Odessa. The White Guard started to disperse. Shilling writes another letter to the head of the British mission and asks to do the following:

- to send more powerful military ships for the defence of Odessa;
- to send the transport for the sick and wounded, and for the officers' families;
- to speed up the arrival of coal, needed for steamers and locomotives;
- to receive as soon as possible the permit from Romania for building the ferries and the so much needed bridge over Dnestr.[1]

As the matter of fact, he repeats his requests word for word and adds one very important request — coal. Oddly enough, exactly at the same time the Whites have run out of coal, too. "The fuel crisis, which paralyzed all the deliveries by train, started at the same time,"[2] Shilling points out in his report.

The Whites are not able to manoeuvre their troops without coal, ships can't sail without it, either, but the British are not in a hurry to deliver it. Have the best seafarers in the world forgotten that steamers need fuel? No, they have not. It's very simple: if there is coal, the Whites might be able to escape the mousetrap. As a result, "when the British coal arrived in Odessa, the port area was so much frozen because of the unprecedented frosts that no steamers or motor boats could move there..."[3]

It's January. In case of a rapid freeze-up the water will freeze, and evacuation will be not possible. On January 22 (February 4), 1920, it has become clear to Shilling that the Whites would not be able to hold the town. Hoping to save at least somebody and unclog the harbour, the White general decided to send the Cossack brigade under General Sklyarov to Novorossiysk on ferry Nikolay № 119, which was normally used to transport horses. However, unpleasant surprises await General Shilling everywhere. He learns that "the British have captured the ferry and that… no horse will be transported by sea."[1] Not only the British promises turned out to be a lie, but the American ones, as well. "The shipping facilities promised by the Americans had not been provided, and on top of that the Americans themselves asked to give them the ship "Alexandra," which we refused to do." Thus, the "allies" have not provided any real help in moving the ships away from the harbour area,"[2] Shilling concludes consistently.

---

[1] The report of Commander of the troops in Novorossiysk Region General N. Shilling to Commander-in-Chief of the armed forces in the Russian South General A. Denikin / Civil War in Russia: The Defence of the Crimea. M.: AST; St. Pb.: Terra Fantastica, 2003. P. 476.

[2] Ib. P. 479.

[3] Ib. P. 480.

The culminating point of the British operation on burying the Denikin's Army is approaching. At the same time, the British get ready to sink the Russian battleships again. Little by little, not as large-scale as before, but as deliberately and fatally.

The British torpedo-boats moved out of the harbour two almost finished submarines Lebed and Pelikan. However, instead of transporting them out of the harbour and thus saving them, under the pretext of the harbour being clogged the British sank both submarines in the southern passage. Instead of covering the retreat of the remaining White forces with their artillery fire, the British sink the Russian battleships. "The British Navy was absolutely passive,"[3] Denikin writes in his memoirs. Baron Wrangel describes the results of help offered by the "allies," too, "I learned the horrible details of the retreat from Odessa from Admiral Bubnov. A great part of the military forces and the civil employees did not manage to go aboard the departing ships, and the most terrible things happened there.

---

[1] The report of Commander of the troops in Novorossiysk Region General N. Shilling to Commander-in-Chief of the armed forces in the Russian South General A. Denikin / Civil War in Russia: The Defence of the Crimea. M.: AST; St. Pb.: Terra Fantastica, 2003. P. 480.

[2] Ib. P. 481.

[3] Denikin A. The Sketches on the Russian Time of Troubles. Paris. 1921 (http://militera.lib.ru/memo/russian/denikin_ai2/5_21.html)

People tried to escape walking on ice but the ice broke, and they fell through it into the water and were drowned. The others stood on the knees, stretching their hands with pleas in the direction of the departing ships, pleading for help. Some of the people figured out that the death was imminent and committed suicides."[1]

Now it's about time to draw the conclusions.

- a big amount of people, military supplies, and equipment were left behind because of the unnecessary evacuation from Odessa and because the British hadn't not provided any ships for the evacuation
- due to the fact that the British had captured transport ferry Nikolay №119, it was not possible to evacuate even the smallest amount of horses from Odessa; in the Crimea *all* the cavalry of the Whites will be foot-borne.
- since Paris had not given its permit for re-building the railway bridge, Denikin's Army had to leave *all* their armoured trains in Odessa

In one word, the army lost its cavalry, artillery, and heavy armoury. It's a total crush. The rest of the troops, armed with small weapons only, headed towards the Romanian border under General Bredov, who had been appointed by Shilling. They hoped to be allowed to enter the Romanian land. The Whites applied for this permit in advance and received the answer from Denikin himself that their retreat to Romania had been coordinated with the "allies."

And still, a real tragedy took place when the White troops were approaching the Romanian border. This is what Denikin writes about it, "When the troops of General Bredov were approaching the Dnestr river, they were met by the fire from Romanian machine guns. The women and the children suffered the same fate."[2] Having found themselves in the dead-lock, the troops under General Bredov turned to the north and steamrolled along the Dnestr river until they met the Polish troops. The Poles demanded that the White troops were disarmed and promised to return their weapons later. The fate of the fighters for "United and Indivisible Russia" was horrible. "They had the disarmament, the concentration camps with barbed wire fences, the sorrowful days, and the national disgrace ahead,"[1] General Denikin writes in his memoirs.

---

[1] http//www.hrono.info./libris/lib_we/vran18.html

[2] Denikin A. The Sketches on the Russian Time of Troubles. Paris. 1921 (http://militera.lib.ru/memo/russian/denikin_ai2/5_21.html)

Let's remember how "independent" the Romanians are in their actions; how "free" was the young Polish state, the Entente's favourite offspring, in its decisions. And we shall understand that not the Romanians, who used to be allies to Russia, were firing their machine guns at the refugees, and these were not the Polish, who used to be compatriots to Russians, who were jealously sending the Whites to concentration camps. All the anti-Russian policy of all the "small" states was directed and one hundred percent determined by the Entente superstates, the winners in the World War. **These were the British and the French who were shooting at the Russians using their satellite states!**

The fate of the civil refugees was also horrible. The Romanians met a column of sixteen thousand people with the artillery fire. Then, having relented, they let only the foreigners enter their territory, leaving the Russians on the ice of the river despite the severe frost. There was no way out: the Reds would appear behind their backs any moment, and the Romanians opened fire at any attempt to enter their territory. Then the column of the refugees made their way along the border Dnestr river, hoping to meet some Polish or Ukrainian troops.

In a couple of hours they were attacked by the Red cavalry, but the attack was repelled by the officers and cadets who were in this column. Bolsheviks repeated their attacks, and people, hoping for the mercy of the Romanians, in despair went over to the Romanian territory. The Romanians presented the people with an ultimatum: they had to leave the Romanian territory immediately. And when the tired and frostbitten people didn't obey, the Romanians opened machine gun fire at them. The shooting went on even after the people had returned to the Russian side of the river, the Romanians kept shooting at the wounded people and at those who wanted to help them...

---

[1] Denikin A. The Sketches on the Russian Time of Troubles. Paris. 1921 (http://militera.lib.ru/memo/russian/denikin_ai2/5_21.html)

After Odessa it was Novorossiysk's turn to evacuate. The British "were helping" to organize this evacuation, too. Of course, by the request of Denikin, "I have asked the British Navy to assist in the evacuation. They showed compassion and readiness."[1] The commander-in-chief of the Russian Army asked the British for the permit (!) to use the Russian ships, which were docked in Constantinople. It was necessary to fill these ships with coal, too...

Being always ready to help is a feature of the true British gentleman. But this help has always turned out a mess for Russia. That's why we shall not be surprised by Baron Wrangel's judgment, "The evacuation of Novorossiysk was even more nightmarish than the evacuation of Odessa. Spontaneously moving towards the sea, the troops overcrowded the town. The enemy, following up the White troops at their heels, caught the units who had not managed to get aboard and shot people on the breakwater and the pier with the artillery and machine guns. Pressed to the seashore by hustling crowds, people were falling into the water and getting drowned. Groans and weeping could be heard everywhere around the town."

Summarizing the results of these catastrophic evacuations, about thirty thousand White officers and soldiers got captured by Bolsheviks. The huge reserves of ammunition and uniforms have been left. All what the Whites needed during their offensive against Moscow, was exploded, burnt down or captured by the enemy...

Tragedies. Death. Blood. Now we shall leave the south of Russia and move to Siberia. Here the liquidation of the White movement turned out even more frightful and dreadful.

---

[1] Denikin A. The Sketches on the Russian Time of Troubles. Paris. 1921 (http://militera.lib.ru/memo/russian/denikin_ai2/5_21.html)

CHAPTER 10

The Liquidation of Kolchak

It is a terrible situation — to give an order and to secure its fulfilment not having any real force except your own authority.

From a letter of A. Kolchak to A. Timireva

There are no chances to be saved! They are not far from here. The Bolsheviks will take the railway station Taiga very soon. Then the most horrible will start happening. Kolchak's soldiers were still shooting back, a machine gun was firing at the approaching Reds from under the wheels of the train. The bullets of the Bolsheviks were snapping at the walls of the train and breaking the glass of its windows.

No, it's impossible to wait. A colonel jumps out of the neighbouring carriage. He has Russian features and a little grizzly beard. A lady of about thirty-five is leaning out of train after him.

— So, how is it?

Having received no answer, she jumped out of the train to the snow, ran up to him, and took him by the shoulder. Then, trying to outcry the rattle of the machine gun, she screamed:

— No salvation is possible? Right?

He tossed the head, opened his holster and, having taken his revolver out, went towards the cannonade. His wife grabbed his arm and started whispering something with tears in her eyes.

— Dad! Dad!

A ten-year old girl in a short dress jumped out in the cold and ran towards her parents.

— Dad!

The colonel stopped and took several steps towards his daughter. Then he stopped again. He turned in the direction of the battle, gave a wave of his hand as if banishing his thoughts away. He turned again to his family and looked at them. They were poorly clothed in the thirty degrees of frost and looked absolutely helpless. They watched him as if expecting to find the answers to all their questions in his face.

His hand with the revolver trembled. He goes to them. There is everything in his look: resoluteness, despair, and love. His love is limitless as taiga powdered with snow, the taiga surrounding this damned railway station bearing the same damned name. He couldn't have enough looking at them and still tried to imprint the beloved faces in his memory.

She understood him. She lightly nodded to him, pressed the little girl to her chest, kissed her and turned again to her husband.

— I won't give them to the Bolsheviks! They will deride them! Let's go away from here together! — the colonel screamed in a strange husky voice.

He raised his arm. Bang! His wife, as if knocked down, fell on the snow, a big red stain appeared on it. The girl, stunned by what had just happened, rushed weeping to her mother's body. And on the instant, she saw the cool barrel of his revolver directed at her head.

She seized his hand with the revolver, looked in his eyes. The beloved dear eyes of her father.

— Daddy! Leave me! Let me live! Bolsheviks will not do me any harm! Please, don't take my life!

The colonel could not hear anything besides his daughter's voice. It obscured the cannonade, the noise of the wind, the cries of the approaching soldiers. His moustache was quivering a little because of the suppressed weeping. He had dreaded this moment so much. He was getting ready for it, he was thinking what he would do if there was no way out. He knew that he would not be able to meet his daughter's look. His wife could understand and forgive him, but his daughter…

The colonel closed his eyes and froze with the revolver in his hand. She is just a child. They won't hurt her. And the girl in a short dress, standing on her knees in the snow, was embracing his legs and crying.

— Dad! I want to live! Poor mummy! Dad, I want to live! Let me live! Live!

This horror can't last forever. There is no way back.

— Farewell, Marisha! — he whispered. — I'm coming, Lizonka!

Bang!

…The girl was weeping, lamenting, hiding her face in her hands, which had turned blue with cold. She was sobbing at the corpses of her parents until somebody lifted her up and brought her into the train…[1]

---

[1] This terrible scene recreates a real situation, described in the memoirs.

Here the thread of our narration concerning the causes of the final ruination of the Russian Empire entwines again with the lifeline of Alexander Kolchak. His fate has passed several turning points within just a few years. At the beginning, he was the Black Sea Navy Commander, but instead of having the credit for being the first Russian commander to take the Dardanelles and the Bosphorus he turned into a commander-in-chief of the navy, that was getting demoralized and loosing discipline.

Then, the next turning point of the admiral's unbelievable fate followed. Unexpectedly, the Americans showed interest in his person. The US military mission asked the Provisional Government to send Kolchak on an official trip to consult the "allies" on mining and combating the enemy's submarines. Russia didn't need the best national naval commander anymore, and Kerensky could not refuse the request of the "allies" — Kolchak went to America. His mission is secret and it is forbidden to comment on it in the newspapers. His trip goes via Finland, Sweden, and Norway. There are no German troops in any of these countries, but Kolchak travels incognito dressed in civilian clothes. His officers are also in disguise. The biographers of the admiral do not explain why Kolchak would need all this camouflage...

In London, Kolchak made several important visits. He was accepted by the Head of the Naval General Staff Admiral Hall and the First Sea Lord of the Admiralty Jellicoe. In the conversation with Kolchak the Head of the British Navy expressed his *private* opinion that only the dictatorship could save Russia. The answers of the admiral were not recorded, but he stayed in Great Britain for quite a long time. Most likely, the people from another, very different, department also had heart-to-heart talks with Kolchak. This is how a man's pulse is felt, how his character and habits are studied. How his psychological portrait is created. In a few months, the October overthrow will take place in Russia, and Great Britain's ally will collapse in chaos and anarchy. Russia will not be able to fight against Germany anymore. The high-ranking British militaries can see this and they also know the method for saving the situation, — dictatorship should be established. But the British don't dare and don't try to force Kerensky, who is smoothly leading the country towards the

Bolshevik Revolution, to take stern measures. They only share their smart thoughts in the conversation with the *former Russian admiral.* Why with him? Because they considered the strong-willed and vigorous Kolchak, along with General Kornilov, as the perspective dictator. Why not support a strong-willed military in taking the power from this pushover Kerensky? **Because the dictator will be needed not before the October but after it!** Russia should first be razed to the ground and then it reconstructed and rebuilt. This should be done by a person loyal to Great Britain. A person feeling sympathy and gratitude to the Foggy Albion. The British select the future dictator, i.e., Lenin's alternative. Nobody knows how the events will advance. That's why they needed their own revolutionaries, Romanovs, and a grateful and strong-willed dictator on the substitutes' bench...

Kolchak's stay in the USA doesn't fall short of his stay in London with regard to the level of the visits. He was received by the true father of the Federal Reserve System, the U.S. President Wilson.[1] Conversations, conversations, again conversations.

At the same time a surprise was awaiting the admiral in the Admiralty. It appeared that the offensive operation of the naval forces of the USA in the Mediterranean Sea had been cancelled. It was for the sake of this operation that Kolchak basically had been invited. What for had Kolchak gone that long way to the American continent? In order for us not to think that Kolchak had crossed the ocean for these heart-to-heart talks, a smart explanation was invented. The former head of the Black Sea Navy during three weeks was visiting American sailors to explain them:

- the state and the structure of the Russian Navy,
- the common problems of the mine warfare,
- the construction of the Russian mine and torpedo weapons.[2]

---

[1] In accordance with the book "Wall Street and the Bolshevik Revolution" by the American Professor A. Sutton, Trotsky sailed to Russia to make revolution, having an American passport on him, which had been given to him by Wilson in person. Now, the President is talking to Kolchak, who will later become the White Head of Russia. This is a... casting.

[2] Bogdanov K. Kolchak. St. Pb.: Sudostroyenie, 1993. P. 117.

Naturally, all these issues require Kolchak's personal presence at the other end of the world. Nobody except the admiral (!) can explain the construction of a Russian torpedo to the American sailors...

Here in San Francisco, Kolchak learned about Lenin's overthrow in Russia. And immediately he received a telegram from the KD party with a proposal to stand on behalf of it for the member of the Constituent Assembly. But it wasn't meant for the battle-hardened admiral to become a parliament man. Lenin dissolved the Constituent Assembly and deprived Russia of its legitimate government. The disintegration of Russian Empire started immediately. Having no strength, Bolsheviks were not trying to hold anybody. Poland, Finland, Georgia, Azerbaijan, Armenia, and Ukraine have seceded.

Kolchak moves to Japan, and his life makes another turn. He takes the service in the British Navy. On December 30, 1917, he received an appointment on the Mesopotamian Front. But he never reached the place of his new place of employment. He explained the reasons of that under the interrogation, "Commander-in-Chief General Ridout welcomed me in Singapore and handed me an urgent telegram from the director of the *Intelligence Department of the Army General Headquarters in Great Britain* (this is the military intelligence — *N.S.*).

This telegram reads, "The British government... due to the changes in the military situation on the Mesopotamia Front... considers... it would be useful for the common goal of the "allies" for me to return to Russia, to go to the Far East and start my activities there, because from their standpoint, it's more beneficial than my service at the Mesopotamian Front."[1]

During the interrogations before the execution Kolchak was very open, because he understood that this was his last chance to get his message across to the future generations. In the letter to his ladylove A. Timireva, dated March 20, 1919, he humbly mentions that his mission is secret. It was about half a year after Kolchak's heart-to-heart conversations in Great Britain when the admiral's incredible fate raised him to the top of the Russian power. The British charge him with the task of bringing together the anti-Bolshevik forces in Russia. He has to start with Siberia and the Far East first. The first tasks are not very significant: he has to organize the White detachments in China, at the Chinese Eastern Railway. But the task stopped short: there is no Civil War in Russia. No real, horrible, and devastating Civil War. Kolchak returns to Japan and has nothing to do. Until the mutiny of the Czechoslovak legion broke out, provoking the beginning of the most horrible war in the Russian history.

---

[1] The interrogation of Kolchak. L.: GIZ, 1925 (htpp://militera.lib.ru/db/kolchak/06html)

It is important to understand the cause-and-effect relationship. At first, Kolchak is "examined," he has conversations with different people. After he agrees to work for the British intelligence services, he is *officially* hired.[1] Then he is charged with some minor tasks (this is a standby mode). And finally the "British employee" Mr. Kolchak is suddenly pushed on the stage and almost instantly… he is appointed the supreme governor of Russia. Isn't that interesting?

It was carried out the following way. In autumn 1918, Kolchak arrives in Vladivostok. Our hero doesn't arrive in Vladivostok alone, he has nice travel companions with him: the French Ambassador Reignier and the British General Alfred Knox. This general is quite unusual: he used to be the British military attache in Petrograd until the end of 1917. Two Russian revolutions took place before his very eyes and let us not be too modest, with his active involvement. Now the task of the brave general is just the opposite — to make a counterrevolution. It will be decided in London who will be supported and who will be buried in this fight. You have to play both with Whites and Blacks on the political chessboard. Then, whatever the outcome is, you win.

Further, the events develop at the light speed. It is always so with the careers of those who the British intelligence services are interested in. At the end of 1918, Kolchak and General Knox arrived in Omsk — the capital of the White Siberia. Kolchak has no official position, he is a civilian private individual. But already on November 4, the admiral is appointed the minister of war and navy in the Provisional All-Russian Government. *Two weeks later, on November 18, all the power in Siberia would be taken over by Kolchak in accordance with the decision of the government.*

---

[1] This was in the text of the telegram Kolchak received on December 30, 1917. (Bogdanov K. Kolchak. St. Pb.: Sudostroyenie,1993. P. 117.)

Kolchak becomes the head of Russia a month after his arrival in it. What is more, he doesn't stage any plot and doesn't make any attempts to take this post. All is done by a certain power, which creates a *fait accompli* for him. He accepts the title of the Supreme Governor of Russia and actually becomes the country's dictator, a holder of the supreme power. He had no legal grounds for this at all. The government, which gave the power to Kolchak, was elected by a little group of the Constituent Assembly deputies, which had been dispersed. Furthermore, it made this "generous" act due to the overthrow, after it had been arrested.

Russia's patriots breathed a sigh of hope. A man of action instead of the babblers took the power — at least that's how it looked from the outside. In fact, to understand the admiral's tragic situation, we have to remember that *Kolchak didn't take the power himself, but the power was given to him!*

The terms dictated for the "gift" of ruling the whole Russia were really tough. He had to be "democratic," use socialists in the government bodies, set forth the little-understood slogans for regular peasants. All of it seemed to be a reasonable price for the opportunity of establishing the army and crashing Bolsheviks, this is nothing compared to the possibility of saving Russia. Kolchak accepted the terms. He was not aware of the fact that exactly these conditions would bring him to a total crash in a year...

When we judge Kolchak as a government leader, we have to remember that he held the supreme power in Russia during a really short period. It is easy to calculate: he became the Supreme Governor of Russia on November 18, 1918, and gave up power on January 5, 1920. He lost the real power as early as in November 1919, when the White statesmanship in Siberia had collapsed due to the military failure and the SRs' treachery in the rear of the Whites. *He was in power for only a year.*

And almost from the very beginning, he started to demonstrate his independence and a contrary disposition to his British friends. Other representatives of the "allies" arrived in Siberia after General Knox. The French General Janin was sent to Siberia to maintain the communication with Kolchak's Army. During the visit to the Supreme Governor of Russia, General Janin informed him about his authority to take command not only of the Entente's forces on this theatre, but of *all the White armies in Siberia.* That is to say, the French general demanded a total subordination from the head of the Russian state. In due time, Denikin and other leaders of the White movement have recognized Kolchak as the Supreme Governor of Russia, i.e., the dictator of the country. The "allies" didn't recognize him, but at that moment they didn't recognize Lenin, either. In addition, Kolchak is not only the head of the country, he is the commander-in-chief of the White Army. All the White Armies *pro forma* come exactly under his command. As all the other White Guards subordinated to the admiral, the whole White movement actually got subjected to the will of the French. Henceforward, the orders for the Russian patriots will be coming from Paris. This is equal to the total loss of the national independence. Such subordination was killing the idea of Russian patriotism, because whenever Lenin and Trotsky were accused of aiding the Germans, Kolchak could be called "the Entente's" spy.

Kolchak rejects Janin's proposal. The Frenchman visits Kolchak again two days later. We don't know what he talked with Kolchak about but they managed to come to a consensus. "Kolchak, being the Supreme Governor of Russia, remains the commander-in-chief of the Russian Army, meanwhile General Janin becomes the commander-in-chief of all the foreign forces including the Czechoslovak Legion. Besides this, Kolchak charges him with the task of deputizing him at the front and of being his assistant."

With assistants as "reliable" behind your back your defeat and destruction are just a matter of time. The behaviour of the invaders, who allegedly had come to help the Russians get the country under control, was peculiar. The Americans, for example, opened up such good-neighbourly relations with the Red partisans that they contributed a lot to the partisans' position improvement and disorganization of Kolchak's rear areas. This went so far that Kolchak even had to bring up the issue of the American troops removal. Kolchak's administrative officer Sukin cabled to the former Minister of Foreign Affairs Sazonov that "the removal of the American troops is the only way to preserve friendly relations with the USA."[1] The fight against Bolsheviks was not in the cards of the "invaders." During one year and eight months of "intervention" the Americans lost 353 of their 12 thousand military men, only 180 (!) of which were killed in the battles. All the rest died of illnesses, accidents, and through suicides. By the way, losses that ludicrous are often mentioned in the statistics of the intervention. What real struggle against Bolsheviks can we talk about, then?

And still, the Americans carried out some useful work for the White government.[2] They seriously addressed the problem of the Trans-Siberian Railway, having sent 285 railway engineers and mechanics to keep it working, and they established a plant for production of train cars in Vladivostok. Yet, such touching care was not caused by their wish to rebuild Russia as soon as possible and to get the railway transportation running. The Americans themselves needed a properly functioning railway system. It's exactly this railway that will be used to move a part of Russia's gold reserve and many other tangibles out of Russia. In order to do it in a more convenient way, the "allies" conclude an agreement with Kolchak. Henceforward, the Czechs, the Polacks, and the Americans will take care of the security and operation of the Trans-Siberian Railway. They do the required repairs, they are in charge of its operation.

---

[1] http://www.apocalypse.orthodoxy.ru/secret/04.htm

[2] The episodes of secret cooperation between the USA and the Bolsheviks emerge in fragments. For example, in March 1920, ten Renault tanks arrived to Vladivostok. They were stored... in the Red Cross railway cars. And then they were given over to the Reds. You should not be surprised — let's remember that it was the Red Cross that right after October 1917 became, in fact, the cover for the Wall Street envoys, the American bankers, who owned the Federal Reserve System (Novikov P. The Civil War in the Eastern Siberia. M.: Tsentrpoligraf. P. 228)

They safeguard the railway and fight the partisans. It looks as if the White troops are released of these duties and can be sent to the front. That's fair enough, but in the Civil War the rear is sometimes more important than the front.

Kolchak was trying to get the recognition in the west. He thought it incredible that the British and the French, who suggested that he should have come to Russia, didn't provide him any official support. Their support was continuously postponed: they kept promising it all the time but it was never delivered. He had to be even more "democratic" and less "reactionary." Despite the fact that Kolchak has agreed to do the following:

- to call the Constituent Assembly as soon as he takes over Moscow,
- to refuse the restoration of the regime destroyed by the revolution,
- to recognize Poland's independence,
- to acknowledge all Russia's foreign debts.

But Lenin and Bolsheviks have always been even more accommodating and more compliant. In March 1919, Kolchak repelled the offer of starting the peace negotiations with Bolsheviks. He over and over again demonstrated to the western emissaries that the interests of Russia were of the uppermost importance for him. Denikin rejected the attempt of separating Russia, too. Then the British, the French, and the Americans definitely decided to place their stake on Bolsheviks. It was from March 1919 that the west headed for the ultimate liquidation of the White movement.

While exactly in spring 1919 the White victory seemed to be so close, and the Red Front seemed to crash once and for all any day. Grand Prince Alexander Mikhailovich Romanov writes in his memoirs, "Thus, the Bolshevik armies were under the threat from the northwest, south and east. The Red Army was in the bud, and Trotsky himself was doubtful of its fighting capacity. It's safe to say that a thousand heavy artillery pieces and two hundred tanks at one of the three fronts would have saved the whole world from the permanent threat."[1]

---

[1] Romanov A. The Memoirs. M.: AST, 2008. P. 356.

The White Armies needed some little help, just a little bit, and this bloody nightmare would be over. The battle actions are carried out on a large scale and demand a great amount of ammunition. A war is an abyss, which gobbles great numbers of resources, people, and money. It can be compared to a furnace, where more and more coal is needed to keep the fire. Otherwise, you simply don't pull away. Here is one more riddle. Did the "allies" help Kolchak at this decisive moment? Did they add any coal to his "furnace"? Don't be lost in your thoughts — here is the answer in the memoirs of the same old Alexander Mikhailovich Romanov, "Then something strange happened. Instead of following the advice of their experts, the heads of the "allied" states followed the policy which made Russian officers and soldiers extremely disappointed in our former "allies" and even made them recognize that the Red Army was defending the entirety of Russia from the foreign pretensions."[1]

Let's step back for a moment and remember that Denikin and Yudenich, and Kolchak — all of them — were thrilled about the offensive in 1919. None of them has their armies finally established, their military personnel properly trained and armed. And despite all this, the Whites obstinately go towards their collapse. It's amazing. As if they had some mental block. *The Whites are going to take Moscow, but they aren't going on the offensive simultaneously, they do it at different time and in turns.* This is why Trotsky managed to inflict a piecemeal defeat on them.

"In 1919, Bolsheviks found themselves in such a difficult situation that *only a miracle* could save them. And a miracle happened, when the most absurd action plan had been approved in Siberia"[2], Professor of the Academy of the General Headquarters D. Filatyev, who was the supply service assistant of Commander-in-Chief Kolchak, writes in his memoirs "The Catastrophe of the White Movement in Siberia." Feel the breath of the miracles once again. They are always associated with the deeds of the British intelligence. If we look under whose influence Kolchak's military plans were approved, we will clearly see who was again behind-the-scenes of the new Russian time of troubles.

---

[1] Romanov A. The Memoirs. M.: AST, 2008. P. 356.

[2] Filatyev D. The Catastrophe of the White Movement in Siberia/Admiral Kolchak's Eastern Front. M.: Tsentrpoligraf, 2004. P. 240.

In spring 1919, the Supreme Governor of Russia had two options. D. Filatyev has described them perfectly:

1. To be at a stop and use the inactivity of the enemy to finish the army formation and supply it with the necessary military materials, and also to make sure to contact Denikin in order to agree on the common actions.
2. To act urgently and quickly in order not to give the Reds any breathing spell.

"Cautiousness and military science demanded that the first plan was accepted in order to move towards the goal slowly, though surely,"[1] General Filatyev writes. Admiral Kolchak chooses to attack. The offensive can be made in two directions:

1. Having put up a defensive screen towards Vyatka and Kazan, the main forces move in the direction of Samara and Tsaritsyn to get united with Denikin's Army and move towards Moscow together after that. (Baron Wrangel tried in vain to get Denikin's permission for such operation).
2. The main forces move in the direction of Kazan-Vyatka in order to get via Kotlas to Arkhangelsk and Murmansk, where great resources of ammunition are concentrated. Besides, this shortened the time for the deliveries from Great Britain, because the distance from Great Britain to Arkhangelsk is much shorter than that to Vladivostok.[2]

The military science is not less complicated than nuclear physics or palaeontology. It has its rules and formulas. You should not risk if not absolutely necessary; you should not let the enemy divide your forces and crush them piecemeal by freely moving the forces along the internal operation lines; you should crush the enemy by an all-out attack. Had Kolchak chosen to go on the offensive towards Samara and Tsaritsyn, all the rules of the military science would have been followed.

---

[1] Filatyev D. The Catastrophe of the White Movement in Siberia/Admiral Kolchak's Eastern Front. M.: Tsentrpoligraf, 2004. P. 251–252.

[2] Ib. P. 239. One of the arguments, which the British used when pushing Kolchak to accept the perilous plan of the offensive, were the huge reserves in Arkhangelsk and Murmansk, and the presence of the British troops there. Do you remember? As soon as the offensive starts, the British will sink exactly these reserves into the sea and quickly go home.

"The direction of all the forces towards Vyatka didn't give any of these advantages, because a total success could be reached only in case Bolsheviks would not concentrate all their forces against the Siberian Army, having relaxed pressure on Denikin for a while. However, building the operation plan on the meaningless and faulty actions of the opponent can only be explained by the lack of common sense."[1]

General Filatyev is wrong: that was not Kolchak's lack of common sense that had set him on the perilous track. To the horror of his military experts, Kolchak... chose an even more unfortunate strategy. The third option, the most unfortunate one, was to set out the offensive on Vyatka and Samara at the same time.[2] On February 15, 1919, a secret instruction of the Supreme Governor of Russia was made public that ordered the offensive in *all* (!) the directions.[3] This made the armies dispersing in the vast Russian lands, making their actions uncoordinated and denuding the front between them. Hitler's strategists will make the same mistake in 1942, by attacking Stalingrad and Caucasus at once. Kolchak's offensive will also end up in a total crash. Why did the admiral choose such a wrong strategy? He had been convinced to do it. By the way, exactly the same perilous plan was studied and approved by the French General Headquarters. And the British were also ardently insisting on it. Their arguments were compelling. We can read about them in the book of General Sakharov "The White Siberia," "They (the allies — *N. S.*)

---

[1] Filatyev D. The Catastrophe of the White Movement in Siberia/Admiral Kolchak's Eastern Front.

[2] Ib.

[3] I. e., in three divergent directions: Gaida had to move towards Vyatka and Moscow, Verzhbitsky moved towards Kazan, Khanzhin had to go towards Samara (Ib. P. 252).

brought all this to Vladivostok and put it in the depots. Then, they started to distribute the ammunition not just under a very strict control, but also with much pressure in the most different spheres. Some of the foreigners didn't like that we were not close enough with SRs, the others considered the course of the internal policy being not liberal enough, the third ones insisted it was necessary to form some forces, and some even tried to get involved in the operation issues. They were pointing out and insisting on choosing the direction of the operation... *It was exactly under such pressure that the direction of the offensive towards Perm-Vyatka-Kotlas was chosen...*"[1]

On April 12, Kolchak published one more instruction and took a decision regarding the beginning of... the total offensive on Moscow. "The History of VKP(b): Short Course," published during Stalin's reign, describes the alert level of the Whites, "In spring 1919, Kolchak, having formed a huge army, almost reached Volga. The best Bolshevik forces, the mobilized members of the Komsomol[2] and workers were deployed against Kolchak. In April 1919, the Red Army inflicted a serious defeat to Kolchak. Very soon the retreat of Kolchak's Army along the whole frontline began."[3]

It appears that hardly having issued the instruction and started the offensive, the admiral's troops were smashed on April 12. And as early as in June/July, the Reds, having brushed his armies aside, broke forth into the operation spaces of Siberia. After having been on the offensive for only two months, Kolchak's troops started to retreat uncontrollably. And so they kept retreating till the bitter end and the total crash. A comparison suggests itself...

...In summer 1944, the Soviet troops were preparing to inflict a crushing blow to Hitler's Wehrmacht. The operation "Bagration" is thoroughly thought out. As the result of the operation, a big group of the German armies will seize to exist. And this was what happened, but if Stalin's offensive went on in accordance with the principles Kolchak and Denikin had followed, the Soviet tanks would not have come to Warsaw, but they would have landed near Stalingrad or even near Moscow. This means that the offensive would have been a total failure and not just this offensive, but the whole war would have been a total crash...

---

[1] Sakharov K. The White Siberia/Admiral Kolchak's Eastern Front. M.: Tsentrpoligraf, 2004. P. 120.

[2] Translator's note: Komsomol is an abbreviation for the All-Union Leninist Young Communist League.

[3] http://grachev62narod.ru/vkpb_hist/chapt08.htm

Let's summarize: Kolchak could not go on the offensive. But he not only did it, but also made his armies move in the divergent directions. And he even managed to made one more mistake in this already wrong plan, having directed his strongest army towards Vyatka, which was an indecisive direction.

The armies of Kolchak (as well as those of Denikin and of Yudenich) were defeated not due to the combination of circumstances, but because of the elementary non-observance of the basics of tactics and strategy, the backbone of warfare.

Were the Russian generals incompetent in these matters? Did not the Russian officers know the basics of the military science? The fighters for the "United and Indivisible Russia" could only have been made to act against the common sense by those on whom they fully depended.

What will the historians answer to this? They say, so are the generals in Great Britain. It turned out so by chance. This British gentleman just neglected his schoolwork and wasn't an outstanding student at the military academy, either, that's why he made a mistake. But whatever he did was done with a smile, wholeheartedly, and without any hidden motive. Accidentally, the French generals are not much better. The main advisor of General Janin, Kolchak's future blighter, is Captain of the French Army Zinovy Peshkov. This surname is familiar for you, isn't it?

Concurrently,... this brave French officer is Maxim Gorky's stepson and the brother of Yakov Sverdlov, one of the Bolshevik chieftains. We can only guess what recommendation this advisor could give and who was his end master. There is no doubt that under such circumstances the plan of the offensive of the White admiral was known to Trotsky, hence the amazingly quick crashing defeat of

Kolchak. Yet, at first, it was just a defeat. Several times during the Russian strife the fortune changed sides, favouring now the Reds, then the Whites. A temporary retreat and a failure do not mean the end of the struggle, they are a stage of it. Siberia is huge and the new troops are being formed in the rear. The Whites have a lot of reserves, fortified sectors have been established, as well. The "allies" had to take pains to turn Kolchak's defeat into a catastrophe and the ruination of the entire White movement. The main role in the stranglehold of the Whites was played by the Czechoslovaks. But you should remember that they were not just Slavonic fighters, they are the official troops of the French Army under the command of the French General Janin. So, who liquidated Kolchak in the end?

Having played a role of the Russian strife warmongers, the Czechs soon left the front and moved to the rear, letting the Russians fight with the Russians. They take the railway under their control. They have the best barracks, a huge number of railway cars. They have the best ammunition, their own armoured trains. The Czech cavalry has enough saddles and does not have to use pillows instead. And all this well equipped forces is stationed in the rear, gorging themselves on the Russian food. When the White Armies started to retreat, the Czechs, who had occupied the Trans-Siberian Railway, evacuated very fast. They have plundered a lot in Russia. The Czechoslovak Legion numbered about forty thousand soldiers and had 120 thousand railway cars at their disposal. And all this jumbo starts to evacuate at once. The Red Army does not want to fight the Czechs, the retreating Whites are not looking for one more mighty enemy, either. That's why they powerlessly look at the outrage committed by the Czechs. The Slavonic brothers do not let a sole Russian troop train pass. Hundreds of railway cars with wounded soldiers and officers, women and children are standing in the middle of taiga. It's impossible to deliver the ammunition for the army, because the retreating Czechs use both tracks for their railway cars. They brassily take away the locomotives from the Russian troop trains and couple the locomotives to their own troop trains. And the locomotive drivers drive the Czech's troop train until the locomotive goes out. Then the Czechs leave it and take another locomotive from the nearest non-Czech train. Thus, the circulation of the locomotives is disturbed, and it becomes impossible to transport either people or tangibles.

In accordance with the order of the Czech command, no trains, including Kolchak's troop trains, are allowed to pass further than the Taiga railway station. General Kappel, whom the admiral has appointed to command the troops at this critical moment, is sending telegrams to General Janin, begging him "to let the Russian minister of railway transport manage the Russian railway." Herewith, he assured that no delays or cutbacks of the Czech troop trains would take place. But there was no answer.

It was in vain that Kappel was sending telegrams to General Janin, who was formally commanding all the "allied" forces including the Czechs. In fact, the blocking of the railway was not dictated by the self-interests of the Czech captains or colonels. This was a strong order of the generals. The inability to evacuate is equal to the death sentence for the Whites. Horrible scenes are put on among the silent Siberian pine trees. The troop trains with typhous patients are standing in taiga. Piles of corpses, no medication, no food. The medical personnel has either fallen sick or has fled, the locomotive has frozen. All the patients of the wheeled hospital are doomed. The Red Guards will find them later in taiga, these horrible trains packed with the dead...

In the other trains the officers, civil employees, and their families flee from the Reds. These are tens of thousands of people. The wave of the Red Army is following closely behind. But the traffic jam, organized by the Czechs, won't resolve. There is almost no fuel, the water in the engine gets frozen. People leave the railway cars and drag along the railway in taiga. It is the real Siberian frost, it is minus thirty degrees or even colder. Nobody knows how many people have frozen to death in the forest...

The White Army retreats. This way to Calvary will be later called the Great Siberian Ice March. Three thousand kilometres through taiga, snow, along the beds of the frozen rivers. The retreating White Guards carry all the weapons and ammunition with them. But it is impossible to take the cannons through the forest. The artillery is left behind. There is no food for the horses, too. The corpses of the horses are the horrible marks of the White Guard's retreat. There are no horses available, and the extra weapons have to be abandoned, as well. They carry a minimum of provisions and a minimum of weapons. This horror lasts for several months. The fighting capacity is rapidly decreasing. And the number of people falling ill with typhus is rapidly growing. In the small villages, where the retreating Whites use to overnight, the sick and the wounded lie on the floor together. There is no hygiene. The ones who go further give space to the coming ones. Wherever a sick person slept, a healthy person lies down. There are no doctors, no medications. There is nothing. Commander-in-Chief General Kappel had his both feet frostbitten, having slumped into an ice-hole. In the nearest village, a doctor cut off his toes and a part of his heel with a regular knife, without any anaesthesia or wound treatment. Kappel died two weeks later, having got pneumonia in addition to the consequences of abscission...

And nearby the endless chain of the Czech troop trains is sweeping past. The soldiers are full-fed, the firewood is crackling in the cast-iron stoves, heating the railway cars up. The horses are chewing on oats. The Czechs are going home. They have declared the railway area being neutral. There should be no firefight along the railway. If the Reds take over a little town, which the Czech troop trains are passing by, the Whites cannot attack it. If the Whites break the neutrality of the railway area, the Czechs will open fire.

The rest of the White Army is moving on the sledges through the forests. The horses can hardly trudge. There are no roads in taiga. To be more accurate, there is only one road. The Siberian road is overcrowded with the carts of the civil refugees. Freezing women and children drag along the road — they had left the troop trains, standing motionless on the railway tracks, blocked by the Czechs. The Reds are pushing from the back. To move forward they have to take away the carts and wagons, stalled in the snow. The carts and private belongings are burning in the fires. No cries for help can be heard. If your horse dies, you are doomed. Nobody would share his cart with you — in case his horse dies, who will take care of his children and his loved ones? The detachments of the Red partisans wander in the forests. They deal away with the captives particularly brutally. They do not have any mercy on the refugees, they just kill everyone. And thus, people stay in the frozen trains and quietly fade away, falling into a "salvational" dream...

The history of the partisan movement's uprise in Siberia is still waiting for its researcher. It can explain a lot. Do you know what slogans the Siberian partisans used when going into action? The slogans were against Kolchak, it's a fact. But why were the Siberian peasants fighting the admiral's power with deadly force in their hands? The answer can be found in the propaganda materials of that time. The detachment of the former staff-captain Shchetinkin was the most significant and well-known in Siberia. Captain G. Dumbadze left the most interesting description of the slogans, under which he led the peasants into attack. The detachment of the White Guards found the printing-house of the Red partisans in the village of Stepnoy Badzhey. There were thousands of leaflets there. The text read, "I, Grand Prince Nikolay Nikolayevich, have secretly arrived in Vladivostok by sea in order together with the Soviet people's power to start the struggle against the traitor Kolchak, who had sold himself out to the foreigners. All the Russian people must support me." The end of the text is not less astonishing, **"For the Tsar and the Soviet power!"**[1]

You still fail to understand why the British insisted that the White Guards would not advance the "reactionary" slogans, do you?

But even in that nightmarish situation the freezing White Guards had a chance to stop and repel the Red Army's attack. If the fire of the uprisings staged by SRs had not broken out in the rear. As if according to the schedule, the uprisings started almost at the same time in all the industrial towns. The SR propaganda, which had been carried on during several months, took effect. Bolsheviks were much closer to them than the "reactionary" tsarist generals. In June 1919, the SR Siberian Union was established. The leaflets published by it called upon the overthrow of Kolchak's government, the establishment of the people's power, and the termination of the armed struggle against Bolsheviks. Almost at the same time, the 11th Congress of the SR Party, which took place on June 18 to 20 in Moscow, confirmed their main goals. One of the most important goals was to prepare the peasant uprisings all over the territory controlled by the troops of Kolchak. The closing stage of the plan was the establishment of the new body of power — the Political centre, which was established on November 12 in Irkutsk. It was exactly this Political centre that was supposed to take over the power in Irkutsk, which was proclaimed the White capital after the fall of Omsk.

---

[1] Dumbadze G. What Caused Our Defeat in Siberia in the Civil War/ Admiral Kolchak's Eastern Front. M.: Tsentrpoligraf, 2004. P. 586.

It's the right time to ask why SRs were feeling so freely in Kolchak's rear? Where was the counter intelligence? Why did not the Supreme Governor of Russia mercilessly root these revolutionary pests out? It appeared that he was not allowed to do it by the British. In every possible way they demanded to engage this party in the "project." They tried to prevent putting things in order and establishment of a real dictatorship, which was more than justified during the Civil War. Why do the "allies" like the SRs so much? Why do they insistently patronize them? Due to the actions of this party in the course of a few months — from the February till the October — the Russian Army has lost its fighting capacity and the Russian state has become legally incapable. The White General Chaplin aptly characterized SRs as specialists "in destruction and demoralization without any creative power."

SRs get positions in the cooperatives, public agencies, they are the heads of the authorities in the big Siberian towns. And they fight a secret battle against the... White Guard. Little attention is usually paid to this fact in connection with the ruin of Kolchak and his army. And how wrong it is! "The SRs' underground activities bore their fruits later," — General Sakharov writes in his memoirs "The White Siberia," "And they turned some failures at the front into a total catastrophe of the army, it caused the destruction of all venture led by Admiral A. Kolchak.[1] SRs carry on the anti-Kolchak propaganda in the army. For Kolchak it is difficult to answer adequately: the overthrow of the Bolshevik power resulted in the restoration of the county and town self-administration. These bodies of regional power were elected in 1917 in accordance with the laws of the Provisional Government. They consist almost entirely of the SRs and Mensheviks. It is not possible to disperse these bodies — this is undemocratic and the "allies" will never let it happen. But it's not possible to let them remain, because they are a stronghold and a centre of the opposition against the strict order. Kolchak had not managed to solve this problem up to the point of his death...

---

[1] Sakharov K. The White Siberia/Admiral Kolchak's Eastern Front. M.: Tsentrpoligraf, 2004. P. 73–74.

On December 21,1919, an armed revolt of SRs started in the Irkutsk province, and two days later they took power in Krasnoyarsk and then in Nizhneudinsk. The units of the 1st White Army, which had been in the rear for the purpose of formation, got involved in the revolt. The retreating, demoralized, and freezing units of Kolchak's Army, which are looking for the reinforcement, are confronted by the rebels and Red partisans. This stab in the back undermines the moral spirit of the Whites. They fail to assault Krasnoyarsk and most of the retreating White Guards pass Krasnoyarsk by. They start to surrender on a large scale. Having lost hope, the soldiers can see no sense in fighting further. The refugees are exhausted and can't flee further. However, a significant part of the Whites prefer to go into the uncertainty instead of surrendering to the hateful Bolsheviks. These irreconcilable heroes will follow their Via Dolorosa till the end. A frozen bed of the Angara River, hundreds of kilometres of taiga paths, a huge ice mirror of the Baikal Lake awaited them. About ten thousand of deadly tired White Guards came to Transbaikal, which was under the command of Chieftain Semyonov. They brought almost as much exhausted fighters ill with typhus fever. The number of those who have perished can't be counted...

A part of Irkutsk garrison has demonstrated the moral spirit as strong. The last defenders of the power are as usual the junkers and Cossacks, who remain loyal to the given oath. SRs attack the town on December 24, 1919. The revolt starts in the barracks of infantry regiment №53. They are located on the opposite side of the Angara River. The troops loyal to Kolchak try to put the revolt down but fail to do it quickly. The bridge, crossing the Angara River, appeared to be dismantled "by chance" and all the ships are under the control of the "allies." In order to put down the revolt the commandant of Irkutsk garrison General Sychev declares a stage of siege. Since he can't reach the rebels without the assistance of the "allies," he decides to bring the rebels to reason with the artillery fire.

We will notice a lot of "by chances" in this revolt of SRs. Recently the Czech troop trains, forwarding to Vladivostok, were continuously passing through the Irkutsk railway station. But the Political centre of the SRs starts the revolt exactly on the day when... the train of General Janin himself is at the station. Not earlier and not later. In order to avoid misunderstanding General Sychev informs the French about his decision to use the artillery fire against the rebels. It's a critical moment: if the revolt is suppressed, Kolchak's power will get a chance to survive. The government evacuated from Omsk is at the moment in Irkutsk (but the admiral himself is not there. He did not want to leave the gold reserve unattended and got stuck with his troop trains in the traffic jam caused by the Czechs not far from Nizhneudinsk).

The behaviour of the "allies" in Irkutsk perfectly demonstrates their real goals in the Russian Civil War. General Janin strongly forbids to strike out the rebels. In case of bombardment he threatens to open the artillery fire on the town. Later, the "allied" general explained that his decision had been dictated by the humanitarian reasons and by his wish to avoid the bloodshed. *The commander of the "allied" forces not only forbade the artillery fire, but also declared the part of Irkutsk, where the rebels were concentrated, a neutral zone.* It's getting impossible to liquidate the rebels, because the ultimatum of the French general can't be ignored: the troops, which are loyal to Kolchak, number about three thousand bayonets, while the Czechs have four thousand.

But the Whites do not surrender. They clearly understand that the defeat in Irkutsk will lead to the total liquidation of Kolchak's power. The commandant mobilizes all the officers, who are in the town at the moment, and engages the Cadet teenagers as well. The aggressive actions of the authorities prevent other units of the garrison from going over to the rebels. Since the Whites can't attack the "neutral zone," they only defend themselves. More rebel units come to the town, and they attack the Whites. The situation keeps changing: none of the sides can take over. Severe battles are fought in the streets every day. The breakdown in favour of the government troops became possible, when about one thousand soldiers under the command of General Skipetrov arrived in Irkutsk on December 30, 1919. This detachment was sent by Chieftain Semyonov. He also sent a telegram to General Janin, asking "to either remove all the rebels from the neutral zone or not to prevent the troops under my command from fulfilling the order on immediate putting down the criminal revolt and on the order restoration."[1]

There was no answer. General Janin did not write back to Chieftain Semyonov, but the actions of his subordinates were speaking more than his return telegram could do. First under different pretexts they did not let three White armoured trains pass at the approaches to the town.[2] Still, the soldiers of Chieftain Semyonov opened an attack without the support of the armoured trains, and the junkers supported them from the town. Then "*this attack was repelled by the fire of the Czech machine guns from the rear, and about twenty junkers were killed,*"[3] an eyewitness wrote. The brave Slavonic legionaries shot dead the attacking boys, the junkers, in the back...

But even this could not put down the upsurge of the White Guards. The detachment of Semyonov moved forward and the revolt was on the edge of smash. Having put aside all the talks about the neutrality, the Czechs got straightforwardly involved in the situation.[1] Referring to General Janin's order, they demanded that all the military actions were ceased and that the newly arrived detachment was removed under the threat of them using force. Not having any communications with the Cossacks and junkers in the town, Semyonov's detachment had to retreat at the muzzles of the artillery cannons, mounted on the Czech armoured trains. But the Czechs did not stop there. Allegedly in order to finally secure the anti-Kolchak revolt, the "allies" disarmed Semyonov's detachment by having traitorously attacked it![2]

---

[1] Novikov P. The Civil War in the Eastern Siberia. M.: Tsentrpoligraf, 2005. P. 183.

[2] The Czechs "traitorously" let an empty locomotive move towards the armoured train of the Whites. Due to the collision, the railway tracks got blocked. (Chieftain Semyonov. About Me. M.: Tsentrpoligraf, 2007. P. 185.)

[3] Novikov P. The Civil War in the Eastern Siberia. M.: Tsentrpoligraf, 2005. P. 183.

It was exactly the involvement of the "allies" that saved the multifold forces of the Political centre of the SRs from defeat. It was exactly the involvement of the "allies" that caused the defeat of the governmental forces. This was not accidental. To make sure, let's compare some dates.

- the revolt in Irkutsk started on December 24, 1919,
- the troop train with the gold reserve, in which Kolchak was travelling, was kept by the Czechs in Nizhneudinsk for two weeks (Why? Because the White Guards were deprived of their leaders and the appearance of Kolchak who was popular among the White Guards would change the spirit of the soldiers in doubt),
- on January 4, the SRs won the victory in Irkutsk,
- on January 4, Kolchak retired from his responsibilities of the Supreme Governor of Russia and delegated them to Denikin.

The coincidences can be easily seen at once. The Czechs at the suggestion of General Janin do not let the Whites subdue the revolt to have an excuse with regard to not letting Kolchak in his new capital. The absence of the admiral and the obvious support lent to the "allies" help the SRs win. After that Kolchak retires from his responsibilities. Very simple and impressive. The historians tell us about the cowardly Czechs, who allegedly tried to flee from the advancing Reds and to secure a safe trip for themselves. The dates and figures crash all the naive theories in the harshest possible way. The Entente soldiers have obviously and clearly started to fight the Whites as soon as the plan demanded that.

---

[1] "The neutrality was functioning in one way indeed — in favour of the rebels". (Guins G. Siberia, the "Allies," and Kolchak. M.: Iris Press, 2008. P. 553).

[2] Chieftain Semyonov. About Me. M.: Tsentrpoligraf, 2007. P. 186.

I mean, the "allies" had one more very clear and concrete goal. The historiography interprets the surrender of Kolchak to the Reds as a forced step on the part of the Czechoslovaks. A bad-smelling, treacherous, but a forced step. Allegedly, the noble General Janin could not do anything else in order to relocate his command subordinates quickly and without losses from Russia. He had to sacrifice Kolchak and turn him in to the Political centre. Wait a minute! Kolchak was turned in to the Political centre on January 15, 1920. But two weeks earlier the weak Political centre of SRs was not only unable to take the power single-handedly, but was saved from the crash by the Czechs and General Janin personally. Some four thousand Slavonic legionaries were able to dictate their will to the Whites and turn the situation in the critical moment as they wanted it. Why? Because the forty thousand strong Czechoslovak corps were behind them, and that was a force. Nobody wanted to have conflicts with them — start to fight against the Czechs and you'll get a new strong enemy, and your opponent will get one more strong friend. This is why the Whites and the Reds cajole the Czechoslovaks as best they can. And having become impudent, the Czechs take away the locomotives from the hospital trains and leave them to get frozen in taiga.

If the "allies" had wanted to evacuate Kolchak still alive, nobody would prevent them. Such force simply did not exist. The Reds didn't need the admiral who had lost the battle, either. No one likes to talk about it openly, and it has not been on the recent film about Kolchak, but having retired from his responsibilities on January 4, Kolchak was escorted by the Czechs as *a private person*. Let's remember again the chronology of the events in Irkutsk and pay attention to the fact that Kolchak was only able to start moving in his "gold" troop train *first after he had retired from his responsibility of the Supreme Governor of Russia.* He was detained by the Czechs in accordance with the order of General Janin, allegedly to ensure Kolchak's security.

The bearers of the supreme Russian power pay a dear price for the "care" of their security. Alexander Kerensky sent the family of Nicholas II to Siberia to ensure it. General Janin did not let Kolchak's troop train into Irkutsk, where the faithful junkers and Cossacks could have protected him. Two weeks later, this careful French general would easily give the admiral over to the representatives of the SR Political centre in Irkutsk. And he has given his "word of a soldier" that the life of the former Supreme Governor is under the umbrella held by the "allies." By the way, a year ago, when the Entente needed Kolchak, in the night of the overthrow that had brought him to power, the house where he lived had got safeguarded by the British military unit.[1] Now the Czechoslovaks have adopted a role of his jailors.

This was not the weak "new-born" SR Political centre that was dictating its will to the Czechs. It was the "allied" command, which was conniving the SRs and helping them in every way and which "scheduled" their revolt in Irkutsk. It was again the "allied" command that was "preparing" the new regime, to which they hurried to give the admiral over due to the "factual constraint." Kolchak should not stay alive. But the Czechs themselves could not shoot him dead. Exactly as in the case with the Romanovs, who were supposed to be killed by Bolsheviks, the Supreme Governor of Russia should have been shot dead by an SR bullet. And these were not only the political reasons that mattered. Everyone can guess what those reasons were! The matter in question is gold. Not kilograms but tons of gold. The matter of question are tens and hundreds tons of the precious metal...

Kolchak's ruination and the death of Nicholas II's family have much common. In the Versiya Newspaper №17, 2004 an interview with the professor of the Diplomatic Academy under the Ministry of the Foreign Affairs, Doctor of History Vladlen Sirotkin was published. The matter in question was the "Russian gold" that was abroad and that had been unlawfully appropriated by the "allies." The Russian gold abroad can be divided into three parts: the "Tsar's part," the "Kolchak's part," and the "Bolsheviks' part." We are interested in the first two parts. The Tsar's part consists of:

---

[1] Bogdanov K. Kolchak. St. Pb.: Sudostroyenie, 1993. P. 121.

1) the gold that had been produced in the gold mines and captured in a pirate way by Japan in 1917 in Vladivostok;

2) the precious metal on not less than ten ships, sent by the Russian government in 1908–1913 to the USA in order to create the international currency system. It just remained there and the project was not realized due to World War 1, which broke out "by chance";

3) about one hundred fifty suitcases with the jewels of the Tsar's family, which sailed to Great Britain in 1917.

And so, the "allied" intelligence services have staged the liquidation of the Tsar's family by hands of Bolsheviks. This is a particularly bold point ending the story of the Tsar's gold. There is no need to return this gold. There is no one left to give report to — this is why the British and the French won't recognize any Russian power.

The second part of the Russian gold in size is Kolchak's gold. This is the gold sent to Japan, Great Britain, and the USA in order to buy the ammunition. Neither the samurais, nor the governments of Great Britain and the USA have fulfilled their obligations to Kolchak. Today the gold, handed over to Japan, corresponds to the amount of about eighty billions of US dollars. Those who do not trust the politics trust in economics! To sell and to betray the White movement was quite profitable. The noble General Janin together with the Czechs has really sold Kolchak or rather, they have exchanged him. The Reds allowed the Czechs to take one third of the gold reserve of the Russian treasury, which the admiral had safekept, for having given out Kolchak. Later, this money would be the bulk of the gold reserve of the independent Czechoslovakia. The situation is exactly the same — the physical liquidation of Kolchak was a sort of bold point in the financial relations of the Entente and the White governments. Kolchak is dead — there is nobody to report to.

The numbers vary. Different information sources estimate the amount of the "Russian gold" in different figures. Still, in all the cases the numbers are impressive. The matter in question are not the kilograms and even not the centners, but tens and hundreds tons of the precious metal. *The "allies" did not bring the gold accumulated* *by the Russian people during the centuries out in sacks and trunks, they brought it out by ships and troop trains.* Hence the conflicted information: one carriage of gold more or one carriage of gold less. Please note that the gold of the White Guard is the gold of Kolchak and not of Denikin, Krasnov, or Wrangel. Let's connect the dots and the "diamond" of the treachery of the "allies" will sparkle with one more facet. None of the White leaders was given to the Reds or killed during the Civil War except for Kornilov, who was killed in the battle. *Only Admiral Kolchak was taken captive by Bolsheviks.* Denikin left for Great Britain, Krasnov left for Germany, Wrangel was evacuated with the rests of his defeated army from the Crimea. *It was only Admiral Kolchak, the one in control of a huge gold reserve, who perished.*

For fairness sake, it must be said that the fact of Kolchak's death was so outrageous that it caused the public outcry. The "allied" governments had to create a special committee for investigation of General Janin's actions. "But they have not got any result," Grand Prince Alexander Mikhailovich writes in his memoirs. General Janin had the same answer to all the questions. This phrase made everyone who interrogated him feel uncomfortable, "I have to repeat, Messers, that they have been even less soft with His Majesty Emperor Nicholas II."[1]

It was not without a reason that the French general mentioned the fate of Nicholas Romanov. General Janin had his hand in the disappearance of the materials concerning the murder of the Tsar's family. The first part of the materials mysteriously vanished on the way from Russia to Great Britain. This is, so to say, the contribution of the British intelligence services. The French made their contribution to this shady story, as well. After Kolchak's death in March 1920, the main persons, involved in the investigation regarding the murder of the Tsar's family: Generals Diterikhs and Lokhvitsky, investigator Sokolov, the British Wilton, and the tutor of Tsarevich Alexei, Pierre Gilliard, met in Harbin. The hard evidences and all the investigation materials, collected by the investigator Sokolov, were kept in the railway car of the British Wilton, who had a diplomatic status. The details of the expedition of the materials abroad were discussed. At this moment, right on cue, a strike on the Chinese Eastern Railway broke out. The situation ran high, and even General Diterikhs, who was against the expedition of the materials abroad, agreed with the other participants. The participants of the improvised meeting addressed General Janin in writing, asking him to protect the materials and remains of the members of the Tsar's family, which were kept in a special chest. There were bones and fragments of the bodies. Due to the retreat of the Whites, investigator Sokolov had not managed to perform any expert examinations. He had no right to take them with him: an investigator had access to the materials only in case he was an official person. There was no more power, which had authorized him to lead the investigation, and thus, he had no authority anymore. The other participants of the investigation had no right to take the materials and remains abroad, either.

---

[1] Romanov A. The Memoirs. M.: AST, 2008. P. 361.

The only way to save the hard evidences and originals of the *investigation* documents was to hand them over to General Janin. In the middle of March, Diterikhs, Sokolov, and Gilliard handed over to Janin all the materials, having made the copies of the original documents beforehand.[1] After having taken them out of Russia, the French general had to hand them over the Grand Prince Nikolay Nikolayievich in Paris. To the surprise of all the emigres, the grand prince refused to accept the materials and remains from Janin. We shall not be surprised: let's remember that the former Commander-in-Chief of the Russian Army Grand Prince Nikolay Nikolayevich Romanov together with the other "prisoners" was safeguarded by the fantastic detachment of sailor Zadorozhny and was evacuated with the other members of the Romanov family on the British dreadnought to Europe. Those were exactly such accommodating members of the Romanov family that the "allies" saved from death.

After Romanov refused to accept the remains, Janin did not find anything better to do than to hand them over... to the former ambassador of the Provisional Government de Giers. After that, nobody has ever seen the documents and remains. Their fate is unknown. When Grand Prince Kirill Vladimirovich, who had declared himself the heir to the Russian throne, tried to find out the location of the documents and remains, he did not get any reasonable answer. Most likely, they were kept in the safes of one of the banks in Paris. Then there was information that the safes had been broached during the German occupation of Paris, and the hard evidences and documents had disappeared. Who did it and why, remains a mystery until today…

---

[1] Sokolov N. A. "The Assassination of the Tsar's Family". (http://www.russky.com/libris/history/library/sokolov.htm)

Let's move from the far-away Siberia to the northwest of Russia. Here the liquidation of the Whites was carried out not on the same large scale as it was in Siberia, but it took place a short distance from the Red Petrograd, instead. The results of the liquidation with regard to its horror and its level of treachery can compete with the tragedy of Kolchak's Army ruination.

CHAPTER 11

The Liquidation of Yudenich

> That was the fate... of the national forces, which were opposed not only the February Revolution and Lenin's Bolsheviks, but our so-called "allies" in World War 1.
>
> *Colonel M. Levitov,*
> *Commander of the 2nd regiment of Kornilov*

The pain went away for a while but only to come back and sink its teeth into his body worn out by suffering. Lieutenant Mironov tried to turn around but he couldn't. He couldn't feel his leg at all, and when he tried to change its position he felt a sharp pain. He moaned and leaned back. Nobody was surprised with moaning in this former gymnasium. It's full of wounded, and there comes more and more of them every hour. The naval ordnance of the Bolshevik battleship was doing a good job. The three-inch field guns of the Reds did their job, too, the machine guns and rifles wreaked pain and sufferings in abundance. But the hospital ran out of medications yesterday, practically right after the lieutenant found himself among the unfortunate wounded.

He was fully conscious when they brought him into the gymnasium. An injection of morphine — that was all the doctors could help him with. Still, he was lucky because it was the last dose they had at all. The next soldier with a serious chest wound hasn't got anything and was moaning loudly, lying on the floor in the far corner of the room. It actually seems that he is not even moaning anymore. He must have kicked the bucket.

The lieutenant should consider himself lucky. Yesterday, his detachment ran out the gun into position pointing it directly to the railroad track. This was the only way to drive off the Bolshevik armoured train that was shooting down the skirmish formations of the Talabsk regiment of the White North-Western Army at point-blank range.

Pointing it directly one had to have some guts. Those inside the armoured train are shielded from bullets and shells by the armour and steel sheets. Artillerists don't have any of that. Only the spotter is covered by a thin shield, but the gun-commander is defenceless. However, it was only him who stayed alive of all the others in the detachment.

The shell from the armoured train plowed up the ground near the gun, and the next shot lifted the gun itself into the air and blew all the squad to the four winds of heaven. Mironov was also lifted up by the blow and then thrown somewhere off to the side, where he landed in a puddle of squelching mud.

The lieutenant fell down on the ground but could not get up. He couldn't feel his leg. He understood at once that it was a fracture. And it looked like he was right about it. The drowsiness was softly enveiling his head, morphine started to work. And then Mironov saw that armoured train again, the train and its turret turning towards him. It had been exactly there, right under the gun barrel, where he had sent the shell of his British cannon. The new cannon that was received only two months ago. But the shell did not go off!

It was so unbelievable that he tarried in indecision for a second, but then hollered at the spotter at the top of his lungs,

— Again! Quick!

The muzzle of the Bolshevik gun was going down at a fearful rate. But it will not make it in time, no, it won't! The Bolsheviks will be wiped out — they noticed the gun too late.

Mironov felt his own shot not even through his ears, he felt it with the back of his head, with all his skin. He felt it and got stupefied. The second shell recoiled from the armoured train as if it was a pea. But it can't be possible! It's not that the armour on the train is thick, it's that the second, right, already the second British shell that didn't go off!

As if they were firing at the armoured train with some cast iron shells. They fired twice, and he did not signal to make the third shot. The shell burst caused Mironov pain even in his morphine dream. He opened his eyes. He twitched in his sleep, a sudden throb of pain shot through his leg, and he woke up.

His fever must have started to go up. Morphine stopped working but the lieutenant kept on drifting off, and it was only the pain that kept bringing him back into the dirty room of the Luzhsk gymnasium where he was lying in his dirty great-coat on the wooden floor.

He never noticed that all the doctors and nurses disappeared somewhere. Only when the door of the room opened with a loud knack and

> a group of people appeared on the doorstep, everything became clear to Mironov. He and the other badly wounded were left here, abandoned, and the whole hospital was evacuated or everyone fled. The soldiers with red service stripes on their coats and with stars on their service caps, standing in the doorway were Bolsheviks…

The German troops remained near the "cradle of three revolutions" after the Peace Treaty of Brest-Litovsk was concluded. This was the border between the old customary world and the Lenin's new Sovietdom. The real borderline ran at a distance from Pskov. It was exactly here that the anti-Bolshevik forces started to troop. However, these were not the British or the French, but the bosses of the "Bolshevik spies" — the Germans, who helped them with money and weapons. It was exactly the German command that was guarding the Don Cossacks and painstakingly creating a new monarchic Russian Army, thus preparing the "grave diggers" for its friends in the Kremlin. A special volunteer corps of Pskov was being formed very slowly starting from September 1918. Its personnel was sneaking from the Bolshevik Russia, arriving from the Baltics occupied by the Germans, and partly even returning from the German captivity. It sped up after it was joined by the cavalry regiment commanded by Captain Bulak-Balachowicz and the Chudskaya flotilla, consisting of three ships commanded by Captain 2nd rank Nelodov that had left the Red Army. On their arrival, the corps increased to 3.5 thousand men, and at the end of November it already numbered 4.5.

The German command gave to the Whites enough weapons and allocated enough money. But the German Empire collapsed two months later under the onsurge of the internal and external enemies. The German troops in Russia and the Baltics were demoralized, and the Bolshevik government, after having declared the Peace Treaty of Brest-Litovsk repudiated, ordered the Red Army to go on the offensive. After Pskov had been taken by Bolsheviks, the White Guard Corps fought its way to the territory of Estonia and a part of it retreated to the territory of Latvia.

When we talk about the events of those days, it is very important to remember the exact situation when one or another event was taking place, and not to be misguided by the stereotypes that formed in the later period. *It's essential to remember the following: when the Red Army goes on the offensive against Estonia and Latvia in November 1918, there were no independent states with that names, and they have never existed in the world's history.* The Russian Bolshevik Army moves in the direction of the former Russian provinces, which were occupied by the Germans only six months ago. Naturally, right after the collapse of the Germans, Latvia and Estonia declare their independence. There is only one problem — nobody can protect the long-awaited independence and stop the approaching Bolsheviks. While Estonia has something like the armed forces, Latvia doesn't have anything of that kind at all. These are Bolsheviks who have the Latvian Riflemen, while Latvia has none of them. The Baltic states know that they will be supported. These are Denikin and Kolchak who are not recognized by the "allies," but the Estonian and Latvian separatists have been recognized at once. The British and the French were, so to say, the "midwives" of Estonia and Latvia. Just like obstetricians should, they were damn happy about any new national formations that are painfully leaving the womb of the collapsing Russia. This will be a common rule, repeating itself again and again.

The new Estonian historiography is sly. The textbook "The History of Estonia" for secondary schools names so many defenders of the country, including even the members of the sport society "Kalev" that acted as public order volunteers, but says nothing of the Russian White Guards. The main "defender" of the Estonian independence — the British Navy — appeared in the Baltic waters. A year ago, the British did not defend the Russian Moonsund Strait from the Germans, and they were not going to cover the terrible evacuations of Denikin's troops, either. But they are happy to save the capital of Estonia from the Russians (even the Red ones). Upon the request of the Estonian government, the British Navy enthusiastically fired on the rear of the Bolshevik troops and forced them to retreat from Tallinn. Soon, in February 1919, the young Estonian Army together with the White Guards fully ousted the forces of the Red Army beyond the Estonian boundaries. But the attitude of the Estonians towards the White Guards, who had saved Estonia from the Bolsheviks, was twofold. The help of the Whites was accepted, but at the same time, they concluded an agreement according to which the number of the White Guards should have not exceeded 3.5 thousand.

Describing the liquidation of the White movement in the northwest of Russia, we can't help but mention the events in the Baltic Navy. After the Baltic Navy had been saved by Namorsy Schastny, after the persistent attempts of Bolsheviks to destroy the Navy, a short breathing spell came. The Finns were not taking any dynamic actions, the Germans were not going on the offensive, thus Trotsky did not have any actual reasons to explode his own Navy. So, the ships safely survived till Germany's collapse. After that Bolsheviks immediately went on the offensive in the Baltics, which they had given to Germany a half of the year ago. If the ships have survived, let them serve the Reds. This was the situation when comrade Trotsky decided to send the Baltic Navy at Revel (Tallinn). Who will Lev Trotsky appoint to perform this task? The person responsible for the operation will be... Feodor Raskolnikov. This choice of Trotsky is a bit unexpected but well-taken: this comrade has a great experience — five months ago he had sunk the Black Sea Navy, so he will definitely succeed this time, as well.

It was a strange operation. The leader of the operation was good only at sinking the ships and shooting down the officers; to be honest, this skill is not of the principal importance for a naval commander. The ships are not ready for this operation: Raskolnikov raises his pendant on the torpedo-boat Spartak not having even checked whether the ships of his detachment have been fuelled or not and whether the machines are in the working order. The committee of the Revvoyensoviet[1] will later find out that no navigation officers have been hired for this "expedition," let alone experienced seamen gunners who could take a good aim. In one word, a greater mess and idiocy are hard to imagine.

The plan was as follows: the torpedo-boats were to move towards Revel for reconnaissance and in case of danger they were to hurry back under the cover of the artillery guns of Andrei Pervozvanny and the cruiser Oleg. Nobody cared that these ships were no match to the power of the entire British squadron. But if this operation looked absurd on paper, it was even worse in reality. Due to the shortage of fuel, Andrei Pervozvanny left its position that was useless anyway. The end of the operation was very miserable: having run ashore, the torpedo-boat Spartak surrendered to the British. The crew of Deputy Narkom of Naval Affairs Raskolnikov managed to fire just a few ineffective shots. The ruiner of the Black Sea Navy was taken captive himself.[1] The next day, the British caught the torpedo-boat Avtroil. The ship tried to escape but then surrendered to the British having not fired a single shot. As the matter of fact, the ship came over to the enemy, i.e., to the Whites, because this was how the sailors, crammed with the Red propaganda, perceived the "allies."

---

[1] Translator's note: Revvoyensoviet — the Revolutionary Military Council of the Republic.

Now it was time for the British "oddities" to see the light. They were so remarkable that even the Red historians managed to notice them. Instead of giving the surrendered torpedo-boats over to the Whites, the British give them over... to the Estonian Navy. But this country is just one month old! Never mind! Now Estonia has its own Navy: a torpedo-boat Vambola (Spartak) and Lennuk (Avtroil).[2] Having played in a well-known Battleship game, 15 years later the Estonians will sell these ships to Peru, where they will finish their service. What is this actually? *This is a new way to destroy the Navy: now there are no Russian torpedo-boats, but there are some Estonian ones.* The British have performed four tasks: the Reds have got weakened, the Whites have not got stronger, the Estonians have their own ships, the Russian Navy has two torpedo-boats less. Quite impressive...

---

[1] This detail speaks for itself — when being in captivity, comrade Raskolnikov lived like a lord and lacked nothing. Most likely, he was converted by the British intelligence services during this period. Maybe, he just came into his own, as he had contacted them before — it was exactly him who sank the Black Sea Navy. You must agree that it's worth a lot.

[2] Graf H. On Board of "Novik". The Baltic Navy During the War And the Revolution. St. Pb.: Gangut, 1997. P. 433.

In the meantime, the situation has changed. Estonia has been liberated from the Bolsheviks, and the White Guards were staying there as some poor cousins. The Entente, which was actively supplying the Estonians with weapons and uniforms, didn't give anything to the Whites. The Whites were enviously looking at the Estonian soldiers in their brand-new clothes. After all, the idea of fighting against Bolshevism has united the White Guards, but there was no Bolshevism in Estonia any more. In order to start fighting for the liberation of their motherland the Whites had to come out to the Russian territory. They had really to break out, to seize the ammunition and provisions and to get increased in numbers. The Whites can't get anything of it as long as they are in Estonia. Major General A. Rodzianko (the relative of the 5th chairman of the State Duma), who was the head of the Northern Corps, starts to plan the offensive. Exactly at this time the name of the new military formation, under which the Whites will make it into history, the North-Western Army, came up.

"We did not receive any help from anybody. We were short of high boots and great-coats, and we were fighting to get shells and bullets from the enemy,"[1] Major-General Rodzianko writes in his "Memoirs About the North-Western Army." His soldiers went on the offensive barefoot, and the officers had on their civil coats instead of uniform ones. The picture is familiar, isn't it? The situation with the Whites is the same everywhere: with no uniforms and poorly armed the Whites go into combat actions for their motherland at ALL THE FRONTS. They have no other options, their conscience does not sanction anything else than this self-sacrificing struggle. The Whites have no reserve motherland.

The North-Western Army goes on the offensive. A terrible force is moving towards Petrograd: 4,700 bayonets, 1,100 sabres, and 11 light guns.[2] The historians persistently tell us about the Whites' offensive on Petrograd. No, this was only an attempt to save the army from its slow dissipation on the Estonian territory, nobody could even dream about the march on Petrograd. Let's face the truth: it is impossible to take a city with one and a half million citizens by the army of 6 thousand men strong. It had been possible in October 1917, but there was no chance for it in the summer of 1919, unless the citizens wanted to surrender themselves.

---

[1] Rodzianko A. The Memoirs About the North-Western Army/The White Struggle in the North-West of Russia. M.: Tsentrpoligraf, 2003. P. 213.

[2] The Civil War in Russia: The War in the North. M .: AST, Tranzitkniga; St. Pb.: Terra Fantastica, 2004. P. 182.

The offensive started at three o'clock in the morning on May 13, 1919. Bolsheviks flee without offering any resistance, they surrender in quantities. After having taken Yamburg (Kingisepp), the corps takes Volosovo and comes really close to the suburb of Petrograd — Gatchina. Nobody was expecting such a quick crash of the Red Army and the Whites did not expect it, in the first place. The army of Trotsky and Lenin was retreating under the blows of the tiny White Army. The Red Guards not only surrender en masse, but they also go over to the enemy, i.e., to the Whites. This is how the new military units are formed in the North-Western Army. The town people from Vyatka went over to the Whites, and the new Vyatsky Regiment was formed, the garrison of the Krasnaya Gorka Fort formed the Krasnogorsky Regiment. Soon, the Semyonovsky Guard Regiment goes over to the side of the patriots. Strange as it may seem, the military unit, which suppressed the Moscow uprisal in 1905, had not been disbanded by Bolsheviks but was still performing its patrol duties in Petrograd. It is sent to the front. Having approached the Whites from the rear near the town of Vuiri the regiment goes over to the White Army to the music (!), having killed its commissars first.

Neither Trotsky nor Ilyich expected such a course of events, the "allies" did not expect such a resounding success of a small group of the brave hearts, either. The military success of the Whites was so serious that urgent measures had to be taken. "Soon after the beginning of our successful actions various foreign committees started to arrive at the front one by one,"[1] Major-General A. Rodzianko notices in his "Memoirs About the North-Western Army."

---

[1] Rodzianko A. The Memoirs About the North-Western Army/The White Struggle in the North-West of Russia. M.: Tsentrpoligraf, 2003. P. 213.

The visits of the military missions of the "allies" resulted in the offensive of the 2nd Estonian Division. However, it refused to coordinate its actions with the Whites and using the demoralization of the Reds, simply took Pskov. The command of the British Navy doesn't want to contact the Whites, either. "Our relations with the British Navy were very indeterminate, — Rodzianko writes, — I have asked several times to get the communication going... but the British admiral ...did not want this communication and preferred to communicate only with the Commander of the Estonian Fleet..."[1]

The reason of such an "unsociable demeanour" of the British squadron commander will become clear in a while. In the meantime, the tiny White Army rushes to the cradle of the revolution. The prospects of success are low, their expectations are based on rush, luck, and valour. It seems\ that the Whites are really lucky. The mutinies start at the forts Krasnaya Gorka and Seraya Loshad. The garrisons of these fortresses arrest the commissars and communists. Lieutenant Nekludov leads the mutiny. He broadcasts a message to Commander of the British squadron Admiral Cowan, "Krasnaya Gorka is at your disposal."[2]

On June 13, 1919, the forts presented the ultimatum to Kronstadt and demanded that Kronstadt joined them. The answer should be given within fifteen minutes. Fifteen minutes pass, and the heavy artillery of Krasnaya Gorka opens fire against the naval base. The cannons in the mutinous forts are very powerful, the bores are as big as those on the dreadnoughts: 305 mm, 280 mm, 254 mm! The situation is getting critical for Bolsheviks: if the British Navy supports the mutinous forts, the capitulation of Kronstadt will be a done deal. In case the main naval base falls, it will be impossible to hold Petrograd.

Lenin sends Stalin to improve the situation. Stalin gives an order to move the Baltic Navy to the outer roadsteads to shoot at the forts. For the Whites to take over Petrograd the mutiny needs to be encouraged and the mutinous forts should be supported. If the ships are attacked and brought back to Kronstadt, it will be possible to seize Petrograd — the cradle of the revolution. Of course, this will demoralize the Red Army. In one word, this is a critical moment. The Bolshevik Baltic Navy is demoralized, and its fighting capacity is low. The propaganda, which has been carried out for months, has taken its toll: the sailors have got out of the fighting practice, having got used to all the meetings and gatherings. The British are well aware of that: they saw it themselves when without striking a single blow they have taken seize of two Red torpedo-boats. Such a weak enemy that even might want to surrender is in the way of the Whites on their road to victory in this battle and, maybe, in the Civil War, in general. The risk for the British is not that big. Maybe, there is no risk at all. The British forces are really impressive: eight cruisers, eight squadron torpedo-boats, five submarines, the carrier Vindictive with twelve hydroplanes onboard, and the leading ship Erebus. Its armament includes the most powerful cannons in the Baltic Sea of 381 mm!

---

[1] Rodzianko A. The Memoirs About the North-Western Army/The White Struggle in the North-West of Russia. M.: Tsentrpoligraf, 2003. P. 241.

[2] Pukhov A. The Baltic Navy in the Defence of Petrograd. The year of 1919. M.; L., Voyenmorizdat NKVMF USSR, 1939. P. 46.

Let's give word to the immediate eyewitness of the events. Let comrade Stalin tell us everything. He described it very colourfully in his radiogram to Lenin, which was sent via the direct line from Petrograd on June 18, 1919, "A serious plot has been discovered in Kronstadt. The goal of the plot is to seize the fortress, to put the Navy under the supervision of the mutineers, to open fire on our forces from the rear, and to clear the road for Rodzianko to Piter. Now I understand the impudence of Rodzianko, who was moving toward Piter with rather limited forces."[1]

And the most interesting part of Stalin's radiogram comes now, "The strange *disappearance of the British ships* exactly at the moment when the mutiny broke out at Krasnaya Gorka, is also very clear."[2] That's it! At the decisive moment, the brave "allies" moved their ships away in a very odd manner and did not provide any support to the Whites at all. The oddities and miracles start to happen again, and the draft blowing from backstage of the world politics can be felt again... Lieutenant Nekludov, the leader of the mutinies at the forts, will later write, "I sent two radiograms: one to the Russian Navy, and another one to the British ships, congratulating them on the takeover. In the radiogram to the British I added that we needed support. We have never received it."

---

[1] Stalin I. Works. V.4.M.: OGIZ. The State Publishing House of the Political literature. 1947. P. 262–264. (http://grachev62.narod.ru/stalin/t4/t4_61.htm)

[2] Ib.

But comrade Stalin would have been surprised even more if he knew that the British Navy had not only all of a sudden "disappeared," but it had also totally denuded the mutinous forts of any hope to receive help from the White Guards. The communication agents, sent by lieutenant Nekludov, safely reached the positions of the Whites within the lines of the units made of the ethnic Finns. It wasn't the White commanders that Commander of the unit Captain Topolainen informed about the mutinies in the forts, but the commanders of the British squadron. The information was concealed from the commanders of the Russian troops![1] Why?

"If the British Navy had lent us timely support, Kronstadt would have gone over to our side, — General Rodzianko writes, — after having been cannonaded from Krasnaya Gorka, three forts of Kronstadt hoisted white flags, the negotiations were underway with a part of the Navy personnel, and if the British squadron had appeared during the fire, the fate of Kronstadt and the Bolshevik Navy would have apparently been decided."[2]

However, the British admiral did not inform anybody about the mutiny! He himself did not help the forts, and he did not let the Whites do it, either. Let's be fair: Bolsheviks should have put a monument or dedicated a memorial plaque to the British General Cowan who saved the Red Petrograd or, maybe, the Soviet power in general. For obvious reasons it would be too embarrassing to put a monument or a plaque, though...

---

[1] Rodzianko A. The Memoirs About the North-Western Army/The White Struggle in the North-West of Russia. M.: Tsentrpoligraf, 2003. P. 241.

[2] Ib. P. 242.

After the British had played a sort of a give-away game with it, the Red British Navy really played a key role in the defence of Petrograd in summer 1919. The dreadnought Petropavlovsk, the battleship Andrei Pervozvanny, and the cruiser Oleg are ready to shoot at the mutinous forts point-blank. They reach an unbelievable intensity of fire sparing neither cannons nor shells. The mutinous forts snapped back but gradually turned into debris…

The history consists of dates. The events are also dates. Comparing them, we can capture the logic of what has happened.

- Bolsheviks seize the forts **on June 16, 1919**. About six thousand men go over to the Whites after having exploded their cannons.[1]
- The next day (!), right after the fall of the forts, the British Navy starts to destroy the Russian ships. **On June 17, 1919,** the British motor torpedo-boat under the command of Lieutenant Eiger sank the cruiser Oleg, which had been firing at the mutinous forts for four days! Not earlier and not later. If the British torpedo hurries up to the target too much, Bolsheviks might not be able to take over Krasnaya Gorka, and if they waited longer, the Red Squadron might go back to Kronstadt. The British were standing and waiting, watching the mutiny being suppressed. It was only after having made sure that the mutiny had been suppressed that they sent the Bolshevik cruiser to the bottom.[2]

Now it started to look as if the British have changed completely. Having provided no support to Yudenich, the British develop a frenetic activity in their attempts to sink the rest of the Baltic Navy. Even before the mutiny in the forts the British ships made several attempts to make the Russian ships go out into the Koporye Bay and have them attacked by their submarines. The first attempts of the British to sink some of the Russian ships tuned out all wrong. On

---

[1] Pukhov A. The Baltic Navy in the Defence of Petrograd. Year 1919. M.; L., Voyenmorizdat NKVMF USSR, 1939. PP. 47–53.

[2] The book from Stalin's time reads directly, "The sinking of the cruiser Oleg was nothing less than a counterrevolutionary act of wrecking committed by Commander Eiger, who was the agent of the oldest and the shrewdest intelligence services in the capitalist world". (Ib.)

June 17, 1919, the torpedo-boats Azard and Gavriil sank the British submarine L-55. Now the British take revenge by destroying the cruiser Oleg. But they won't calm down after that.

Who do you think were the first pilots to make an air attack on the territory of Petersburg — Petrograd — Leningrad within its present boundaries? German aircrafts are the first to come to mind, but those were exactly the British who have stolen the palm of victory from them. *On June 18, 1919, a group of the British aircrafts based in the Finnish territory dropped bombs on Kronstadt.* This day started a sad statistics of St. Petersburg bombings. Starting from this day, the air raids over Petrograd have become regular: on July 29, 30, and 31 the city was bombed, from August 1 till August 13 the city was subject to air raids of the British almost every day. As a result, Kronstadt was set on fire from all the four sides on August 3, 1919. The British pilots are not less punctual than the German ones. All the air raids are carried out in the morning and in the evening, as if according to a schedule. The efficiency of these air raids is very low, but the aircraft casualty rate is not high, either. For the first time, the anti-aircraft artillery in Kronstadt managed to shoot down an enemy's aircraft only three months after the air raids had started.

On August 18, 1919, the British decide to attack Kronstadt in a different way. The bombings should sidetrack the attention, and eight British motor torpedo-boats under Commander 2nd rank Captain Dobson had to destroy the main ships of the Baltic Navy at night right in the harbour. The motor torpedo-boats manage to go through the mine-barrier (the British intelligence services are at their best here again!) where they are not expected to pass. The attack resulted in serious damaging of the battle ship Andrei Pervozvanny and sinking of the depot ship Pamjat Azova.[1] The main target of the British — the dreadnoughts — remained intact. Three British motor boats are destroyed by return fire. The casualties of the Bolsheviks are one commissar and one sailor. The casualties of the British are 15 people killed and 9 sailors taken captive.

---

[1] Graf H. On Board of "Novik". The Baltic Navy During the War And the Revolution. St. Pb.: Gangut, 1997. P. 434. ((htpp://militera.lib.ru/memo/russian/graf_gk/25html)

Let's return to the tiny North-Western Army. After due to the fault of the British it had lost its operative chance with regard to the mutinous forts, it becomes more obvious that the army is not ready for an offensive on a large scale; there is shortage officers, because many officers, moreover the best ones, have been killed or wounded. There are no officers to command the new accession. There are many officers in Finland who are eager to join the army, but the British do not react to their request regarding being transported to the North-Western Army. A few officers cross the Gulf of Finland in fish boats at their own risk. The "allies" are not helping them, and thousands of officers stay in Finland.[1]

At the same time, the Whites run out of ammunition. The "allied" missions, which had visited the army, promised them to help with it. They also informed that all the deliveries would be arranged via Yudenich, who in June 1919 had been appointed the commander-in-chief of the Russian troops by the order of Admiral Kolchak. And at this point "*just by chance*" the independent proud Estonian troops, which had earlier refused to cooperate, started to retreat without having given any notice. "Their retreat was caused not by strategic, but by political reasons," a Soviet collection "The Civil War 1918–1920" tells us. "The Estonian government feared the power rise in the North-Western Army with its slogan 'United and Indivisible'."[2]

Having got an exposed ground flank, the Whites first stopped their movement and then retreated, as well. As soon as the retreat started, the British steamers appeared. "Exactly at the moment when the retreat started the ships with the armoured fighting vehicles and ammunition… arrived in Revel,"[3] Rodzianko writes. The historians would say it was just a coincidence. We would say it was just the British policy aiming at the liquidation of Russia and its natural consequences. Isn't it obvious that the British help always arrives too late?

---

[1] Rodzianko A. The Memoirs About the North-Western Army/The White Struggle in the North-West of Russia. M.: Tsentrpoligraf, 2003. P. 247.

[2] Kakurin N., Vatsetis I. The Civil War 1918–1921. St. Pb.: Poligon, 2002. P. 183.

[3] Rodzianko A. The Memoirs About the North-Western Army/The White Struggle in the North-West of Russia. M.: Tsentrpoligraf, 2003. P. 272.

As a result of its retreat, by the end of August, the North-Western Army had control over a smaller base area (120 km in width and 20 km in depth) around the town of Gdov. The army, tired but having grown several-fold was resting and reshaping its forces. The "allies," however, had quite different plans with regard to it. After Kolchak and Denikin, the army under Yudenich had to go on its perilous offensive. The tiny army should move towards the cradle of the revolution — Petrograd. They were made to carry on this attack. It was forced and imposed by the "allies." By September, Yudenich had 18,500 bayonets and sabres, 57 artillery guns, 6 armoured fighting vehicles, 4 armoured trains. The Reds had 26,650 fighters, 148 artillery guns, and a lot of reserves, which could be sent from Moscow.[1] To go on the offensive against a million-plus city is a real madness for the Whites, and Yudenich does not want to do it. He already knows the worth of the promises given by the "allies" and of the Estonian support. But the British press him *so much* that he had nothing else do. The war should be finished at this front, too.

The offensive of Yudenich can't end successfully. His enemies understand it as perfectly as he does. The book "The Civil War 1918–1921" has been written by the best Bolshevik military leaders, including Egorov, Tukhachevsky, Eideman, and Vatsetis. Almost all of them will be liquidated during the Stalinist purge. But before that they wrote and published a book about the history of the Russian strife. In it the Red military leaders will express their point of view, "The offensive of the North-Western Army, *being a gesture of true despair on the part of the enemy,* could not develop into a big military operation due to the utmost disparity of the forces of the combatants."[2]

In September 1919, General Rodzianko, who commanded the army during Yudenich's absence, notices some odd things, "Almost every day the officers from the British mission visited my headquarters and *demanded on behalf of General March that the army immediately went on the offensive.* Wishing to complete the reforming of the army, I was in all the possible ways postponing the beginning of the active actions, but *the British, getting more and more persistent,* promised to seriously support us with their Navy by taking over the fort Krasnaya Gorka and Kronstadt during our moving forward."[1]

---

[1] Kakurin N., Vatsetis I. The Civil War 1918–1921. St. Pb.: Poligon, 2002. P. 186.

[2] Ib. P. 190.

We can understand why the British were so insistent: the decision was taken long ago and the liquidation of the White movement goes at full speed. Kolchak and Denikin have rushed into their last attacks, while the inaction of the North-Western Army is spoiling the nice picture. The pressure on Yudenich is increasing: the British practically guarantee that the Estonians and the Latvians will move forward and that the British Navy will not remain a mere observer. And the most important detail: the Estonian government "all of a sudden" agrees to Lenin's proposal to start the negotiations. Thus, Yudenich does not have any protected rear and all the supplies can be delivered only via the Estonian territory. If the Estonians conclude a peace treaty with Lenin, the Whites will be put on the edge of the abyss. The British let Yudenich understand that the only way to wreck the negotiations is to take the Red Petrograd. Besides the "fear," the "allies" can also use their usual "patronage" — the supplies. To lift the spirit of the White Guards, who have become depressed, the new uniforms are given to them the day before the offensive.

Being so strongly blackmailed, the Whites have no choice. On September 28, 1919, Yudenich goes all in. The flanks are exposed, the attacking Whites have less forces and artillery than the defending Reds. This can't even be called a military operation, it's a raid. The focus is on the suddenness and speediness of the impact. The day before the offensive the British transport with the ammunition arrives. But what the ammunition it was!!!

The famous Russian writer Aleksandr Kuprin has visited the army. In his moving story "The Dome of St. Isaac of Dalmatia," he describes the terrible picture of the British "help," "The British have promised weapons, shells, uniforms, and provisions. They'd better not have promised anything! The rifles which they had sent could not be used for more than three shots, as after the forth one the bullet got stuck in the rifle and could be removed only in a workshop."[1]

---

[1] Rodzianko A. The Memoirs About the North –Western Army/The White Struggle in the North-West of Russia. M.: Tsentrpoligraf, 2003. P. 278.

Isn't it not too pleasant and easy for a regiment to go into the offensive with the rifles which can shoot four times only and after that, as if at a command, they stop shooting and turn into the clubs with bayonets. If a batch of such weapons was delivered to the army during Stalin's time, the management of the weapon factory would be shot. In 1919, this fact is only called a mistake of the "allies"...

The armoured fighting vehicles are not any better. The Whites jokingly called them the pilot models from the times of Philip I of Macedon. The great Russian writer Kuprin bitterly states, "The British sent us the airplanes with the wrong propellers, the machine gun belts did not match the machine guns, and the shells and shrapnel did not match the cannons."[2]

The British artillery shells... would not explode! Kuprin writes about this, as well. In a conversation with the writer, Captain G. tells him about the armoured train "Lenin" which has caused a lot of trouble to the Whites. They could never knock it out, the armoured train was simply invulnerable. "I have to say, — Captain G. tells Kuprin, — that to a certain extent it was the fault of our shells. Most of them did not explode at all. Our immediate calculation was that nineteen shells out of one hundred exploded. And this was not all... They sent us good cannons, but all of them were without locks. 'Where are the locks?' we asked. And it appeared that they had 'forgotten' a bout the locks...

— Who was the one who sent the cannons and the shells? — I asked.

G. hesitated before he answered.

— I shouldn't ... I'll tell you in secret...The British did."[3]

---

[1] Kuprin A. The Dome of St. Isaac of Dalmatia. M.: Veche, 2007. P. 81.

[2] Ib. P. 82.

[3] Ib. P. 56

The supply of the army can guarantee fifty per cent of the victory. The army of Yudenich went into combat with the rifles that couldn't shoot, with six antique tanks, they had to use shells which would not explode. The airplanes which could not get off the ground were standing in the airfields. And with all this junk the Whites went into the offensive against the enemy, which manifold surpassed them in the militant force. They were fighting, sacrificing themselves, dying. One's hairs stand on end because of such impudent, open, and cynical treachery of the "allies."

But Kuprin doesn't stop here, "Once they sent us thirty-six packages by sea. Inside there was fencing gear: fencing foils, plastrons, masks, and gloves. When we asked the British, they answered with faint smiles that it was due to the fault of the socialist workers, who allegedly did not let pack the military materials that threatened their brothers — Bolsheviks."[1]

This is not an anecdote, this is a quote from the book by Kuprin! The ship arrives in the heat of the offensive: it carries bullets of wrong calibre, rifles which can't shoot, shells which don't explode. And in addition to this, there are fencing foils, plastrons, masks, and gloves. Everything necessary for fencing. The "allies" even smile – everything will be OK, the fencing gear will be replaced, don't worry. The ammunition will arrive with the next ship. In the meantime, for a couple of weeks you have to go into attack with fencing foils. With plastrons and masks on. When the ship finally arrives, the army of Yudenich will not exist anymore.

May the Russian heroes rest in peace — eternal shame on those who betrayed them. This is a lesson for all of us forever. Any Russian strife will always be welcomed by our "partners" with enthusiasm. It's exactly them who will always try to provoke it artificially; it's exactly them who will give money to any rascal or adventurer for the sake of the "noble matter" of our country's destruction. People, beware!

Very little would have been enough for the Whites to succeed: a last effort, a little help, some fresh troops. They did not receive any of these thanks to the British. But the Bolshevik leaders were in panic. On October 16, 1919, the Head of the Petrograd Soviet Zinoviev issued an appeal to "the Red Guards and Commanders." This is not a piece of prop, this is all the truth about the Civil War, expressed in a few words, "Get over yourself! Who are you retreating from? The White bands do not have any serious forces. They are fifty times smaller, than the number of your forces. The Whites do not have any artillery. The Whites do not have any rear. The Whites do not have troops, they do not have armoured trains. The notorious tanks of the Whites exist only in the imagination of the fools. The White bands only bluff and scare you..."[1]

---

[1] Kuprin A. The Dome of St. Isaac of Dalmatia. M.: Veche, 2007. P. 82.

Nothing can be added to this. The next day, Lenin followed Zinoviev's appeal and addressed the Red Guards, "Comrades! The fate of Petrograd is at stake. The enemy tries to take us by surprise. It has insignificant weak forces, its strength lies in quickness and impudence of its officers...,"[2] Lenin knows that the British will not help the Whites. Only the all too naive and credulous White generals could count on the British. This is what N. Kornatovsky writes in his "Struggle for the Red Petrograd", "The hope of General Yudenich N. for a timely and serious help of the British squadron from the sea was the result of his naive blind confidence."[3]

"During our second offensive I would not get communication with the British Navy despite all my efforts," General Rodzianko almost repeats the words of Kornatovsky. "The Navy did not take any serious actions against Kronstadt despite the promises they had given."[4] The Estonian troops and the British Navy were to cover the left flank of Yudenich's army from the sea. The plot concerning the forts is being concocted again. Upon the demand of the British, the White troops should move further away from the mutinous forts.

---

[1] Kornatovsky N. The Struggle for The Red Petrograd. M.: AST, 2004. P. 335.

[2] Ib. P. 333.

[3] Ib. P. 574.

[4] Rodzianko A. The Memoirs About the North –Western Army/The White Struggle in the North-West of Russia. M.: Tsentrpoligraf, 2003. P. 314.

This demand is not made by chance. According to the reconnaissance data, the mindset of the Bolshevik troops at Krasnaya Gorka is again unstable, and they might go over to the Whites again. As it was during the first offensive, it would, as the matter of fact, mean the victory of the Whites. That's why the Whites should not be allowed to the forts. The Estonians decided to undertake the negotiations themselves. But, as you can guess, they have never started any negotiations. As a result, Bolsheviks have kept this strategically important base on the coast of the Gulf of Finland. And it played a decisive role in the battle. It was exactly the landing of the Bolshevik sailors here, where *due to some reasons* there were no Estonian troops, that brought the White offensive to a halt. *Due to some reasons,* when needed there was no British Navy in the gulf, either. The huge cannons of the Baltic Navy were easily smashing the White infantry.

"Everything looked so promising, and we discussed our plans on what would happen when Petrograd was liberated...," one of the officers of Yudenich's Army wrote in his memoirs. Everything was ready for the offensive against Petrograd at dawn on October 22. At night on October 21/22 the message received from the headquarters informed us that the left flank of the army had been cracked because the Estonian troops had exposed it, and the sailors from the landing at Krasnaya Gorka had delivered a blow on the flank to conduct the offensive. There were no British cruisers nearby to help us from the sea."[1]

The British squadron was at that time near Riga, firing at... the Russian-German White army under the command of Bermond. This unit, well-armed and well-equipped by Germany, consisted of ten thousand Russians and forty thousand Germans. This strange ethnic composition was caused by the defeat of both empires in the World War. A great number of German soldiers entered this volunteer army due to the chaos, which had been brought about by Germany's defeat. The ethnic Germans from Czechoslovakia and Hungary, which were swept by the independence zeal, and those from Alsace-Lorraine taken by France, all lost their motherland at once. By fighting against Bolsheviks they hoped to find a new motherland on the territory of Russia. Upon the agreement with Yudenich, the units of Bermond's Army were to attack Petrograd together with the North-Western Army.

---

[1] http://www.russkoeradio.fm/forum/archive/index.php/t-1452html

You have to admit that the nationality of the liberators from the Red oppression does not matter much. There are Germans, Latvians, Estonians, Chinese, and Hungarians fighting in the Red Army. Forty thousand trained German soldiers who have nothing to lose are a strong force in the struggle against the undisciplined Red Army. *Exactly due to this fact, the Entente demands to remove all the Germans from Bermond's Army and only after this his army will be permitted to pass to the anti-Bolshevik frontline.* Yudenich, who is totally dependent on the British, gives Bermond the same order. Bermond refuses: the Germans make 80% of his army. Then the Latvian authorities, which follow the instructions from London, refuse to let Bermond's Army approach Petrograd. He tries to fight his way through — and the military clash starts. The British Navy fast and pitiless crushes the White forces by the fire of the naval guns. The firing is so intense that according to the eyewitnesses the area is "boiling" with bursts. Bermond's Army is crushed, its remains evacuate to Germany. Fifty thousand experienced soldiers, longing to fight against Bolsheviks, will never be able to do it. Let's remember that there are less than twenty thousand soldiers in the North-Western Army which has nearly taken Petrograd. Let's think who gained of killing Bermond's soldiers by the fire of the naval guns...

For comparison mind that during the offensive of Yudenich it happened only once that the British were shooting at Bolsheviks. Let us quote Kuprin again, "The British, who promised to support the movement of the Whites towards Petrograd by their Navy, are silent and only at the last moment, when Bolsheviks, manifoldly exceeding the Whites, put pressure on the White Army and envelop it, when it is ready to retreat, the British monitor appears in front of the fort Krasnaya Gorka and fires some projectiles from such a far distance that they can't inflict harm on anybody or anything."

It happened on October 27, when the Red Army units started to put pressure on the Whites on the eastern shore of Koporye Bay. This single case will be later demonstrated by the British and the Soviet historians as the evidence of the British support of Yudenich. In reality, this episode turned out to be comical. An unexpected shooting with the huge projectiles has disarrayed the Red Guards who were not used to it. They simply fled in panic. But as soon as they found out *that it was the British monitor, which was firing its 15 inch guns*, all the panic stopped...," Kornatovsky N. writes in his book "The Struggle For The Red Petrograd." The Red soldiers know that the British are not at war with them. If the British ship fires, there is nothing to be afraid of. It's a totally different story when the Whites fire with huge shells: then lookout and run for your lives!

But this panic would have been very appropriate. Because it was on October 21 that the Whites were stopped at the Pulkovo Heights. Again as it was during the first march on Petrograd, the Whites ran out of shells and had no reserves. Treachery again! One treachery after another! *Those six British tanks which were moving together with the Whites in the direction of Petrograd did not get into action in the critical moment.* General Rodzianko also tells about this episode of the march, which is seldom mentioned, "The refusal of Colonel Carson to send to the Pulkovo Heights the tanks, which were at a distance of 5 versts from these positions, prevented us from taking the heights."

The situation is critical. This time — for the Whites. The Bolsheviks, having disrupted the attacks of Denikin, move here many troops from the Moscow Front. The White Army tries to hold its positions in Petrograd's suburbs. The Reds are pressing and the Whites are short of bullets and shells. This situation repeats itself in every decisive moment of the Civil War. Did you notice that the Whites run out of ammunition on the threshold of Moscow and twelve kilometres away from Petrograd? Why is it so? Because these are the "allies" who are responsible for the supplies of bullets and shells. Thus, the Whites have to fight off the attacks of the Red cadets and sailors being armed only with false promises...

On October 25, 1919, the French inform that a ship for Yudenich departed the day before from the port of Brest. It has fifty eight guns, one thousand machine guns, ten armoured fighting vehicles, and much more on board. Next day, on October 26, the French again inform about this ship. Truly speaking, the ship has not yet left the harbour, but it will definitely depart tomorrow. This is an impudent lie — the ship will never come to the Baltic. As well as the French military ships which are promised by the French "interventionists" to Boris Savenkov.

Another tragic page in the history of the Baltic Navy. On October 21, 1919, four squadron torpedo-boats Gavriil, Svoboda, Konstantin, and Azard go into the sea in order to put the mine barrier in the Koporye Bay. This is an official order of the Red Command. The real goal is different. In the middle of October, a group of the naval officers contacted the Russian reconnaissance centre in Vyborg and informed that they would like to give four torpedo-boats over to the Whites. They asked to inform the British sailors about the exact time when the British ships would go into the sea and about their route, as well as to request them not to prevent the torpedo-boats from going into the sea. At the same time, they were asked to locate a British monitor with its powerful naval artillery in the narrow passage of the mine barrier to meet the torpedo-boats on their way back. Then the torpedo-boats would not have any way out, and the officers would easily persuade the sailors to surrender.

This was the plan which had, of course, been approved by the British. At night, the torpedo-boats put out to sea. The light from the spotlight of one of the British ships, which was showing the route for the ships, was the signal for the officers-conspirators that everything was going according to the plan. When the torpedo-boats saw the signal, they followed the intended track. They boldly move forward. The seamen have the maps of the mine barriers and know exactly where the passage is. And then... *Then all the torpedo-boats except Azard exploded in that part of the mine barrier which should have had no mines!*[1] Even though they have received a signal from the British that everything was going according to the plan. On the way back, the crew of the torpedo-boat which had escaped the explosion saw "a jet of flame from the smokestack of an unknown ship." The British were nearby.

---

[1] Graf H. On Board of "Novik". The Baltic Navy During the War And the Revolution. St. Pb.: Gangut, 1997. P. 435. ((htpp://militera.lib.ru/memo/russian/graf_gk/25html)

The Bolshevik committee, which had been created to investigate the causes of the ships' explosion, was astonished by the carelessness of the crews of the torpedo-boats, which calmly sailed towards the mines, having the detailed maps of the mine barriers. To tell the truth was not in the best interests of Trotsky and Lenin, that's why after having concluded that the loss of the torpedo-boats was "an inevitable consequence of the war," Bolsheviks hurried to bury the fallen officers and soldiers in a big mass grave. The information concerning the plot of the officers was concealed for a certain time, but in 1929 it was openly published in the Soviet books. The Red historians considered the behaviour of the British to be a mere accident. "Only an *accidental* loss of three torpedo-boats, obviously not foreseen by the British themselves, made it impossible to capture them,"[1] Kornatovsky N. writes in his book "The Struggle for the Red Petrograd." But this was not an accident: the British, knowing the exact route of the torpedo-boats, have deliberately mined it. Then they lighted the route up by a spotlight and after that they calmly watched the Russian ships being destroyed.

Let's pay attention to the dates: October 21, 1919. On this day:

- the Whites were stopped at the Pulkovo Heights, because the **British** tanks refused to carry out an attack;
- three torpedo-boats, which were going to surrender, exploded on the **British** mines;
- at night, the left flank of the White Army was broken through and the landing of the sailors was carried out, because the Estonian troops (the stooges of the **British**) retreated due to the reasons unknown.

Of course, all these are *coincidences*. But in the end, everything turned out as the "allies" planned. The Whites started to retreat, and very soon their retreat turned into a flight. The cause of the flight is very simple: the catastrophe caused by the retreat of the Estonian troops from the front could be stopped, and the Whites could override a flank blow of the Reds. But they needed ammunition, a lot of ammunition. And exactly at this moment, Estonia *unexpectedly* closed its border, thus preventing the supplying and refilling of the army. The railway barrier was put down. By November 14, 1919, Yudenich was completely defeated, and his Army approached the Estonian border, where it was interned.

---

[1] Kornatovsky N. The Struggle for The Red Petrograd. M.: AST, 2004. P. 326

You can read this in the history textbooks. A terrible truth is hidden behind the resonant foreign word "internment." The Estonian government practically killed the fighters of the North-Western Army and many civil refugees, and their death was horrible. As it was with the Romanians, the actions of the Estonians can't be considered to be independent. Behind the ruiners of the Russian White Guards in Tallinn there were the orchestrators of the Russian catastrophe from the British and the French intelligence services! Judging the "strange" actions of the Estonians, we have always to remember who was suggesting the decisions leading the Russians into such a horror to the "independent" Estonian government.

"The attitude of the British towards our army when we approached the Estonian borders had the most harmful consequences: if they insisted, the Estonians could have let our army the opportunity to either find the way out and continue the struggle or to the army's smooth disarming,"[1] General Rodzianko complains in his memoirs.

The military units of the White Guards and the civil refugees were holding off the Estonian territory. "The defeated, totally demoralized Whites were thrown back to the Estonian border," Lev Trotsky writes in his book "My life." "As soon as they have passed the border, the government of Estonia disarmed them. Nobody has remembered about them either in London or in Paris. The units which were yesterday the North-Western Army of the Entente were dying of cold and starvation."

---

[1] Rodzianko A. The Memoirs About the North-Western Army/The White Struggle in the North-West of Russia. M.: Tsentrpoligraf, 2003. P. 314.

During several nights, the people were sleeping directly on the ground in fierce cold. "The Estonians don't let the Russian troops beyond the barbed wire entanglement. People froze to death en masse during that night,"[1] Kuprin writes. The soldiers and officers manage to survive somehow, these are mainly women and children that freeze to death. "A great many people froze to death, many people died of emaciation."[2] Finally, the Estonians let the people pass across the border. They let small groups pass across the border through the barbed wire. All the guns are confiscated, but this is not all. The Estonian soldiers undress the Russians in the severe frost, take their new greatcoats produced by the British, strip them of all the valuable things, golden crosses, and rings.[3] After that the Russians get accommodated at the railway station Narva-2 in the factory premises, which stand empty. There is a barbed wire entanglement around the buildings. This is quite normal, because the factories are in fact the concentration camps. The conditions in these Estonian camps are even worse than in the concentration camps of the Nazis: there are no beds, no blankets, no warm clothes. There are no medications, there is nothing. Next to the camp thousands of carriages with the belongings of the perishing Russian Army are standing on the railway tracks. They are full of the things the people in the camp need, but Commander of the Estonian Army General Laidoner has ordered to confiscate the troop trains with all the stuff in them in favour of Estonia. "The refugees from Petrograd government (their number was above 10 thousand) were treated in the worst possible way. They were forced to lie on the railway sleepers for days in the ringing frost," the eyewitness wrote about the horror, which was taking place in Estonia.

Yudenich protests are unfruitful: his army is doomed by the "allies." The Talabsky Regiment of the White Guard, fighting with the attacking Reds, was the last one to come to the Estonian border.

---

[1] Kuprin A. The Dome of St. Isaac of Dalmatia. M.: Veche, 2007. P. 84.

[2] Kornatovsky N. The Struggle For The Red Petrograd. M.: AST, 2004. P. 529.

[3] Ib. P. 528–529.

The soldiers and officers went to the Estonian territory over ice and laid down their arms, as agreed. But they were not allowed to enter Estonia and under the threat of machine gun fire they were forced back. Bolsheviks were already on the other side of the Lake Pihkva. Almost the whole regiment fell under fire...

The fate of the other "lucky fellows" who ended up in Estonia was not much better. The epidemics of the typhus fever burst out in the Estonian concentration camps. Thousands of people died with it. 700–900 people of a regiment were sick, whereas only 100–150 were not; about ten thousand sick people were never sent to hospital, and the total number of people infected with the typhus fever was about 14 thousand.[1] No help at all was provided by the Estonian authorities. There was no linen, there were no medications. The Russians were forbidden to visit bath-houses. Only when the typhus fever spread beyond the barracks of the White Guards, the authorities started to take measures. The elementary hygiene products were delivered, and... the common graves appeared. "When the order was given to clean the barracks and hospitals of the corpses, they were put on the carts in several layers, covered with hay, transported outside the town and thrown on the so-called "field of corpses,"[2] "The Struggle For The Red Petrograd" tell us.

Just like in Auschwitz and Dachau! May this be the reason why our anti-fascist monuments are so unpopular in Estonia today? There is no answer to this question...

The "human rights advocates" of that time were silent as the "fighters for freedom" are today. No angry voices of those who were struggling for the "human rights" were heard. Who cares about the Russians when a strong process of the national states formation is on? Had these acts of atrocities happened to the Polish or the Estonians, there would have been a reason to feel indignant. The genocide of the Russians, moreover the ones who had been fighting to save their motherland, was not worth any attention or anxiety.

---

[1] Kornatovsky N. The Struggle For The Red Petrograd. M.: AST, 2004. P. 546.

[2] Ib.

We see the same situation, the same policy of double standards of the western states today.

This was how Estonia met those who had helped to liberate it from Bolsheviks. In March 1920, Yudenich made the last attempt to save his people. He asked the "allies" to relocate his Army to the Southern Front, to Denikin. Only the British have enough ships for that. They agree to help but not for free. The suggested price was 800 thousand pounds of sterling.[1] Yudenich does not have this fabulous sum, and the "allies" won't do anything free of charge. They deliberately suggest an unreasonable amount in order not to let (God forbid that!) Yudenich's Army reinforce the armies of Denikin and Wrangel. The "allies" would rather relocate the White Guards to the mass graves...

Till the end of February 1920, the army has been totally disbanded. About 15 thousand of Russians recovered from the typhus fever. They are ragged, exhausted, and unemployed. But the outrages and extermination of the fighters for Russia who had stayed alive were not over yet. On March 2, 1920, the Estonian Constituent Assembly adopted a law regarding the compulsory two-month-long forest works for all the men from eighteen to fifty years, who did not have a permanent job.[2] *The total number of those conscribed for these works was again "by an accidental coincidence" fifteen thousand men! This means, the new law referred to the White Guards only.* As the matter of fact, the Estonian government has sentenced them for hard labour.

When they say that tree felling was invented by the commandants of Stalin's GULAG,[3] let's remember where the Estonians sent the Russian soldiers and officers long before the reprisals of the personality cult of Stalin. A total outrage: no regulations of the salaries and the rate of production exist, and the military are not good at felling trees. They earn ten Estonian marks per day, and provisions for one person cost fifty Estonian marks. "The conscribed for the forest works were suffering of a continuous hunger, and their clothes were fast wearing out," "The Struggle For The Red Petrograd" reads. "The accommodation and sanitary conditions were terrible. The barracks were dirty, cold, wet, and there were a lot of parasitic insects in them. They could take a bath very seldom, laundry and soap were the things they could only dream about."[1]

---

[1] Kornatovsky N. The Struggle For The Red Petrograd. M.: AST, 2004. P. 546.

[2] Ib. P. 560.

[3] Translator's note: The GULAG — the Main Camp Administration, the government agency that administered and controlled the Soviet forced-labour camp system during Joseph Stalin's rule from the 1930s up until the 1950s.

Estonia itself, however, is ready to reap its rewards. For its assistance in the treachery of the Russian patriots Estonia will get a large sum of money. Great Britain and France will press their "friends" Bolsheviks, and Bolsheviks will be pleased to sign a peace agreement between the Soviet Russia and Estonia on February 2, 1920, in Tartu. The treachery is generously awarded: Estonia has got the Western Ingermanland, including Ivangorod and Pechory. It makes about one thousand square kilometres of the Russian territory! Having given the Russian land to Estonia, Bolsheviks pay a sort of a smart money — fifteen million rubles in gold! *The Estonians will have money to build the independent Estonia*!

Whatever you casts a glance at, you see the same. Treachery, liquidation, extermination. However, the struggle against Bolsheviks, suppressed in the northwest of Russia, went on in the south of Russia. The last powerful stronghold of the Whites was the Crimean Peninsula. It's exactly here that Baron Wrangel could show his talents in full. He was the only White general who didn't entrust the British with the evacuation of his soldiers, and that was why his Army did not end as horrible as Yudenich's soldiers. But it was not able win, either...

---

[1] Kornatovsky N. The Struggle For The Red Petrograd. M.: AST, 2004. P. 561.

CHAPTER 12

The Liquidation of Wrangel

> Even if the robe of a white warrior is not always as white as the mountain snow, hallowed be his memory forever.
>
> *I. Bunin*

Pyotr Nikolayevich Wrangel was looking at the Crimean coast. He stood studying all these shingle beaches so thoroughly, noting every little bush and every little hill, as if he wanted to record them in his memory. This is the last part of the Russian land. This is the last Russian land which Wrangel will see in his life. Deep down, he did not even hope to see Russia again. To see his motherland again would mean to gain victory, which was absolutely impossible in his situation. Wrangel lost his faith in victory about a half a year ago or, maybe, even more. He did not believe in it, but he continued to fight and was ready to sacrifice his life to liberate Russia from Bolsheviks. In order to die tranquilly, having uprightly looked in the eyes of his children, and, lying in the coffin, to clearly realize at his last breath that he has given all he could to Russia. He struggled, he fought for it, and it's not his fault that the struggle ended in defeat, not in victory!

Still, when he was planning the evacuation, Wrangel decided that he would leave the Crimea with the last of his soldiers. It was late in the evening, when the last pickets of junkers were drawn up in the square. The first defenders of Russia, who sprang first to struggle the Red menace, they were now the last ones.

— Long life, Messers! I thank you for your decent service! — Wrangel greeted the fighters with his bright voice, without a scintilla of doubt in it.

— God, — he thought, — where am I leading these boys to? What is waiting us there? I do not have answers to any of the questions!

He thought this, but he told them something different.

— Left alone by the whole world, the battle-bled White Army, which was fighting not only for the sake of Russia, but for the sake of the whole world, is leaving its dear land. We go to a strange land, but not as beggars with our hands outstretched — we go with our heads up, with the feeling of our duties consciously fulfilled. We have a right to require help from those whom we have made so many sacrifices for, from those who are obliged to these sacrifices for their freedom and even their lives…

The pickets have got aboard. Wrangel himself sailed on a motorboat to the cruiser General Kornilov, where his flag flew up. "Hurrah!" was heard from all the ships, which were sailing by. One ship after another, being fully packed, was paying a tribute to their leader with this rich Russian cry. All the ships which were able to remain afloat have left the shores of the Crimea. This was the only way for them to have taken those who did not want to stay under the Bolshevik power. And this was after Wrangel had issued an order which permitted whoever wished it to stay in the Crimea! Nobody was forced to leave, everyone could make their choice. Another order of the commander-in-chief forbade to destroy bridges, factories, equipment, and the abandoned property. All of it was Russian, all this was Russia. Even though the Red one…

The last people, who Pyotr Wrangel saw on the Russian land, was a group of the representatives of Sevastopol's town administration.

— You are right, Your Excellency, you can go with your head up, with the feeling of your duties consciously fulfilled. May we wish you a happy journey.

The Baron shook hands with them and thanked them…

This was only yesterday, one can even say today. But it seemed to be in a different life.

— We must fight as long as we have forces for that, — Wrangel thought, slowly looking around the Crimean shore, which was disappearing in the haze. — It seems that we do not have any forces left, though.

The last half a year when he was leading the White movement suddenly flashed across in his mind as one day. The rebuilding of the army, the new hopes, the treachery and guile of the "allies" — all this has blended into the colours of one big picture. And the defeat, as well — most likely, the ultimate one.

The cruiser General Kornilov was rapidly gathering way. It was getting too cold to stay on the deck. Wrangel looked at the St. Andrew's flag, which was fluttering in the wind, and took a step into the corridor leading to his cabin. The future is dark, and it's better not dip into it. Nobody knows what will happen further. In the meantime, he had to write an official letter to the French representative in order to save 145,693 refugees he had onboard of his ships,

"...I consider these ships to be a security of the expenses which France has already born or will bear in connection with the first help needed, due to the circumstances of the current period."

He, General Wrangel, has impawned the Russian battleships. It's incredible and unheard of, but the course of events did not leave him any other way out. The "allies" approved the evacuation of the people and confirmed their readiness to accept them first after he had assured them about impawning the ships.

It was getting dark. The starts were glittering in the dark sky, the sea was sparkling. The solitary lights of the dear coast were becoming dim and dying out. Now the last one has died out, too...

The liquidation of the White movement seemed to be over by winter 1920. The Armies of Kolchak and Yudenich are crashed, General Miller's formation in the north of Russia is destroyed. The remains of Denikin's Army in the Crimea are disarmed and demoralized after the evacuations, "masterfully" arranged by the British. At this moment of the Russian strife, General Wrangel appeared on the stage. Denikin retired from his responsibilities of the commander-in-chief of the White Army and handed them over to Wrangel. Had it happened earlier, the Russian history would have developed in a different direction. Because Baron Wrangel might have been the only leader of the White movement who did not cherish any illusions with regard to the "allies." The history has not given him any chance for success in his situation. He tried to use the available resources to 200%. To the astonishment of the Entente countries, the White fight in the Crimea went on...

In the last days of Denikin's command, the British government came forward with a "peace initiative." In fact, it was pure blackmailing. The British suggested that "the Soviet government should be addressed with regard to amnesty." If the White military commanders again rejected holding the negotiations with the ruiners of the motherland, the British government would disclaim all the responsibility for this decision and stop any prospective support or help."[1]

---

[1] Wrangel P. Notes/The White Movement. M.: Vagrius, 2006. P. 865.

It's written very clearly and expressly. It's exactly this message from the British that is the first international document received by Baron Wrangel after he had become the leader of the White movement. Denikin has chosen "a hospitable asylum in Great Britain' and has left the stage of the new Russian time of troubles forever...

Wrangel faces a difficult choice: either to continue fighting, having the army which has got disarmed and demoralized due to the evacuation that had been "masterfully" arranged by the "allies," or to surrender to Bolsheviks. And the most important issue is that the refusal of the British to provide any help means, in fact, that it is impossible to buy new ammunition from them. The baron decides to fight till the bitter end. The attempts of the Reds to take the Crimea without giving it a second thought are beaten back. Wrangel has fast and resolutely reformed the army and has even renamed it to the Russian Army. The cavalry regiments mount their first squadrons; the small units are enlarged. And at this moment, the political climate changes.

It is exactly at this moment that the Polacks launch an offensive on Belorussia and Ukraine. A new round of the big political party begins. There is a Russian proverb, "War is when one fights to the last ditch and another gets rich." The young Polish state can be reckoned among those for which the world massacre turned out to be a great national high-day. "A deformed offspring of the Treaty of Versailles," as the graduate of the St. Petersburg Polytechnic University Vyacheslav Molotov will call Poland later, has gained of the war. Barely having come into being, the emerging state, which had been formed of the pieces of the German and Russian territories, demonstrated a lot of agility, trying to use the advantageous chance and get the richest pieces of the others' territories. The Polacks have a good appetite and not only try to take pieces from the collapsed Russia, but also try to take the Upper Silesia from the Germans and Vilnius from the Lithuanians.

While the Red and the White Russians were "pummelling" each other, the Polacks managed to impudently occupy the parts of the Ukrainian, Belorussian, and Lithuanian lands in a "behind-the-scenes" manner. They occupy the territories which belonged to the

Polish-Lithuanian Commonwealth three hundred years ago, when the border with Russia ran outside Smolensk. Now, the time of revenge has come. For the "allies," it's the same procedure as when the Russian Navy was destroyed: one changes the flag, and the ship does not belong to Russia any more. If the pieces of the Ukrainian and Belorussian territories are given to the Polacks, these lands are no longer Russian.

On the territories, "reclaimed" by Poland, the active "polonization" starts. The Polacks have never been oppressed in the Russian Empire, the Polacks could freely study their language and their history, they are not oppressed in the Sovietdom, either. However, in the new "democratic" Poland there were only two schools left out of 150 Belorussian schools in the Western Belorussia by November of 1921.[1] The attempts to open some new Belorussian schools were suppressed, and the "initiators" were arrested. In the 1930s, the discrimination of the national minorities intensified even further. The religious persecutions of the Orthodox Christians began. These persecutions resulted in hundreds of Russian Orthodox churches, including the imposing cathedral of Alexander Nevsky in Warsaw, being demolished. The Red Army put an end to these oppressions in 1939...

The "allies" need a "tool" to seize the Russian territories, thus, the Polish Army is hastily being formed. The different approach of the British and the French "help" was as never before obvious as in regard the ammunition supply to the White Guards and the newly formed Polish Army. These were the White Armies which could go into the assault with only a few bullets in their rifles; the Polish arsenals were full of ammunition, the uniforms were brand-new, there was plenty of provisions and weapons. Like it is with the territory of Poland, the army is also formed of different military units: the "Russian" corps of Dowbor-Musnicki, the "Austrian-German" Army of General Haller, and the newly established units of draftees, volunteers, and... emigrants. A great part of the Polacks from the USA and Western Europe hastened to get enlisted in the newly formed national troops. The "allied" governments do not prevent this, of course, and encourage this process in every way.[1] Why are we paying so much attention to the Polacks? Because the unrestrained growth of the Polish state in 1919–1920 was a catastrophe for the White movement. Many manoeuvres of the "allies" were influenced by the Polish factors in the political situation.

---

[1] Pykhalov I. The Last Dog of The Entente. (http://www.specnaz.ru/istoriya/71/)

The Polish gentlemen have played the most important part in the fate of Denikin's Army and the Black Sea Navy. At first, the Polish support was a weighty argument of the "allies" to prompt a march of Denikin's Army towards Moscow. Then, in the most decisive moment, the Polacks and their satellites of Symon Petliura concluded a truce agreement with Bolsheviks, thus giving them the opportunity to attack with all the forces the battle-bled Whites. Now that Wrangel decided in spite of everything to resist in the Crimean Peninsula, the history had to repeat itself. Under the pressure of the Red Army, Poland began to creak at the seams and was ready to collapse. Wrangel's soldiers had to save Poland's independence, so carefully grown by the "allies."

The independence of Poland, Latvia, and Estonia was fertilized by tens of thousands corpses of the Russian soldiers and officers. Who remembers it now?

London and Paris start playing with Wrangel a classical game of a good and a bad cop: "bad" London does not supply Wrangel with ammunition, whereas "good" Paris crack open the crane of the ammunition supply. The Head of the Ministry of Foreign Affairs of Great Britain Lord Curzon sends to the Red Minister Chicherin a note, demanding that the Reds showed forgiveness to the Whites. At the same time, he threatens that in case Bolsheviks try to attack

---

[1] It is sufficient to say that Poland could receive the American ammunition in any quantity in accordance with the contract, signed with the USA. The USA granted Poland a loan of fifty million U.S. dollars and moved some of the military materials from France to Poland. (Shishkin S. The Civil War in the Far East. The Military Publishing House MO SSR, Moscow, 1957); pkokprf.ru/personal/doc/war_dv.htm#_Ref212803590).

Wrangel in order to crash his army totally, "the British government will have to send the ships to perform the necessary actions in order to save the army in the Crimea and stop the invasion of the Soviet forces in the region, where the armed forces of the Southern Russia are located."[1]

It's important not to let Lenin attack Poland with all his might, because Poland is not able to fight against Russia alone. For this purpose the White Crimea should be kept (so far). But in reality, the British do not want to help Wrangel. The British, having put on the togas of the peacemakers, suggest that the commander-in-chief of the Russian Army should personally negotiate with the Bolshevik leaders the terms of the holdout termination. If Wrangel agrees, the Red Army will not be not able to relocate its forces to the Polish Front while the negotiations are on. If Wrangel refuses, then the military actions will start, and the result will be the same. Wrangel understood this scenario very well. And he was not alone. Bolsheviks understood the scenario of the Entente's cunning political game very well, too: "There is no doubt that the Entente is forcing Wrangel to go into the offensive in order to ease the difficult situation of the Polacks."[2]

The most important goal for the "allies" is to use the Russians in order to stop the other Russians, who are rushing to Warsaw with the red flags. The approaches of Great Britain and France slightly differ. France is kind with regard to the White Guards, Great Britain is not. The more the situation at the Polish-Soviet Front worsens, the more loyal Paris is to Wrangel, who has to fight without bullets and shells. The tone of their telegrams is changing. On May 1, 1920, the French are very resolute, "The French government's attitude to any agreement with Bolsheviks is negative. No pressure to surrender the Crimea will be put on. France will not participate in any mediation, if the other parties do it. France sympathizes with the wish to stay in the Crimea and in the Tauride province. Considering the Bolshevism the main enemy of Russia, the French government feels for the Polacks. France does not cast a thought with regard to the veiled Polish annexation of the Dnepr River basin region."[1]

---

[1] Wrangel P. Notes/The White Movement. M.: Vagrius, 2006. P. 845.

[2] The conversation with comrade Stalin I. about the situation at the South-Eastern Front./Communist, №140, June 24, 1920. (http://ukrstor.com/ukstor/stalin-ukraina22html)

On May 2, Wrangel addresses the "allied" leaders with a message, in which he, without knowing it himself, suggests the actions opposite to the wishes of the "allies," "The only way to stop the permanent anarchy in Russia is to keep its healthy core, which could concentrate all the spontaneous movements against the tyranny of Bolsheviks. Russia can be saved from this danger, which is ready to spread from Russia to Europe, not by a new offensive towards Moscow, but by uniting all the people's forces, fighting against Communism."[2]

The good sense of Wrangel is impressive. However, the "allies" do not need "to keep the healthy core of Russia," and the unification of "all the people's forces, fighting against Communism" is really dangerous for them. His phrase regarding the offensive towards Moscow sounds as a direct reproach and an accusation. Wrangel is dangerous, he can disrupt the liquidation of the White movement. That's why the liquidation should be carried out as quickly as possible.

But before its ultimate ruination, the White movement has to act in the interests of the "allies" again. Having reformed the army and received the necessary ammunition, on May 24, 1920, Wrangel launches an offensive, unexpected for Bolsheviks, in order to break forth from the Crimea into the operations space. It does not make any sense to stay in the Crimea with neither provisions nor manpower. All what the Whites need in order to gain the victory can be taken only from the Reds. They had to use the chance while the Bolshevik forces are held in position by the Polacks and the French help with the ammunition. Do-or-die combats start.

But the treachery of the "allies" is always measured out in certain doses — they rat out their partners exactly at the moment when they need it. Not a day earlier! On May 24, 1920, when the landing had been made and there was no going back for Wrangel, he got a message informing, "Admiral de Robeck had received an order from London to detain all the military materials, intended to be used in the Crimea, on the ships under the British flag and on the Russian ships, as well. The order does not apply to the military cargo on the ships under other flags."[1]

---

[1] Wrangel P. Notes/The White Movement. M.: Vagrius, 2006. P. 844.

[2] Ib. P. 845.

Prior to this order, all the talks about the termination of the military supplies were a sad "political moment" and in fact, the Whites managed to reach out to the British gentlemen with the aid of "His Majesty the Pound." Now the supplies from Great Britain have seized. This act is a consequence of the negotiations of the Soviet leaders in London. The British give Lenin a firm promise not to help the Whites. "The decision of the British government has put us in the most difficult situation. The termination of the military supplies would set all our efforts to zero… Even though the British continued to make difficulties to us, we still managed to deliver the most part of the military cargo to the Crimea by means of the personal negotiations in Sevastopol, Constantinople, and Paris,"[2] Wrangel writes.

Those who still believe that the Entente was helping the Whites and that the British were trying to strangle "the emerging Soviet Republic," absolutely have to read the memoirs of the White generals. There exists nothing that could demolish this myth at the root more evidently than these memoirs. When a tremendous struggle is on, and two forces — the Red one and the White one — are fighting for life or death, how do the "allies" of Russia act?

"Petrol, oils, and tyres were delivered from abroad with enormous efforts, and there was a serious shortage of them. Everything what we needed was bought partly in Romania, partly in Bulgaria, partly in Georgia. We have attempted to use the Russian goods left in Trabzon, but all our efforts met with the insuperable difficulties. The British threw obstacles in our way by delaying the cargoes under all kinds of pretexts."[3]

---

[1] Wrangel P. Notes/The White Movement. M.: Vagrius, 2006. P. 874.

[2] Ib. PP. 874–875.

[3] Ib. P. 887.

If the British obviously prevent the ammunition supplies to the Whites, who are they helping? Correct, they are helping the Reds.

The Entente was not helping the fighters for the rebuilding of the United and Indivisible Russia at all. This help existed only in the imagination of the Soviet historians, whose successors — the liberals of today — keep telling us how Great Britain, France, and the USA helped the Russian heroes to crash the emerging totalitarianism.

And Baron Wrangel wrote quite a different history of the Russian Civil War. He saw no help at all. On the contrary, he was continuously obstructed. "We did not have currency to buy everything we needed."[1]

The White divisions are bleeding to death, while Trotsky moves the reinforcements from the Polish Front to the Crimea. Nevertheless, the Polacks retreat under the onsurge of the Red Army. Then the British "peacemakers" announce another peace initiative. On July 17, 1920, the British government suggests that Lenin immediately signed a truce agreement with Poland and convened a conference in London for establishing the peace relations. The British don't ask the Whites about their point of view or for their consent. Concerning the Whites, the British suggested that Wrangel moved his army back to the Crimea, thus losing everything his army had taken over during the last combats with such enormous efforts! The suggestion of the British is not acceptable and they are well aware of that. The reason is simple and banal, "The demand to move the army to the isthmuses is equal to letting the army starve to death along with the Crimean population, because the peninsula can't feed them."[2]

May the White fighters for the "United and Indivisible Russia" die, the British and the French are in a rush to make their profitable deals behind their backs. The mutually beneficial cooperation between the Red Russia and the "civilized" commonwealth of the

---

[1] Wrangel P. Notes/The White Movement. M.: Vagrius, 2006. (The negotiations in regards of the loan for Wrangel went on till the expiration of his power).

[2] Ib. P. 874.

European nations is underway. The "allied" ships export tons of grain from Bolsheviks and bring industrial goods. Wrangel can see all that, "It was pointless to look for any moral intentions in the policies of the European countries. These policies are governed by profit only. There are a lot of facts proving this. A few days ago, I informed that I had to install mine barriers at the approaches to the Soviet ports to prevent the illegal traffic of the ammunition in the Bolshevik ports at the Black Sea. The commanders-in-chief of the "allied" British and French Navies protested and informed me that this measure was superfluous, because they had forbidden any trade with the Soviet ports for anyone."[1]

No mines, please: what if an "allied" ship explodes on these mines...

And Wrangel himself finds the proof of his guess, "Four days later, the radio station of our naval department accepted a radiogram from the French torpedo-boat Commandant Bory, which had allegedly been sent upon the request of the Odessa union of the cooperatives, "On August 5, the ship (the name is unclear) will depart for Genoa with four tons of grain. Send the ship with the medications, trucks, and surgical instruments."[2]

To sugar-coat the bitter truth, the French government all of a sudden decides to recognize the government of Wrangel. A diplomatic representative from the French Republic comes to Sevastopol. It's the right time, isn't it? Thus far no White governments have been recognized. Kolchak has not been extended such courtesy, Denikin has not been made happy with the recognition, and it is exactly Wrangel that has been recognized! Why him and why now? Because there were about three months left for Wrangel's government to exist, and his army was needed during this period — to hold a part of the Red Army troops in position.

As soon as the Polacks with the British behind their backs have again agreed with Lenin and Trotsky, the direction of the policies of the western countries changes once again.

---

[1] Wrangel P. Notes/The White Movement. M.: Vagrius, 2006. P. 903–904.

[2] Ib. P. 904.

The Polacks and Lenin under the pressure of the British start preparing the peace agreement. The preparation works take place late in September. The newly recognized government of Wrangel has not learnt about it at once. Wrangel understands that in case he does not take any measures, he will be crushed in the nearest future by the Red Army troops, moved from the Polish Front. The head of the Whites addresses the "allies" again, "I have taken all the measures to persuade the French and the Polish governments to continue the struggle against the Reds or at least to drag on the planned peace negotiations in order for me access and supply my troops at the expense of the huge booty, captured by the Polacks; to use the Bolshevik troops, which have gone over to the Polacks and have been interned in Germany, as combat effective units, as well as the materials equipment captured by the winner."[1]

The answer of the French is astonishing. When reading it, you should remember that two months are left till the ultimate ruination of Wrangel's Army, and if the French do not take any measures, the Whites will have no chances to hold, "The French government and Foch essentially sympathize with your presentation of the problem, but it will be solved more slowly than it's needed. In addition to the complexity of the problem, the *vacation season* and the absence of Millerand, who can be reached only by mail, impede the solution of the problem."[2]

Mr. Millerand is pleased to be on vacation and consequently the White movement in Russia has to perish. Say what you will, but the French are civilized people and they feel uncomfortable to look in the face of the person who they are deceiving and betraying. Exactly due to this reason, some "unexpected" changes have taken place in the French government. President of the French Republic Deschanel got ill and had to leave his post, and the so "tired" Millerand, who needed a vacation, was elected as his deputy. The new president has his own points in regard to certain issues of the foreign policy of France. Hegh, you have been promised something, we are very sorry, but that was during Deschanel's time, and now we have Millerand...

---

[1] Wrangel P. Notes/The White Movement. M.: Vagrius, 2006. P. 932.

[2] Ib. P. 933.

The fate of the White Crimea and, maybe, the future of the whole Russia depend on the position of the Polacks. But Wrangel, whose government has been officially recognized by Paris, can't discuss the matter of life and death of his army directly with the Polacks.

"Our communication with the Polacks was very problematic. We had to conduct the negotiations via the French. The attempts to establish the communication with Warsaw did not work out. Despite all the requests, the High Commissioners of the "allies" resolutely refused the installation of our radio station in the territory of the Russian Embassy in Buyukdere."[1]

Simple as that, but — "all the communication is exclusively via the French"! The Whites may not communicate directly — what if the Whites manage to agree with the proud Polish gentlemen, and the liquidation of the Russian patriotic movement fails? The treachery of the "allies" strikes the eye, but for Wrangel there is nothing left to do but hope.

"Even though I trusted our 'foreign friends' very little, I still hoped that the Polish government being under the pressure of France will try to postpone the conclusion of the peace agreement as much as possible to give us time to finish the formation of the army on the Polish territory or, at least, to relocate the Russian troops to the Crimea."[2]

Baron Wrangel hurries to defeat the Reds while the over-balance of the Red Army is not that overwhelming. While the fresh troops are not relocated from the Polish Front. That's why he keeps attacking. The fiercest battles take place near Kakhovka. The Russian Army, being smaller in number than that of the opponent, attacks the excellently fortified positions. The Whites move forward under the massed intense fire of the machine guns and artillery. There are several rows of the barbed wire in front of them — the White Guards tear it with their hands, slash it with their sabres. The cavalry attacks of General Barabovich stop at the barbed-wire entanglement and with the organized fire from the staging area,"[1] the Red historians write about these combats of the Civil War. Have the White Guards gone mad? Why would they use cavalry to take the fortifications surrounded by the barbed wire?

---

[1] Wrangel P. Notes/The White Movement. M.: Vagrius, 2006. P. 955.

[2] Ib.

Because this is the only way to take them. This is a crazy and bold chance. Because only the mounted formations can TRY to "fly" over the barbed-wire obstacles. The infantry has no chances at all.

They have no wire cutters — France has promised to send them some but never did![2]

Imagine that you have to prepare a member of a polar expedition for his journey: you give him very good clothes, high quality footwear, excellent skis, but you forget to give him the mittens. You sort of have helped him to get properly equipped, but he will not manage for long with his hands frost-bitten. It is not difficult to find out what Wrangel's needs are — he sends the requests to the "allies" himself. They just have to choose some little "key" thing and "forget" to bring it. Wrangel can't wait for the next ship, and he will in any case without any doubt attack the fortifications of the Reds. You just have to wait until his attack is bogged down and send him your false excuses.

Kakhovka is being desperately attacked during five days. As a result, having suffered serious losses, the Whites retreat early in September, but a week later they start attacking again in another front sector and even drive the Red Army back. But they are running out of forces, and the attack starts to bog down. Here another present from the "allies" arrives: the Polacks have concluded a peace agreement with Bolsheviks. "The Polacks have kept their character: they have two faces under one hood,"[3] Wrangel concludes bitterly. The primary preliminary conditions of the peace agreement *were already signed* by Warsaw on September 29, 1920.

Nobody has informed the Russian commander-in-chief about it. On the contrary, the Polacks continued to communicate with

---

[1] Kakurin N., Vatsetis I. The Civil War 1918–1921. St. Pb.: Poligon, 2002. P. 594.

[2] The Chronicles of the Black Sea Region Magazine, № 4, April 2000, Kherson (http://rkka.kiev.ua/about_gragdanskajavoina_tanki).

[3] Wrangel P. Notes/The White Movement. M.: Vagrius, 2006. P. 865.

Wrangel "exclusively via the French," as if nothing had happened. Even here the Polacks have played into the hands of Lenin and Trotsky: Wrangel, who is unaware of the fact that the peace agreement has *already been secretly signed*, does not expect such a fast concentration of so many Red troops against the Crimea. That's why the power of the blow under the command of Frunze turns out to be so unexpected for the Whites.

Now the Whites have no chances to save themselves. The defeat was just a matter of time. Being alone, Wrangel's Army continued fighting for one and half month more. Wrangel understands that he can't trust the British, and he staged the evacuation, relying on his own forces only. And the evacuation will be carried out successfully. Unlike "Denikin's" evacuation, when the White leaders put their hopes for the aid of the Foggy Albion. Totally, 132 ships overcrowded down to the limit by 145,693 refugees, not including the crews, left Sevastopol, Kerch, Yalta, and Feodosia...

NONE OF THE EMPIRES HAVE AGREED TO ACCEPT THE EVACUATED REFUGEES upon the moment of their departure from the Crimea...

The Russian Black Sea Navy sailed on its last cruise. That was the last march for the Russian Army, that used to be the Volunteer Army, too. The army was destined not to return to its motherland again. The destinies of the Cossacks and volunteers, the officers and junkers, the cadets and refugees will develop in different ways. Some of them will yield to persuasion and return to the Red Russia, some of them will return to the their motherland as Wehrmacht soldiers, but the majority will die in the foreign countries and fill the cemeteries in Paris, Nice, Melbourne, and New-York with the Orthodox crosses on their graves.

Together with the White Guards, together with the ruined White movement, the Russian battleships and commercial ships were also leaving Russia. They were leaving Russia in order to never come back. The Russian ships, which had escaped the destruction by Bolsheviks in June 1918, by the British — in April 1919, those which had escaped sinking during the evacuation in Odessa and Sevastopol — all these ships were now pawned by France (!). The "allies" will never let the ships out of their tenacious arms...

Baron Wrangel's fleet arrived in Constantinople. For about two weeks the ships were standing in the roads, the soldiers and refugees did not receive any provisions. Then the careful "allies" placed the Russians in Gallipoli next to the straits. In the middle of nowhere, under the pouring rain and snow.

Wrangel has not received any money to keep up the army or to support the refugees. Even the tents weren't given to his military personnel immediately! The last Russian soldiers became captives of the "allied" hospitality. Wrangel had a desperate behind-the-scenes struggle ahead with the British and the French for preserving the army as a combatant force. Wrangel will experience the provocations of the "allies," the appeals to the soldiers and officers not to obey their leaders, the attempts of the "allies" to disarm the army and cut down the field rations. Time will pass, and the life of the obstinate General Wrangel who did not want to disband the Russian Army, will be attempted on October 15, 1920. His yacht Lucullus, where his headquarters was accommodated, in full day light and at the excellent visibility was rammed through by the ship Adria. The hull of the ship, which, being under the Italian flag, was on its way from Batumi, rammed the broadside of Wrangel's yacht exactly in the place where Wrangel's study was located. After having taken its toll, Adria did not only take any measures to save the people, but tried to escape. Lucullus almost instantly went to the bottom, and several people perished. By good fortune, Wrangel wasn't on aboard. Whoever staged the assassination attempt was never identified, and the "allied" investigation bodies tried to quickly cover this matter up.

Being afraid to let the Russian ships stay at Constantinople, the French moved the ships to Africa. The Tunisian port of Bizerte, forsaken by both God and the French authorities, got many Orthodox citizens: besides the sailors themselves, the members of their families lived here, their children attended Russian schools. Even the Russian Naval Cadet Corps that had been evacuated from Sevastopol was in function: the naval officers for the future Russian Navy attended classes there. Alas, these plans have never come true. Instead of the growing might and fame of the Russian fleet the cadets saw how the ships, having been pawned by France, were disappearing one by one. The "allies" partly took some of them under their flags, the other were used as scrap metal.

The fate of the last Black Sea dreadnought General Alexeyev (former Volya, also known as Imperator Aleksander III) was also a sad one. On December 29, 1920, the ship was interned by the French authorities. Later France recognized the USSR, but did not give the ships back, postponing this act under various excuses. The war of words with the "allies" lasted for four years. Finally, on October 29, 1924, the dreadnought was recognized by the French government to be the property of the USSR, but due to the "complicated international situation" was not returned to the Soviet Russia. In 1936, the battleship General Alexeyev was sold by the Soviet company Rudmetalltorg to be destroyed in Brest (France) under the condition that its guns and some of the instruments stayed the property of France (!) and had to be delivered to the Sidi Abdallah arsenal. The dismantling and destruction of the dreadnought did not start at once and were finished only in 1937. In 1940, in the heat of the Soviet-Finnish war, the neutral French government agreed to give over to Finland the 305 mm guns from the dreadnought. The Finns have kept the shells for these guns after the Russian Baltic Navy left the ports of Finland in 1918. The purpose of this gift was to shoot at the Soviet soldiers, who were trying to conquer the Mannerheim Line. Thanks to the quick end of the military actions, the guns of the Russian dreadnought did not manage to fire at any of the Russian soldiers.

This was the end of the tragedy of the old Russia, staged by the British and the French intelligence services, the tragedy of its people, army, and navy. Truly speaking, the Soviet Russia despite all the efforts of the "allies" has remained the naval power. The weakened Navy was preserved, but both with regard to the quantity and quality it was unable to safeguard the sea borders of the country. Bolsheviks, having razed the old system to the ground, had to rebuild the country. One of the most important directions in Stalin's five-year plans would be the recovery of the sea power. Besides the building of the new ships, in the 1930s several attempts have been made to raise from the bottom of the sea the ships, which had been sunk by Lenin's order and which hulls were blocking the Tsemes

Bay. It was at that time that the shy and emotional voices of the first researches of the Civil War started to ask in the Soviet newspapers and magazines, "Why should comrade Raskolnikov sink the Black Sea squadron at such a deep place and so fundamentally? Had the ships been sent to the bottom not far from the coast, one would be able to raise and repair them. In the given circumstances, the only ship which had been brought back to life was the destroyer Kaliakria. Under the new name of Dzerzhinsky the ship was allotted into the Red Navy on August 28, 1929.

The orchestrators of Russia's destruction could start to strike the balance. The totally destroyed economy, the destructed navy, the illegitimate government, millions of victims — these are the results of the liquidation of the Russian state. In the west, separated from us by the newly established hostile states, there was Germany, bled-white and degraded. All the goals, which the British and the French had with regard to Germany, have been reached, as well. But neither Russia nor Germany were going to make it up with their degraded positions. The struggle was not over, is has only begun. The diplomatic wars of words and unexpected successes, the sharp political turns and anxious expectations — all this was a part of the future, which ended on a warm early morning in June 1941...

- Why were the first days of the war so tragic?
- Who and what forced Adolf Hitler to make a fatal mistake in his career and attack the USSR?
- Why having received the information about the German blow, Stalin still doubted that a real war and not a provocation was taking place?
- What were the units of the Red Army located directly at the border preparing for?

We shall talk about all that in the next book. The time has come to reveal the secret of June 22, 1941...

The author will be grateful for your feedback:
www.nstarikov.ru
nstarikov@bk.ru

Addendum. Vengeance

Almost all the people who have betrayed or destroyed their motherland have received a condign punishment. Only a few have escaped the vengeance. It came to them at the time when they were absolutely sure about their safety. The death approached them from the side where it had never been expected. The ships sent to the bottom, the people tortured to death, Russia betrayed and destroyed, the children of Nicholas II murdered — it is only a small part of the huge list of their crimes. Off with your hats — here are the "innocent" victims of Stalinist Purges...

The leaders (The first Soviet government)

The foreigners loved this government much more than its landsmen did. American Colonel Robbins (the very spy from the American Red Cross mission) wrote that the members of this government were the most educated and cultured in the world's history with regard to the books they had written and the languages they had mastered. The Norwegian Social Democrats had capped the climax — they nominated Vladimir Ilyich Lenin for the Nobel Peace Prize! Now, when we have learned so much about our "allies," we should not be surprised. The prizes are very often given not to the most deserving nominees, but in accordance with the political expediency. Lenin was nominated twice: first time in 1917, when he wrote his Decree on Peace, which has never been realized; next time in 1918, when the horrible Civil War was on and the mutilated bodies of the officers were floating in the Black Sea.

The results of this government's activities are very sad, as are the fates of its members. Out of 14 People's Commissars 10 will be liquidated, the circumstances around the death of two are more than shady, one of the commissars will die before the Stalinist Purges start. The last member of this government — Joseph Stalin will die at the summit of fame, not having escaped the suspicions in a death by violence, either.

The first composition of the Soviet of the People's Commissars (Sovnarkom)

The Chairman of the Sovnarkom — Lenin (Ulyanov) **Vladimir Ilyich** dies in 1924 of dementia. There exists a hypothesis that he was poisoned by his companions-in-arms. He is buried in the Mausoleum against his will.

The Committee on Military and Naval Affairs

Antonov (Ovseyenko) **Vladimir Alexandrovich** had been in the revolutionary movement from 1905, he took part in the uprising in Sevastopol in 1905. During the years of the reaction, he was the member of the Menshevik Party and worked in Paris in the publishing house of Trotsky's newspaper "Nashe slovo." After he had come back, he sided with Bolsheviks and joined their party in June 1917. During the October armed uprising he is the member of the military revolutionary committee of Petrograd. The Winter Palace was taken under his command, and it was him who arrested the Provisional Government. He was the chairman of the empowered and authorized commission of the VTsIK anti-banditism committee in the Tambov province. He is an executioner of the Russian peasants — together with Tukhachevsky he signed an order, which stipulated execution of hostages and immediate shooting out of court of "citizens who refuse to say their names." Since 1934, he had been the procurator of the RSFSR[1]: in this position he contributed to the practice of execution of sentences passed the "proletarian necessity." During the Civil War in Spain, he was the consul general in Barcelona. He was recalled to Moscow and arrested in November 1937.

Shot in 1938.

---

[1] Translator's note: The Russian Soviet Federative Socialist Republic.

Krylenko Nikolay Vasilyevich was the leader of the student revolutionary movement in 1905–1908, at the same time he worked in the Bolshevik organization in Petrograd. At the time of the February Revolution, he was a warrant officer of the Russian Army. In November 1917, after Commander-in-Chief Dukhonin had refused to obey the order regarding the beginning of the truce negotiations, Sovnarkom appointed him the commander-in-chief. He broke up the General Headquarters, dismissed the "counterrevolutionary minded" officers, introduced the appointment of commanders by election, disorganized the army and speeded up the disintegration of the army. He started the truce negotiations with the Germans. After the Peace Treaty of Brest-Litovsk, he gave his position to Trotsky, and since 1918 he had worked in the Soviet agencies of justice. He had different positions there: the chairman of the Supreme revolutionary tribunal under VTsIK, the procurator of the republic, the narkom of justice of the RSFSR, since 1936 he was the narkom of justice of the USSR. The public prosecutor in all the important processes, including the case of Namorsy Schastny. In response to the accusations in his last word he said he "had 25 years of revolutionary activities and only 8 years of anti-Soviet activities, and by comparing these figures, the court should give the answer with its decision." The court has given the answer.

Shot in 1938.

Dybenko Pavel Efimovich — a sailor from the dreadnought Gangut, was judged for the theft of the pea-jacket. As the chairman of Tsentrobalt, he was leading the massacres against the officers in Kronstadt. During the Civil War, he was the commander of various military units. His last position before he was arrested was the deputy of the Narkom of Forest Industry, i.e., tree felling.

Shot in 1938.

Narkom of Internal Affairs

Rykov Alexei Ivanovich became the member of RSDRP, when he was a student at the Saratov Gymnasium in 1898. He was elected in the first TsK of the party and participated in the revolution of 1905. From May 1917, he was the Moscow Soviet presidium member. From

October 1917, he was also the Petrograd Soviet presidium member. He took active part in staging the October uprising. He handed in his resignation as a mark of protest, when Bolsheviks refused to establish a coalition government. Later, he returned and got the chairman's post in the Supreme Soviet of the national economy of the RSFSR. He was a member of the Revvoyensoviet of the RSFSR. He held different high positions in the Communist hierarchy.

Shot in 1938.

Narkom of Agriculture

Milyutin Vladimir Pavlovich joined the party in 1903, Menshevik. In 1910, he came over to Bolsheviks. He carried out the party work in different towns, was arrested several times and spent about five years in prison. In 1917, he was a member of RSDRP(b) Committee in Saratov, the chairman of the Samara Soviet. He left the government together with Rykov, but then acknowledged his mistake and withdrew his letter of resignation. He was elected a deputy of the All-Russian Constituent Assembly, was the chairman of the Supreme Soviet of the national economy of the RSFSR, the Comintern representative in Austria and the Balkans, the deputy chairman of the Gosplan[1] of the RSFSR. Arrested.

Shot in 1938.

Narkom of Labour

Shlyapnikov Alexander Gavrilovich became a member of RSDRP in 1901. Has arrested several times and spent some time in prison. In 1908, he went abroad to contact the foreign TsK, met Lenin in Geneva. During the February Revolution, he was the only member of RSDRP, who had been in Russia and was not in prison. He was in the Smolny during the October uprising. In 1923, he openly criticized the central committee with regard to the economic situation. He was transferred to the diplomatic operation department. For a short period, he was a trade representative in France, and in 1925 he returned to the USSR. Till 1929, he was the chairman of the joint-stock company Metalloimport (remember the Russian ships cross cut into scrap metal).

---

[1] Translator's note: The State Planning Committee of the Soviet Union.

Shot in 1938.

Narkom of Trade and Industry

Nogin (Makara) **Viktor Pavlovich** — a worker, a member of RSDRP from 1898. Was several times arrested and had been almost in every big prison in Russia. A member of the executive committee of Moscow Soviet. He was a member of a temporary committee, fighting The Kornilov Putsch. During the October overthrow he was the chairman of the executive committee presidium at the Moscow Soviet of the workers' deputies. The deputy of the All-Russian Constituent Assembly. From April 1918, he was the deputy of the narkom of labour of the RSFSR, later he took different positions in the state and economy sectors. Died during the surgery performed by Professor V. Rozanov (!), on the same operating table where M. Frunze would die a year later. Buried in the Red Square at the Kremlin Wall. A county town Bogorodsk was renamed and became Noginsk in 1930. It still holds this name.

Died in 1924 and thus escaped being shot.

Narkom of Education

Lunacharsky Anatoly Vasilyevich joined a clandestine Marxist group, when he was still a schoolboy. A member of the party since 1895. Studied at the Zürich University together with Rosa Luxemburg. During World War 1, he joined an internationalist group of Trotsky and was one of his close co-workers in the editorial office of the Nashe Slovo Newspaper. He was a passenger of the second "sealed" railway car that followed Lenin's one. On the way, the Germans fed them a hardly edible gruel. Lunacharsky was the first to take his spoon, and having tasted the gruel, he said thoughtfully, "You know, it's nourishing!" Such lack of squeamishness helped him in the end to "digest" all the Bolshevik horrors, which (by word of mouth) he ardently opposed.

He offered his resignation eight times and even passed out cold, when he heard of the Kremlin having been shot at by the artillery fire. Then he calmed down and got used to it. From 1917 till 1929 he was the narkom of education and took part in establishing the Soviet education system. In 1933, he was appointed the empowered and authorized representative of the USSR in Spain. On his way to Spain swept by the Civil War he died. This is very suspicious, if we remember that almost all the Soviet experts that belonged to the "Spanish" cohort were later shot dead.

He died in 1933 and thus escaped being shot.

Narkom of Finance

Skvortsov-Stepanov Ivan Ivanovich joined the Social Democratic movement since 1896, he was a member of the Bolshevik Party since 1904. He was arrested several times. In 1917, he was a member of the Moscow Committee of RSDRP(b). After the October Revolution, he was the narkom of finance. Early in 1918, he objected the conclusion of the peace agreement with the Germans, the left-wing Communist.

From 1925, he was the editor of the Izvestiya, the deputy editor of the Pravda, the editor of the Leningradskaya Pravda. One of the initiators of the political censorship. From 1925, he was the member of the TsK of RSDRP. After his death, a hospital for the demented was called after him, and his name became a denominative. The remains of Skvortsov-Stepanov are buried in the Kremlin Wall.

Died in 1928 and thus escaped being shot.

Narkom of Foreign Affairs

Trotsky (Bronstein) **Lev Davydovich** was one of the ideologists of the first Russian Revolution, in 1905–1907 he was the chairman of the Petersburg Soviet. After the defeat of the revolution he emigrated. He was a passenger of the "American" ship and managed to come back to Russia with an active help of the "allies" and the Provisional Government. The chairman of the Petrograd Soviet, along with Lenin he was an actual orchestrator of the October overthrow in Petrograd. The main founder of the Red Army. One of those who persistently wanted to send the Russian Navy to the bottom. On January 16, 1928, he was exiled to Almaty after having been expelled from the party, and one year later he was exiled from the USSR to Turkey. In exile, he published a magazine "The Bulletin of the Opposition," formed the so called Fourth International, strongly protested against Stalin.

Lev Davydovich got his children and relatives into a great trouble. His daughter Nina died of tuberculosis, when he was in exile in Almaty. His second daughter Zinaida, being in depression, committed suicide (?) in Berlin in 1933. His son Sergey was arrested in June 1935 and spent a long time in the Butyrskaya Prison, and then he was sentenced to 5 years of the maximum security prison. He was shot dead in 1937.The last son of Trotsky, Lev Sedov, who had survived till 1938, was poisoned with cyanide in February 1938, in a hospital in Paris, where he was supposed to have an appendicitis surgery. Zinaida's husband had managed to return from his first exile but could not survive the second exile in 1935. Trotsky's sister Olga was married to Kamenev. She was shot dead in the prison short before the Germans took over Oryol.

May 24, 1940 — In accordance with the operation "Utka," the first unsuccessful attempt of assassination of Trotsky took place. His residence was cannonaded with machine guns by a group of diversionists led by the painter David Alfaro Siqueiros. The second attempt was quite successful, and Trotsky was assassinated. The Spanish Communist, the NKVD agent Ramón Mercader del Rio was awarded the title of the Hero of the Soviet Union for this.

Killed with an ice-axe on August 20, 1940 in Mexico.

Narkom of Justice

Lomov (Oppokov) **Georgy Ippolitovich** — a nobleman. Joined the party in 1903, Bolshevik. He was exiled to Arkhangelsk province, where he participated in the scientific polar expedition to Siberia. In 1917, he was a member of the Moscow region bureau and the Moscow committee of RSDRP(b), the deputy chairman of the Moscow Soviet. In October 1917, he was a member of the Moscow military-revolutionary committee. In 1918, he sided with the left-wing Communists and objected the conclusion of the peace agreement with Germany. In 1918–1923, he was a member of the presidium and the deputy chairman of the Supreme Soviet of the national economy of the RSFSR. Later, he occupied different posts in the state and economy sectors.

Shot in 1937.

Narkom of Food

Teodorovich Ivan Adolfovich was a nobleman, a Polack. He joined the RSDRP in 1895. He was arrested in 1902 and exiled to Yakutia for six years. In 1905, he fled from Yakutia to Geneva, where he met Lenin and was sent to Russia "to stir the pot." In 1906, he was elected as a member of the Petrograd committee of RSDRP. He was arrested and sentenced to six years of hard works. An active participant of the October overthrow. Late in 1917 — early in 1918, he was sent to Krasnoyarsk in order to confiscate the grain from the peasants. He was arrested by the White Guards in 1918 and… was released. Later, he occupied different posts in the party. He was arrested by NKVD in 1937. There will be no misfire this time.

Shot in 1940.

Narkom of Posts and Telegraphs

Glebov (Avilov) **Nikolay Pavlovich** was the member of the Bolshevik Party from 1904. He was arrested several times. After the February Revolution, he was a member of the executive board of the Petersburg committee of RSDRP(b). In May 1918, he was appointed commissar and sent to the Black Sea Navy, where he tried to stage the sinking of the ships. Later, he was a member of the presidium and a secretary of VTsSPS,[1] the narkom of labour in Ukraine. From 1922, he occupied different posts in the party in

---

[1] Translator's note: The All-Union Central Council of Trade Unions.

Petrograd. From 1928, he was the project manager and then the director of Rostselmash.[1]

Shot in 1937.

Narkom of Nationalities

Stalin (Jughashvili) **Joseph Vissarionovich** died under mysterious circumstamces in his dacha on March 5, 1953. The hypothesis exists that he was poisoned like Lenin.

The February Revolution

Sukhanov (Himmer) **Nikolay Nikolayevich** was from the middle of 1903 a member of Moscow SR organization. During the February Revolution he was a member of the Executive committee of the Petrograd Soviet. Order Number One and other documents, issued by the Petrograd Soviet, were demoralizing the army and the country. After the October overthrow, he was the member of the 2nd and 3rd compositions of VTsIK. During the peace negotiations in Brest, he supported a revolutionary war against Germany. He was arrested in July 1930. In March 1931, he was sentenced to ten years of prison in the trial of "The All-Union Bureau of Mensheviks." In 1935, the prison confinement was replaced by the exile for him. In 1937, he was arrested again.

Shot in 1940.

Steklov (Nakhamkes) **Yuri Mikhailovich** — a Social Democrat from 1893. Participated in the revolution of 1905–1907. In 1910, he went abroad, worked in the Bolshevik newspapers "Social-democrat," "Zvezda," "Pravda," in the magazine "Education." After the February Revolution, he was the member of the executive committee of the Petrograd Soviet, which managed to cause even more chaos and anarchy in the country. One of the authors of notorious Order Number One. After the October overthrow, he joined Bolsheviks. He was the editor of the Izvestiya Newspaper in the 1920s, as well.

---

[1] Translator's note: A Russian agricultural equipment company, based in Rostov-on-Don, founded in 1929.

Later, he did academic work and journalized. He published some works on the history of the revolutionary movement.

Shot in 1940.

Skobelev Matvey Ivanovich — an engineer, a member of RSDRP from 1903, Menshevik. From 1912, he was one of the leaders of the Social Democratic faction in the 4th composition of the State Duma. Having emigrated to Vienna, he worked in the editorial office of Trotsky's newspaper "Pravda." After the February Revolution, he was a member of the bureau of the executive committee of the Petrograd Soviet. From May till August 1917, he was the minister of labour of the Provisional Government. Emigrated after the October Revolution, then decided to come back. A member of the VKP(b) from 1923. He was the chairman of the concessionary committee of the RSFSR.

Shot in 1939.

The "sealed" train of Lenin and the "sealed" steamer of Trotsky

Ganetsky (Furstenberg) **Yakov Stanislavovich** — Lenin's companion-in-arms, who was responsible for Lenin's communication with the western (British) intelligence services. Most likely, their agent in charge of finances, who was attached to the "promising" revolutionary. With the help of Parvus, who was a double spy of Great Britain and Germany, he opened a special bank office in Stockholm. It would become the main finance channel for the October overthrow in 1917. From 1918, he was a member of the college of the People's Commissariat for Finance of the RSFSR, he was a commissar and the manager of the Narodny Bank. He occupied different posts in the diplomatic and financial sectors. His last job from 1935 was director of the Museum of revolution.

Shot in 1937.

Zinoviev Grigory Yevseyevich (Radomyslsky Ovsei-Gershon Aronovich). A member of the party since 1901. In 1905–1905, he studied chemistry and justice at the Bern University in Switzerland. In 1905, he came back to Petersburg and took part in the revolution. In 1908, he was arrested and emigrated. A member of TsK from

1912. One of Lenin's main companions-in-arms during the emigration period. He shared the hut in Razliv with Lenin, performing the duties of his secretary. Together with Kamenev in October 1917 he published an open letter, thus divulging the plan of the Bolshevik uprisal. The chairman of the Petrograd Soviet in 1917–1926. During the offensive of Yudenich's Army on Petrograd he put in the institution of hostages, who were shot dead at nights. In December 1934, he was accused of having orchestrated the assassination of Kirov, arrested and sentenced to 10 years in prison. He was again put on trial and charged for establishing a terrorist organization "Trotskist-Zinovievist Terrorist Centre."

Shot in 1937.

Radek (Sobelsohn) **Karl Berngardovich** was born in Lvov, in the Austria-Hungarian Galicia. For his love to the party's money box this Polish-German-Russian revolutionary was nicknamed "Kradek."[1] He was a passenger of the "sealed" railway car together with Lenin. He accompanied Trotsky to Brest-Litovsk during the peace negotiations and positioned himself as a left-wing Communist. In 1919–1924, he was the member of TsK and the member of the presidium of the executive committee of Comintern. From March 1920, he was the secretary of Comintern, responsible for the subversive activities in Germany and China. He was on the editorial staff of the Pravda and the Izvestiya. He was sentenced by the military college of the Supreme Court of the USSR for 10 years of penal labour.

Killed in a labour camp in 1939.

Bukharin Nikolay Ivanovich — a member of the party from 1906. For the first time, he was arrested in 1909, exiled to Astrakhan and fled from there abroad. During World War 1, he was several times arrested in different countries for the internationalist activities. Starting from the end of 1916 he lived in New York. He was a passenger of Trotsky's "sealed" steamer. At the 6th congress of the party in August 1917 he was elected the member of TsK. In

---

[1] Translator's note: This word comes from the Russian word "krast," i.e., "to steal" in English.

1919–1929, he was the general secretary of the executive committee of Comintern. He was a member of Politburo,[1] the editor of the Pravda and the Izvestiya. In 1936, he worked on the Soviet constitution. He is the author of the well-known aphorism, "We have a multiparty system: one party has the power, the rest are in prison."

Shot in 1938.

Friedrich Platten was a Swiss Social Democrat, in 1912–1918 he was the secretary of the Social Democratic Party of Switzerland. He had a secret relationship with the intelligence services of several countries. It was him who in March 1917 arranged the "sealed" railway car for Lenin and other political emigrants in order for them to cross the territory of Germany. On January 14, 1918, he shielded Lenin with his body during the attempt against the former in Petrograd and got his arm slightly wounded. Krupskaya presented him a little Browning as a token of her gratitude, and there was an inscription on its handle, "To the saviour of our Ilyich." From 1923, he permanently lived in the USSR. When the time came for him to answer for his deeds, the investigators found themselves in a challenging situation at first. In March 1938, he was arrested, his wife Bertha Zimmermann was arrested a year later.

Having sorted out the situation, the investigators realized that Platten's long standing cooperation with the German intelligence services, which Platten was accused of, was involuntarily confirming the rumours about the assistance of the German intelligence services in Lenin's return to Russia in a "sealed" railway car. The fact of Platten's cooperation with the British and French intelligence services made this case even shadier. The way out of this situation was found — Krupskaya's present helped! Platten was accused of illegally possessing firearms and sentenced for 4 years in a labour camp. It did not change the outcome — he had never been set free. **He "accidentally" died in the hospital of the labour camp near Arkhangelsk exactly (!) on the day of his mentee's birthday, on April 22, 1942,** i.e., right when the term of his imprisonment was to expire.

---

[1] Translator's note: The executive committee for Communist Parties.

The Peace Treaty of Brest-Litovsk

Joffe Adolph Abramovich — a member of the Bolshevik Party from 1917. In 1918, he was one of the leading Soviet diplomats during the negotiations in Brest-Litovsk, later he was the empowered and authorized representative of the Soviet Russia in Germany. During the negotiations in Tartu, he signed one more anti-Russian treaty with Estonia, which resulted in Russia losing significant territories and fifteen million rubles in gold, while thousands of White Guards and Russian refugees died in the concentration camps in Estonia. He continued his diplomatic career: in 1922–1924, he was the political envoy of the Soviet Russia to China, in 1924–1925 — in Austria. Starting from 1925, he was in opposition to Stalin's policies. In 1927, he committed suicide, which did not make the life of his family members any easier. His daughter Nadezhda Adolphovna Joffe spent 12 years in the labour camps and in exile, where she gave birth to two daughters, the granddaughters of the person, who had been so easily giving away the lands of the Russian Empire.

Committed suicide in 1927.

Sokolnikov (Brilliant) **Grigory Yakovlevich** — a member of RSDRP from 1905. After the unfortunate attempt to destroy Russia he studied in Paris from 1905 till 1914. In 1917, he was a member of the executive committees of Moscow and Petrograd Soviets, the commissar of the banks. He was the chairman of the Soviet delegation during the negotiations with Germany, he signed the text of the Peace Treaty in Brest. He was the narkom of finance of the USSR. He was the deputy chairman of the Gosplan of the USSR. He also was the political envoy of the USSR to Great Britain. He was the first deputy of the Narkom of Forest Industry. He was a member of VTsIK and TsIK of the USSR. Arrested in 1936, he was sentenced to ten years in prison in 1937.

In May 1939, he was killed in prison by his inmates.

Karakhan (Karakhanyan) **Lev** (Levoi) **Mikhailovich** — a son of an attorney-at-law. A member of RSDRP from 1904, Menshevik. Arrested and exiled to Tomsk in 1915. He was released after the February Revolution. He became the member of the Bolshevik

Party. In August — October 1917, he was the member of the presidium and the secretary of the Petrograd Soviet of the Workers' and Soldiers' Deputies. During the October Socialist Revolution, he was the member of the Military-Revolutionary Committee. From March 1918, he was a deputy of the narkom of foreign affairs of the RSFSR. He was the secretary of the Soviet delegation during the peace negotiations in Brest. He was the political envoy to China and Poland. In 1927–1934, he was the deputy of the narkom of foreign affairs. In 1934, Stalin's USSR was feeling so confident on the world arena that the **Armenian** Karakhan was sent as the ambassador of the USSR to Turkey. The Turkish lied down under the insult, which meant that Turkey would be loyal with regard to the USSR. So it would be — despite Hitler's efforts to get Turkey involved into the war, Turkey would remain neutral. But Lev Mikhailovich would never learn about that. He would be called back from Istanbul to Moscow and arrested.

Shot in 1937.

The murder of Mirbach and the revolt of the Left SRs.

Vatsetis (Vacietis) **Ioakim Ioakimovich** — a staff officer of the Russian Army. Graduated from the Vilnius infantry school and the Academy of the General Headquarters, lieutenant-colonel. In October 1917, he went over to Bolsheviks with his 5th Latvian regiment. In 1918, he was the commander of the Latvian infantry division, which was the only military support for the Sovnarkom in the capital. He was the military commander to suppress the revolt of the Left SRs in Moscow. Soon he was appointed the commander of the Eastern Front. In 1918–1919, he was the commander-in-chief of the armed forces of the republic. After the end of the Civil War, he was a professor of the military academy. Awarded with the orders of Red Banner and Red Star. Co-authored by the other Red commanders, he wrote a very interesting book "The Civil War 1918–1924."

Shot in 1938.

Blumkin Yakov Grigoryevich — the Left SR, chekist, the killer of the German Ambassador von Mirbach. After he unexpectedly was "pardoned" and hired by the Soviet intelligence services for the second time, he participated in many special operations. In 1920, he entered the Red Army Academy of the General Headquarters to study at the Oriental department, where the staff of the embassies and the intelligence services agents were educated. And already in the summer of 1920, Blumkin participated in a risky affair on the international level. A self-declared Soviet Republic of Gilan with its capital in Rasht, military and financially supported by the Soviet Russia, was established in the north of Iran. Blumkin was a commissar of the headquarters of the newly established Gilan Red Army and a member of the newly created Communist Party of Iran. Blumkin, personally participating in the combats, was in charge of defending the city of Anzali from the attacking troops of the shah of Iran. This was so much the case (this is not a joke!) that Blumkin, who was Jewish, came to Baku participate in the 1st Congress of the oppressed peoples of the east on behalf of Iran! But everything must have an end — and the miracles come to the end, too. Having come back, Blumkin fell into disgrace. It appeared that he had met Trotsky in Turkey in 1929 and brought the letters to his adherents. Blumkin handed a parcel to Radek, and he, without opening it, called the GPU.[1] Blumkin was arrested.

Shot in 1929.

Spiridonova Maria Alexandrovna was born in a family of a college secretary, a noblewoman. When she was 19, Maria assassinated the gendarme Colonel Luzhenovsky and was sentenced to death. Then death penalty was changed for penal servitude for life. She joined the SR Party, when she was in a labour camp. She was released in March 1917 upon a special order of Minister of Justice Alexander Kerensky. She returned to Petrograd haloed of being a real revolutionary and a martyr. She was one of the initiators of the split in the SR Party. As the matter of fact, she was a leader of the Left SRs and advocated for the coalition with the Bolsheviks. She actively participated in the revolt of the Left SRs on July 6–7, 1918, and was arrested. In November 1918, the

---

[1] Translator's note: GPU stands for the State Political Directorate.

Supreme tribunal under VTsIK sentenced Spriridonova to one year in prison, but having taken into consideration her "particular merits in the revolutionary movement," she was amnestied (!) and released. In February 1918, she was arrested again and since then was mostly spending her time in prisons and labour camps. She got married, worked as an economist and ceased all the political activities. In 1937, she was arrested again and sentenced to 25 years in prison. She was liquidated in prison, when the Red Army was leaving Oryol.

Shot in 1941.

Popov Dmitry Ivanovich — a Left SR in 1917–1919. In 1919, he was a member of VTsIK. From March 1918, he was the head of one of the VCheKa detachments, from April he was the member of the VCheKa college. His detachment was the main force during the revolt of the Left SRs. After the defeat of the revolt he fled to Ukraine and fought in Makhno's Army. He was an intermediary during the negotiations between the Bolsheviks and Father Makhno. When Makhno's Army wasn't needed anymore, Popov also was no longer required. In November 1920, he was arrested by the CheKa in Ukraine and sent to Moscow.

Shot in May 1921.

The murder of the Romanovs

Sverdlov Yakov Mikhailovich (Yankel Moiseyevich Aptekman) was in the party from 1901. In 1912, he was co-optated in TsK. After the 7th conference of the party (April 1917), he was the secretary of the party. He took active part in staging and fulfilling the October overthrow in Petrograd. He was the head of the Bolshevik faction of the 2nd All-Russian Congress of Soviets. From spring 1918, he was actually managing all the party work. Most likely, it was him who gave the order to murder Nicholas II's family. During the 8th Congress of the party he was sent to the provinces, got ill on his way back and soon died at the age of 33. It is entirely possible that he was killed, because no prosecution has been carried out.

Died in 1919 under mysterious circumstances.

Myasnikov Gavril Ilyich was the killer of the last Russian Emperor Michael Romanov. Later, he was the member of the left-wing opposition. He was twice arrested and after that was allowed to leave for Germany. In autumn 1923, he was persuaded to return to the USSR. It was Dzerzhinsky who arrested Myasnikov. He spent 3.5 years in prison and then fled from his exile in Yerevan to Iran, having swum over the Aras River. His long wanderings ended in 1930 in Paris. In January 1946, he returned to the USSR (according to one of the versions he was forced to do it). Before that all his sons had perished at the front, and his wife had suffered a serious mental disorder. He was arrested directly at the gangway of the aircraft. After nine months of investigation, the Military college of the Supreme Court of the USSR passed a sentence — execution by a firing squad. Having learned about the sentence, his wife went mad and died.

Shot in 1946.

Yurovsky Yakov Mikhailovich (Yankel Haimovich) — the member of the presidium of the executive committee of the Ural Region Soviet, the commandant of the House of Ipatiev. He personally shot Nicholas II and finished off Crown Prince Alexei. He worked in the Moscow CheKa. Later, he occupied different posts in the party and in the Soviet administration. When Stalinist Purges started, he had been having the severe gastric ulcer for years, so he was not arrested but was left to die a painful death. His daughter Rimma was arrested and spent 20 years in Stalin's labour camps.

Died in the throes in 1938.

Goloshchyokin Filipp Isayevich (Isay Isaakovich) — a member of the party from 1904. One of the orchestrators of the murder of Nicholas II's family. The member and the secretary of Ural Region Committee of RSDRP(b). In 1919–1920, he was the member of the Turkestan Commission of VTsIK and the Sovnarkom of the RSFSR. In 1925–1933, he was the secretary of Kazakhstan Regional Committee of VKP(b). He was at the head of the de-kulakization[1] in Kazakhstan, where the loss of thousands of lives was on his conscience. He was a deputy at the 6th, 8th, 10th, 11th 12th, 13th, 14th, 15th, 16th, and 17th congresses of the party. When he was arrested, he held the post of the chief state arbitrator of the USSR.

---

[1] Translator's note: De-kulakization was the Soviet campaign of political repressions, including arrests, deportations, and executions of millions of the better-off peasants and their families in 1929–1932. The Soviet

Shot in 1941.

Beloborodov Alexander Georgiyevich — a worker, a member of the party from 1907, the chairman of the Ural Region Soviet. He lead the meeting of the executive committee on July 6, 1918, when it was decided to kill Nicholas II's family. He signed this decision and was in charge of killing the other Romanovs in Alapayevsk. After the successfully performed executions, he was the 2nd narkom of internal affairs of the RSFSR after Felix Dzerzhinsky. At the end of 1927, the Trotskist Beloborodov was excluded from VKP(b) and exiled. In 1936, he was arrested. At the moment of his arrest, he held the post of the authorized representative of the Narkomat[1] for the internal trade in the USSR. Unlike Yurovsky, he was arrested despite his bad health. Even the advanced throat cancer did not help, which actually prevented Beloborodov from taking any food.

Shot in 1938.

Voykov (Weiner) **Pyotr Lazarevich** — a member of RSDRP from 1903, Menshevik. Starting from the autumn of 1917, he "actively worked to establish the Soviet power," he was a member of the urban and regional Soviet of Yekaterinburg and the Military Revolutionary Committee. At that time he became a true Bolshevik. From January till July 1918, he was the commissar for the provisions at the Ural Region Soviet, a member of the special investigation committee. A chemist by education, he got a specific task and brought sulphuric acid to dispose of the remains of the innocent Romanovs slaughtered. In accordance with the results of the investigation of the committee set up by Kolchak the Whites in absentia sentenced Voykov to death. From October 1924, he was the political envoy to Poland. He was assassinated in Warsaw by a Russian exile

---

authorities labelled the richer peasants "kulaks" and portrayed them as class enemies.

[1] Translator's note: The People's Commissariat.

Boris Koverda for having personally directed the assassinations of Tsar Nicholas II and the Russian Imperial family in 1918.

Killed in 1927.

Safarov Georgy Ivanovich arrived in Russia in the "sealed" railway car together with Lenin. Being the deputy of the chairman of the Ural Soviet, he controlled the murder of the Romanovs. Later, he was the leader of the Comintern department, headed by Zinoviev, who had arrived in Russia in the same way. So, their life journeys would go in the parallel way. After Lenin's death, Head of Petrograd Zinoviev, trying to "cover his back," appointed Safarov the chief of the party newspaper "Leningradskaya Pravda." Later this period would be reflected in the biography of this ardent Bolshevik, when the case of "Leningrad opposition" was investigated, as well as his sentence and his new appointment — a water-carrier in the labour camp. No more information about his further life is available.

Most likely, he died in the labour camp.

Berzin (Berzinsh) **Reinholds Iosifovich** (Yazepovich) — a Latvian, who commanded the front during the revolt of the Czechoslovak Legion, when the Romanovs were slaughtered in Yekaterinburg and Alapayevsk. In 1919–1924, he was a member of the Military Revolutionary Soviets of several fronts. Later, he worked in the military industry and in the agriculture. He was awarded the Red Star Order and the Red Banner Order of Bukhara and Khorezm People's Republics. He was purged.[1]

Died in a labour camp in 1938.

The ruiners of the Navy

Raskolnikov (Ilyin) **Feodor Feodorovich** — a member of RSDRP from 1910. First. he studied at the Petersburg Polytechnic University, then he attended classes for naval cadets. After the February

---

[1] Translator's note: Purges of the Communist Party in the Union ("cleansing of the party ranks") were a key ritual, in which periodic reviews of the members of the Communist Party were conducted to get rid of the "undesirables."

Revolution, he was the deputy chairman of the Kronstadt Soviet and the editor of the Golos Pravdy Newspaper. On January 5, 1928, at the Constituent Assembly, upon Lenin's request he announced the declaration of Bolsheviks about their decision to leave the Constituent Assembly. From January 30, 1918, he was the deputy of the Narkom of Naval Affairs, one of the orchestrators of the Russian Black Sea Navy's destruction. In 1920–1921, he was the commander of the Baltic Navy, but after the revolt in Kronstadt he was transferred to the political operation department. In 1921–1923, he was the political envoy to Afghanistan. In 1930–1938, he was the political envoy to Estonia, Denmark, and Bulgaria. He refused to return to the USSR and asked for political asylum in France. There he published an open letter to Stalin. According to the existing versions, four weeks later he either died, having thrown himself out of the window, or caught death of pneumonia in hospital.

On September 12, 1939, he passed away under mysterious circumstances.

Gaven (Daumanis) **Yuri** (Janis) **Petrovich** (Ernestovich) — a member of the Latvian Social Democratic Party from 1901. Till July 1914, he was imprisoned in Riga and Vologda, then exiled to Minusinsk. At the end of September 1917, he got a warrant from the central committee of the party and was sent Sevastopol to propagate the sailors of the Black Sea Navy to go over to Bolsheviks. From October 25, he was one of the leaders of the Bolshevik faction of the Sevastopol Soviet and its executive committee. He was one of the leaders of the armed revolt of the sailors in Sevastopol and the person in charge of arrests and mass shootings that followed. The lives of the tortured and drown officers, who unfortunately happened to be in the Crimea early in 1918, are on his conscience. After the Civil War, he occupied different posts in the Soviet public authorities, as well in the economic sphere. He retired in 1933, but enjoyed his peaceful retirement for three years only. In 1936, he was arrested and accused of the "counterrevolutionary" activities.

Shot in 1936.

Glebov (Avilov) **Nikolay Pavlovich** — see above.

Shot in 1938.

Kukel Vladimir Andreyevich — a hereditary sailor, the grandson of Admiral G. Nevelskiy. In 1905, he graduated from the naval college as an officer. He vigorously joined Bolsheviks. He was the commander of the torpedo-boat destroyer Kerch, which participated in the establishment of the Soviet power in the Crimea in 1918 and in the associated killings and atrocities. He actively participated in the sinking of the Black Sea Navy in Novorossiysk and later wrote the memoirs about that. Those were exactly the torpedoes from the torpedo-boat destroyer Kerch that sent the best Russian ships to the bottom. In 1921–1928, he was the 2nd secretary of the Soviet Embassy in Afghanistan. From 1935, he is the chief of the marine department of the frontier guards of NKVD in the Far East. He was awarded with the Red Banner Order and the Red Star Order.

Shot in 1938.

Others

Kamenev (Rosenfeld) **Lev Borisovich** — he became the member of RSDRP in 1901, when he was a student. In 1908–1914, he was in exile. Together with Lenin and Zinoviev, he established the ruling core of the party abroad. In 1914, he returned to Russia, was arrested and exiled to Siberia. He was released during the February Revolution. He had acted as the leader of the party before Lenin returned to Russia. He was the editor of the Pravda Newspaper. He opposed the April theses of Lenin. He was elected the member of the central committee on the 6th congress of the party. He was against the armed uprisal in October 1917, considering it to be a venture which would break down. Together with Zinoviev, he published a letter, which "divulged the secret" of the Bolshevik uprisal. In November 1917, he was the chairman of VTsIK. From 1918 to 1926, he was the chairman of Moscow Soviet. In 1919–1926, he was the member of the political bureau of the central committee of the party. In 1926, he was expelled from the political bureau.

Shot dead in 1938.

Laidoner Johan (Ivan Yakovlevich) — a lieutenant colonel of the Russian Army. In December 1917 — February 1918, he was the commander of the Estonian division. After the October overthrow, he was the commandant of the army of the independent Estonia, which was fighting the Red troops. Having used the forces of the White Guard to liberate Estonia, he did not support the offensive of Yudenich towards Petrograd. After the defeat of the Whites, it was under his command that the Estonian Army was disarming the White Guards and sending them to the concentration camps. These actions resulted in thousands of women, children, and the White guards dead because of the typhus fever, starvation, and cold. The "hero" received his "well-deserved reward," when Estonia became a part of the USSR. In 1940, he and his wife were arrested by NKVD and moved to Penza, where the Estonian got his merit pension of 2,000 rubles per month, at first, whereas in July 1941 the overture was over — Laidoner and his wife were arrested.

Died in the Vladimir central prison in 1953...

Bibliography

Arutyunov A. Lenin. The Biography of a Person and a Politician. In 2 v. M.: Veche, 2002.

Bogdanov K. Admiral Kolchak. St. Pb.: Sudostroyenie, 1993.

Bokhanov A. The Romanovs. The Secrets of the Heart. M.: AST-Press-Kniga, 2003.

Bonch-Bruyevich M. All power to the Soviets. M.: Voyenizdat, 1958

Bothmer K. With Baron Mirbach in Moscow. The Institute of the Russian History RAN.1996.

Buchanan G. My Mission in Russia. M.: Tsentropoligraf, 2006.

Bunin I. Cursed Days. L.: Az, 1991.

Chernov V. Before the Storm. Memoirs. Minsk, Kharvest, 2004.

Chieftain Semyonov. About Me. M.: Tsentropoligraf, 2007.

Churchill W. The World Crisis. M.: Gosvoyenizdat, 1932.

Danilevsky N. Russia and Europe. M.: Kniga, 1991.

Denikin A. The Sketches on the Russian Time of Troubles. M.: Vagrius, 2006.

Denikin A. The Sketches on the Russian Time of Troubles/The White movement/ M.: Vagrius, 2006.

Diaries and documents from the personal archives of Nicholas II. Minsk: Kharvest, 2003.

Dumbadze G. What Caused Our Defeat in Siberia in the Civil War/Admiral Kolchak's Eastern Front. M.: Tsentrpoligraf, 2004.

Filatyev D. The Catastrophe of the White Movement in Siberia/Admiral Kolchak's Eastern Front. M.: Tsentrpoligraf, 2004.

Giles MacDonogh. The Last Keiser: William the Impetuous. M.: AST, 2004.

Graf H. On board of "Novik." The Baltic Navy During the War and the Revolution. St. Pb.: Gangut, 1997.

Ignatiev A. Fifty Years in Formation. M.: Pravda, 1989.

Izvolsky A. Memoirs. Minsk: Kharvest, 2003.

Kakurin N. Vatsetis I. The Civil War 1918–1921. St. Pb.: Poligon, 2002.

Kerensky A. Gatchina. Paris. From Afar, 1922.

Kerensky A. Russia at Historic Turn. M.: Terra, 1996.

Kersnovsky A. The History of the Russian Army. In 4 volumes. M.: Golos, 1992.

Kornatovsky N. The Struggle for the Red Petrograd. M.: AST, 2004.

Kotsyubinskiye A. and D. Grigori Rasputin: Mysterious and Real. M.: Limbus Press, 2003.

Krasnov P. At the Home Front. M.: Iris–Press, 2003.

Krasnov P. The Great Don Republic. // APP. V. 5. Berlin, 1922.

Kremlyov S. Russia and Germany: Fight! M.: AST, Astrel, 2003.

Kuprin A. The Dome of St. Isaac's of Dalmatia. M.: Veche, 2007.

Kurlov P. The Downfall of the Imperial Russia. Memoirs. M.: Zakharov, 2001.

Lenin V. Works. M.: GIZ, 1950.

Ludendorff E. "My War Memoirs" 1914–1918. M.: AST, 2005.

Ludendorff E. "My War Memoirs" 1914–1918. M.: Gosizdat, 1923–1924.

Mannerheim K. Memoirs. M.: Vagrius, 1999.

Melgunov S. Red Terror in Russia. M.: PUICO, 1990.

Melnik-Botkina T. Memoirs about the Tsar's Family. M.: I. V. Zakharov, 2004.

Milyukov P. The History of the Second Russian Revolution. Minsk, Kharvest, 2002.

Novikov P. The Civil War in the Eastern Siberia. M.: Tsentrpoligraf, 2005.

Paleologue M. The Tsarist Russia During the Times of the World War. M.: Mezhdunarodnye Otnosheniya, 1991.

Platonov O. An Assault on the Russian Tsardom. M.: Algoritm, 2004.

Platonov O. Life for the Tsar. St. Pb.: Voskresenye, 1996.

Polyakov I. Don Cossacks in the Struggle Against Bolsheviks. Munich, 1962.

Pukhov A. The Baltic Navy in the Defence of Petrograd. Year 1919. M.; L., Voyenmorizdat NKVMF USSR, 1939.

Robert D. Warth. The Allies and the Russian Revolution. M.: Tsentrpoligraf, 2006.

Rodzianko A. The Memoirs About the North-Western Army/The White Struggle in the Northwest of Russia. M.: Tsentrpoligraf, 2003.

Rodzianko A. The State Duma and the February Revolution of 1917. Berlin, 1922.

Romanov A. The Book of Memoirs. M.: AST, 2008.

Romanov A. The Memoirs. M.: Zakharov, 2001.

Savchenko V. The Adventurers of the Civil War: A Historic Research. Kharkov, Folio; M.: AST, 2000.

Sayers M., Kahn A. A Secret War Against Russia. M.: GIIL, 1947.

Sazonov S. Memoirs. M.: Mezhdunarodnye Otnosheniya, 1991.

Shambarov V. White Guardists. M.: Algoritm, 2004.

Shatsillo V. World War I 1914–1918. Facts and Documents. M.: Olma-Press, 2003.

Shirokorad A. Russia — England: Unknown War 1857–1907. M.: AST, 2003.

Shishov A. Yudenich. M.: Veche, 2004.

Shulgin V. Days. 1920. M.: Sovremennik, 1989.

Smirnov A. Chieftain Krasnov. M.: AST, 2003.

Sokolov N. The Assassination of the Tsar's Family. M.: BSK; Algoritm-kniga, 1998.

Solovyov S. The History of Russia from the Earliest Times. M.: AST, 2003.

Stalin I. Works. M.: Gospolitizdat, 1951.

Strokov A. The History of the Art of War. St. Pb., Omega-Voenny Poligon, 1994.

Strongin V. Kerensky. M.: AST-Press kniga, 2004.

Sukhanov N. The Notes on the Revolution: in 3 volumes. M., 1991.

Sutton A. Wall Street and the Bolshevik Revolution. M.: Russkaya Ideya, 1998.

The Civil War in Russia: The Black Sea Navy. M.: AST, 2002.

The Civil War in Russia: the War in the North. M.: AST; Transitkniga; St. Pb.: Terra Fantastica, 2004.

The History of the Communist Party of the Soviet Union. M.: Gozpolitizdat, 1959.

The History of World War 1. 1914–1918. In 2 volumes. M.: Nauka, 1975.

The Hussars from Sumy in the Civil War/The Revived Regiments of the Russian Army in the White Struggle in the South of Russia. M.: Tsentrpoligraf, 2002.

The interrogation of Kolchak. L.: GIZ, 1925.

Tirpitz A. Memoirs. M., 1957.

Tishkov A. Dzerzhinsky M.: Molodaya Gvardiya, 1985.

Trotsky L. Diaries and Letters. New York, 1986.

Trotsky L. My Life. An Attempt to Write an Autobiography. M.: Panorama, 1991.

Trotsky L. The History of the Russian Revolution: in 2 volumes. M.: Terra Respublika, 1997.

Trotsky L. The Lessons of the October. M., 1924.

Tuchmann B. The First Blitzkrieg. August 1914. M., 2004.

Varnek P. The Formation of the Navy of the Volunteer Army/The Civil War in Russia: The Black Sea Navy. M.: AST, 2002.

Varshavsky S., Rest B. A Ticket to Eternity. L.: Lenizdat. 1978.

Vinogradov A. Secret Battles of the 20 century. M.: Olma-Press, 1999.

Vitte S. Memoirs. In 3 v. M.: Sotsekgiz, 1960.

Voyeykov V. With the Tsar and Without the Tsar. Memoirs. Minsk: Kharvest. 2002.

Vyrubova A. A Lady in Waiting for Her Majesty. M.: Eksmo-Press, 2001.

White Fight. Selected works. In 16 v. M.: Golos, 1992.

White Movement in Russia. In 20 v. M.: Tsentropoligraf, 2002–2004.

World history. The Results of World War 1. V. 20. M.: AST, 2001.

Wrangel P. Notes. In 2 v. M.: Kosmos Manager, 1991.

Zaychonkovsky A. World War 1914–1918. M., 1938.

Nikolay Starikov

The Liquidation of Russia.
Who Helped the Reds to Win the Civil War?

Translator: A. Grebenkov

Editing Director: *Andronova E.*
Senior Editor: *Vlasova E.*
Art Editor: *Malikova S.*
Design Layout: *Egorova L.*

Designed and printed in Russia. Progress Kniga Ltd. St. Petersburg,
191123 Radischeva St. h. 39, building D, office 415 Tel.: +78127037373

Publishing Date: 12.2017. Product: printed book. Expire Date: unlimited

Tax exemption according to All-Russian production classifier OK 034-2014, 58.11.19 —
books, brochures, leaflets and similar printed materials.

Signed to print 12.11.2017. Format 60x90/16. Conv. p.s. 24000. Print Run of 1000. Order A-2942.

Produced in accordance with the original layout at the printing house TATMEDIA SC,
PIC Ideal-Press Kazan, Dekabristov St., 2 E-mail: idelpress@mail.ru

The book by Nikolay Starikov, the author of bestselling «Rouble Nationalization – the Way to Russia's Freedom», «Who set Hitler against Stalin?» and many others, follows the events of the Civil War.

The Russian statesmanship, its territorial integrity, and the economy of the country perished in the vortex of the Civil War. The Romanovs, the Russian Navy, the Russian Army, and millions of Russians were destroyed. The consequences of this horrible civil strife have not been overcome until today. In this book, you will find a lot of little-known facts, as well as answers to many questions:

- **Who staged and directed the liquidation of Russia at the beginning of the 20th century?**
- **Who needed the Russian strife and who could gain from it?**
- **Who forced Lenin to liquidate the Tsar's family?**
- **Who is guilty of the murder of Nicholas II's children?**
- **Why did the leaders of the revolution repeatedly try to drown their own navy?**
- **Why did Vladimir Lenin order to execute the Tsar's family and at the same time ensured safety of other members of the Tsar dynasty?**
- **Why didn't the Entente help the White movement?**
- **Why was Admiral Kolchak murdered and why did the White Guard soldiers have to fight?**
- **Who made the soldiers of General Yudenich die in Estonian extermination camps? Who needed to have the troops of Denikin, Kolchak, Yudenich, and Wrangel liquidated?**

The burnt Russian villages and mass graves tell us the truth about the Russian strife, the truth about the outcome of the Civil War. Who guaranteed victory for the Reds, destroying their contenders? Who made this bloody merry-go-round possible? Who placed the stake? The stake on the Bolsheviks...

ISBN 978-5-4461-0486-4
9 785446 104864

ПИТЕР®

Заказ книг:
тел.: (812) 703-73-74
books@piter.com
WWW.PITER.COM
каталог книг
и интернет-магазин

vk.com/piterbooks
instagram.com/piterbooks
facebook.com/piterbooks
youtube.com/ThePiterBooks

Доступно в App Store
http://www.piter.com/collection/knigi-starikova